LUKE PRODROMOU

# GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY *for* FIRST CERTIFICATE

WITH KEY

www.longman.com

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Pearson Education Limited**
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England
and Associated Companies throughout the World

longman.com

© Pearson Education Limited 1999

The right of Luke Prodromu to be identified as author of this Work have been asserted by him in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

First published 1999

Tenth Impression 2005

ISBN 0 582 40018 X

**Acknowledgements**

Designed by First Edition
Illustrations by Simon Smith
Cover design by Andrew Oliver
Project managed by Christina Ruse

The publishers would like to thank the following for their invaluable reports on the text:
Eftaxia Chatzoglou, Maria Chrematopoulou, Anna Chrysouergi, Jain Cook, Konstantinos Giagkoulovits, Felicity Harwood, Philip Kerr, Maria Anne Leventeris, Anne Robinson, Rogerio Sanches, Vilma Sicas, Elsa Silivistra and Emma Tuhill.

Set in Monotype Minion

Printed in Spain by Graficas Estella

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Contents


**Introduction** 7

## Unit 1 12

**Entry test** 12

**Grammar**

1a Present Simple and Present Continuous 14

1b Past Simple, Present Perfect, Present Perfect Continuous 18

1c Past Continuous, Past Perfect, Past Perfect Continuous 21

**Vocabulary**

1d *for, since, during, yet,* etc. 23

1e suffixes (1) 26

## Unit 2 28

**Entry test** 28

**Grammar**

2a the future 30

2b Present Continuous, *be going to,* Present Simple 32

2c Future Continuous and Future Perfect 34

**Vocabulary**

2d phrasal verbs: time and change 36

2e prefixes (1) 38

**Exam practice 1** 40

## Unit 3 44

**Entry test** 44

**Grammar**

3a modal verbs (1) 46

3b modal verbs (2) 49

3c link words or phrases: purpose and reason 52

**Vocabulary**

3d *have, take, bring* 55

3e suffixes (2) 58

## Unit 4 60

**Entry test** 60

**Grammar**

4a question words 62

4b question tags 64

4c phrases of agreement 66

**Vocabulary**

4d *do* and *make* 69

4e suffixes (3) 73

**Exam practice 2** 76

## Unit 5 80

**Entry test** 80

**Grammar**

5a First and Second Conditionals 82

5b Third Conditional 84

5c *I wish, if only* 86

**Vocabulary**

5d *want, expect, love, bear,* etc. 89

5e prefixes (2) 92




PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Unit 6 94

**Entry test** 94

**Grammar**

6a time and condition clauses with future reference 96

6b more future forms 99

6c expressions of time and preference 101

**Vocabulary**

6d *afterwards, after, until, as far as*, etc. 104

6e phrases with *time* 106

**Exam practice 3** 108

## Unit 7 112

**Entry test** 112

**Grammar**

7a forming the passive 114

7b reasons for using the passive; the agent 117

7c causative *get* and *have* 120

**Vocabulary**

7d *get* and *have got* 122

7e compound nouns 124

## Unit 8 128

**Entry test** 128

**Grammar**

8a reported speech (1) 130

8b reported speech (2) 134

8c *-ing* forms and infinitives after verbs and prepositions 137

**Vocabulary**

8d *say, tell, talk, discuss, speak*, etc. 140

8e *-ed* and *-ing* adjectives 143

**Exam practice 4** 146

## Unit 9 150

**Entry test** 150

**Grammar**

9a comparative and superlative adjectives 152

9b adjectives followed by prepositions 155

9c order of adjectives 157

**Vocabulary**

9d adjectives of size, quantity and power 158

9e compound adjectives 164

## Unit 10 166

**Entry test** 166

**Grammar**

10a comparisons 168

10b *so* and *such*; *too, very, enough* 170

10c *quite, rather*, etc; linking verbs 173

**Vocabulary**

10d adjectives which are similar 176

10e suffixes (4) 179

**Exam practice 5** 182




PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Unit 11 186

**Entry test** 186

**Grammar**

11a adverbs: use and form 188

11b adverbs: word order 191

11c adverbs: comparison 194

**Vocabulary**

11d seeing and hearing 196

11e adverbs: different forms and meanings 200

## Unit 12 202

**Entry test** 202

**Grammar**

12a articles 204

12b determiners 208

12c countable and uncountable nouns 212

**Vocabulary**

12d uncountable nouns ending in *-s*; collective nouns 216

12e suffixes (5) 219

**Exam practice 6** 224

## Unit 13 228

**Entry test** 228

**Grammar**

13a relative clauses 230

13b participles 234

13c linking words and phrases 236

**Vocabulary**

13d phrasal verbs with *get* 238

13e suffixes (6) 240

## Unit 14 244

**Entry test** 244

**Grammar**

14a prepositions of time, place and movement 246

14b prepositions after verbs and nouns 250

14c *it* and *there* 252

**Vocabulary**

14d prepositional phrases 254

14e phrasal verbs with *put* 257

**Exam practice 7** 259

**Word store** 263

**Answer key** 305




PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## *Acknowledgements*

The author would like to thank everyone who has helped to develop the contents of this book, in particular Donald Adamson, Judith Aguda, Carolyn Parsons and Christina Ruse, and to Helen Colman for her work on the production of the book.

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Introduction

## About this book

### *Who is this book for?*

This book is for people studying for the Cambridge First Certificate in English (FCE) examination. The aim is to practise the grammar and vocabulary needed for this examination. The book is useful as a supplement to any course book; it presents and practises key grammar and vocabulary points in an integrated way. I assume that anybody using this book has a reasonable knowledge of and ability to use English up to pre-intermediate level. More advanced students should refer to *Grammar and Vocabulary for Cambridge Advanced and Proficiency* by Richard Side and Guy Wellman (Longman).

### *What sort of grammar is in this book?*

The book covers the main areas of English grammar at intermediate / upper intermediate level and concentrates on areas you need to pass the FCE exam. Thus, there is a thorough review of tenses together with verb, noun and adjective structures. Although grammar and vocabulary are obviously important in all the papers in the exam, special attention is given to those aspects of grammar which are frequently tested in Paper 3 – Use of English. For example, prepositions following nouns, verbs and adjectives are especially common in all parts of Paper 3. Problems of time and tense are also tested, for example in conditional sentences and after *wish*, *if only*, *I'd rather* and expressions with *time*; such structures are reflected in the grammar presented and practised in this book.

### *What sort of vocabulary is in this book?*

The book gives vocabulary special emphasis, including both individual words and common phrases. Words which are often confused are dealt with in the Sections which make up the main body of the text, and common sources of error caused by words of related meaning are also considered. There is also a detailed focus on aspects of word building in every Unit. This reflects the importance of word building in the Use of English paper. The Word store at the end of the Units focuses on topic areas and lexical phrases to which the new format of the FCE exam introduced in 1996 gives particular importance. A good knowledge of these phrases will help you perform better in the Use of English and the Writing papers.

### *How can I use this book?*

There are many ways to use this book. You can use the **Contents** to look up particular aspects of grammar or vocabulary you want to study and practise. The **Agenda** at the beginning of each Unit will show you the contents of each Section and you can use the **Entry test** to identify which Sections you need. Or, you may wish to study complete Units, perhaps in the order in which they appear. Several options are available to you according to your needs.

### *How is this book organised?*

The book comprises fourteen grammar and vocabulary **Units** followed by a topic-related **Word store** Section. There is an **Exam practice** test after every two Units. Throughout the book there are cartoons which illustrate grammar points and also identify the coverage of the Section. I hope this will make learning grammar more fun as well as more memorable.

#### THE ENTRY TEST

A typical sequence begins with an **Entry test** based on the target grammar and vocabulary of the Unit. It consists of 25 diagnostic items which will direct you to areas you need to learn, revise or practise in the Sections that follow. The test will give you an idea of your own strengths and weaknesses in particular areas of grammar or vocabulary. Each Entry test is divided into five parts (each with five items) and these correspond to the five Sections, a–e, of the Unit. If you have difficulties with a part of the Entry test, there is a cross-reference to the relevant Section where you will find all the information and practice you need. On the other hand, if you find that part easy, it may mean that you are sufficiently competent in that area and you may wish to skip



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

that Section. Since each Entry test has an uniform score (25), you can monitor your own progress using your total scores for each Entry test.

### THE GRAMMAR SECTIONS

Each Unit contains three **Grammar sections** which deal with aspects of a particular area of grammar as listed in the **Agenda** above the Entry test. For a full index of the grammar covered in this book, see the list of Contents (pages 3–5). The Grammar sections contain explanations and descriptions using numerous example sentences. Much of the information is presented in tables which provide easy access to the essential details of meaning or use, together with examples illustrating common contexts.

### THE VOCABULARY SECTIONS

Each Unit has two **Vocabulary sections**. There is a deliberate focus on word building and on lexical items related to particular areas of usage. Phrasal material is given special attention and, again, the tables provide easy access to content.

### THE PRACTICES

All presentation material in the Grammar and Vocabulary sections is followed by **Practices**. These are a wide variety of exercises related to the content of the previous Section. Many of these exercises are modelled on FCE exam questions, but others are styled to achieve the best focus on information being practised and provide for a more interesting set of activities.

### THE EXAM PRACTICES

After every two Units, there is an **Exam practice** in the form of a complete Use of English paper in exactly the same format as the FCE. Each Exam practice tests your knowledge of the grammar and vocabulary of the previous two Units. It allows you to revise what you have learnt while getting valuable examination practice. Each paper has the same score so that you can monitor your progress as you work with different Units. Although grammar and vocabulary are presented separately in the Units, in the Practices and the Exam practice grammar and vocabulary are brought together within the same texts. Thus there is constant recycling of the target information.

### THE WORD STORE

At the end of the book is the **Word store**, a series of exercises presenting vocabulary in topic-related groups which are extremely useful for all parts of the FCE exam. Emphasis is on the importance of common phrases and the way words combine together. The vocabulary items are presented in tables that are unrivalled in their coverage. These tables are followed by exercises which draw on items in the tables and allow you to work with them in relevant contexts. Special attention has been given to ensuring that these exercises are lively and informative.

## *Will I pass First Certificate if I do everything in this book?*

One grammar and vocabulary practice book is not enough to make you fluent in English. I recommend that you read widely in English (simplified readers, magazines and newspapers…) and take every opportunity to listen to English (satellite television, film, radio, songs…). You should also try and speak the language so that you can use it naturally and easily.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# About First Certificate

## *What level is First Certificate?*

The First Certificate is an intermediate-level Cambridge examination which follows on from the PET (Preliminary English Test) and precedes the CAE (Certificate in Advanced English). The examination is frequently used as proof that you will be competent to begin a career such as those related to tourism or banking, or that you can pursue an advanced course of study in English. Learners at this level should be able to handle the main structures with some confidence and communicate in English in a variety of social situations. You should be able to tell the difference between the main points and the secondary points of a text and between the gist of a text and specific detail. You are expected to show an ability to describe and recount events. Grades A, B and C are passes. D is a narrow fail, and E and U are fails.

The exam is usually taken after approximately 500–600 hours of studying English. It consists of 5 papers, each scoring 40 marks. Four papers are usually taken on the same day and Paper 5 (Speaking) will be taken on a different day.

### PAPER 1 – Reading Comprehension

This paper, lasting 1 hour and 15 minutes, consists of either four long reading texts or three long with two or more shorter texts, and is intended to encourage familiarity with different types of written material. The texts may be correspondence, informational material, articles from newspapers or magazines, advertisements, etc. There are 35 questions which are multiple choice, gapped text or matching. You will be tested on understanding the gist of a text, main grammar points, detail in the information, and text structure or meaning.

### PAPER 2 – Writing

For this paper, lasting 1 hour and 30 minutes, you must complete one compulsory task (a letter using information given in the form of tables, diagrams, pictures, etc.) and choose one more from a list of four situation-based tasks. You will need to demonstrate your ability to write a range of texts such as letters (formal and informal), articles or reports, as well as stories and argumentative compositions. Each task must be between 120 and 180 words.

### PAPER 3 – Use of English

The paper lasts 1 hour and 30 minutes. There are five tasks with a total of 65 questions focusing on grammar and vocabulary (see pages 10–11). The paper is divided according to the language focus and style of task. The exercises are: multiple choice with an emphasis on vocabulary; gap-filling testing grammar and vocabulary; transformation sentences again testing grammar and vocabulary; detecting errors in a text with an emphasis on grammar; and finally word-building.

### PAPER 4 – Listening

This paper lasts approximately 40 minutes. There are two longer recorded texts and two series of short extracts with a total of 30 questions. The recordings may be phone messages, commentaries, announcements, speeches, reports, etc. The tasks are designed to test your understanding of the gist of the recording, main grammar points and specific information. They include multiple choice, note taking, matching and selection from two or three possible answers.

### PAPER 5 – Speaking

This part of the examination, lasting approximately 15 minutes, has four parts. It consists of a paired conversation with another candidate, and the participation of an interlocutor and an assessor who remains silent. The first part is a very short interview. After that there is an individual task in which you may be asked to give information or express your opinion by comparing photographs or pictures. In the next short exchange, you may be asked to agree or disagree, or make a decision about a drawing, photograph, etc. Finally you take part in a discussion with the interlocutor and the other candidate. You will be marked according to your overall performance. You should be able respond to questions, organise your ideas, express your opinions and exchange views in order to solve simple problems.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## *What types of questions can I expect in Paper 3?*

This book concentrates on the grammar and vocabulary you will need to pass this Paper. The exercises in the Practices, and especially the Exam practices, reflect the types of questions you will be given in the FCE exam. There are five parts.

### PART 1 – Multiple choice cloze

There is a text with 15 numbered gaps and four choices (A, B, C and D) for each. You must choose the best answer to fill each gap. Example:

**Part 1**

For Questions **1–15**, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**). Mark your answers on a separate sheet.

**Example:**

**0** **A** gone **B** brought **C** taken **D** come

Answer: *brought*

**E-MAIL OR SNAIL MAIL?**

Modern technology has (**0**) ..... about enormous improvement in communications and yet many people are still worried (**1**) ..... using the latest computer technology. I am often (**2**) ..... to meet colleagues who still don't know what the 'e' in e-mail stands for. ...

Part 1 (Questions 1–15) has an emphasis on vocabulary but often includes prepositional use, and common phrases and link phrases.

### PART 2 – Open cloze

This consists of a short passage with 15 numbered gaps. You must provide a correct word to fill each one. Example:

**Part 2**

For Questions **16–30**, read the text below and think of the word which best fills each space. Use only **one** word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

**Example:** **0** in

**THE MYSTERY OF STONEHENGE**

Stonehenge is a group of very large stones arranged (**0**) ..... circles which stand on Salisbury plain in South England. They look (**16**) ..... they've been put there by a race of giants. The stones originally came from south Wales, 240 miles away. They are (**17**) ..... big and heavy that the transportation of these stones over (**18**) ..... a distance is incredible. ...

Part 2 (Questions 16–30) tests grammar, vocabulary and spelling. Learning common phrases and collocations is very useful.

### PART 3 – Word transformation

There are 10 sentences with a gap to be filled using a given word that cannot be changed. Example:

**Part 3**

For Questions **31–40**, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the order given. **Do not change the word given**. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (**0**).

**Example:**

**0** Do you regret what you did?
**sorry**
Are you sorry for what you did?

**31** I think his wife is a journalist.
**married**
I think ..... a journalist. ...

Part 3 (Questions 31–40) also tests grammar and vocabulary with an emphasis on tenses, reported speech, the passive, conditionals, etc.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## PART 4 – Error correction

A text is provided with 10 errors. Some lines contain an extra, unnecessary word. You have to identify it. Note that in this book space is provided at the side of the lines for your answers. In the exam, you must use your answer sheet. Example:

### Part 4

For Questions **41–55**, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) by the number **on the separate answer sheet**. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word **on the separate answer sheet**. There are two examples at the beginning (**0** and **00**).

**Examples:** **0** ✓
**00** *a*

**WHY AM I LEARNING ENGLISH?**

**0** English is the most widely spoken language in the world
**00** today. It is a quite amazing how the use of English has
**41** become so widespread. The English is not as easy as Esperanto
**42** which was especially written for to be as easy as possible ...

Part 4 (Questions 41–55) tests all aspects of grammar.

## PART 5 – WORD FORMATION

This word-building exercise has a text with 10 gaps. It can involve prefixes, suffixes, changes to the whole word (e.g. *wide* to *width*) and also forming compounds. The base words are given and must be transformed to fill the gaps. Example:

### Part 5

For Questions **56–65**, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

**Example:** **0** *successful*

**ON THE BOX**

| | |
|---|---|
| What do you need to become a ..... (**0**) TV personality? | SUCCESS |
| The people who are ..... (**56**) chosen to host TV quiz | USUAL |
| shows and chat shows seem to have few ..... (**57**) for the ... | QUALIFY |

Part 5 (Questions 56–65) tests vocabulary including prefixes, suffixes and compounds.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 1

## AGENDA

### Grammar

- 1a Present Simple and Present Continuous
- 1b Past Simple, Present Perfect, Present Perfect Continuous
- 1c Past Continuous, Past Perfect, Past Perfect Continuous

### Vocabulary

- 1d *for, since, during, yet*, etc.
- 1e suffixes (1)

# Entry test

**Underline the correct tense in 1–5.**

1 I *am staying / stay* at the Imperial Hotel till they get my flat ready.
2 The River Amazon *flows / is flowing* into the Atlantic Ocean.
3 Buying a house nowadays *becomes / is becoming* more and more expensive all the time.
4 We haven't decided yet, but we *think / are thinking* of moving house.
5 Whether we play on Saturday *is depending / depends* on the weather.

**Now look at 1a on page 14.** SCORE

**Choose the correct form of the following words to fill the spaces in 6–10.**

*win discuss originate find try*

6 Jazz ..... in the United States around 1900.
7 Tom Hanks ..... an Oscar several times already.
8 Even when we were children, our parents ..... family problems with us.
9 I ..... to fix this pipe since this morning and it's still leaking.
10 Scientists still ..... a cure for cancer.

**Now look at 1b on page 18.** SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.**

11 About 100 people ..... outside the theatre for tickets when we got there.
A were queuing B queued C have queued D queue

12 This time last week I ..... to Athens.
A have driven B have drove C was driving D have been driving

13 By the time the teacher arrived, the classroom was empty: the students ..... .
A left B had left C were leaving D have left

14 The witness claimed he ..... the accused before.
A did not see B hasn't seen C wasn't seeing D hadn't seen

15 I ..... a shower when the telephone rang.
A had B was having C have had D have

**Now look at 1c on page 21.**

SCORE

**Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.**

16 She's changed a lot ..... she left school.
A for B since C during D after

17 I've been waiting in the rain ..... hours!
A during B since C for D from

18 ..... I was coming home I met my old English teacher.
A During B While C Before D Since

19 She was born twenty-five years ..... in a small village in Yorkshire.
A before B since C over D ago

20 I've ..... seen the film and I don't want to see it again.
A yet B still C already D before

**Now look at 1d on page 23.**

SCORE

**Underline the correct form of the word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 21–25.**

21 How long have you been looking for ..... ?
A employer B employ C employee D employment

22 I need a ..... to open this tin of peas.
A tin opening B tin open C tin opener D tin opened

23 You have to be a pretty good ..... to get a job as a chef.
A cooker B cuisine C cookery D cook

24 To do ..... professionally requires a lot of skill.
A photographer B photographic C photography D photograph

25 Passing the exam at so young an age was quite an ..... .
A achievement B achieve C achiever D achievable

**Now look at 1e on page 26.**

SCORE

TOTAL SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 1a Present Simple and Present Continuous

| Present Simple (base form) | Present Continuous (present of *be* + ...*-ing*) |
|---|---|
| **We use the Present Simple:**<br>• for permanent situations:<br>*I **live** in a flat.*<br>*She **works** for an insurance company.* | **We use the Present Continuous:**<br>• for temporary situations existing for a period at the present time:<br>*I'm **staying** with a friend at the moment.*<br>*She's **working** very hard nowadays.*<br>✗ ~~*Just now I **wait** to do my military service.*~~<br>✓ *Just now I **am waiting** to do my military service.* |
| | • for situations which are changing during the present time:<br>*The weather's **getting** hotter and hotter.* |
| • for repeated actions or habits:<br>*I **use** my mobile phone every day.* | • for actions, or repeated actions or habits, occurring at the moment of speaking:<br>*I **am using** John's mobile phone because I left mine at home.*<br>*You're **eating** too fast.* |
| • for general truths:<br>*The sun **rises** in the East.*<br>*Matter **consists of** small particles.*<br>✗ ~~*Water **is boiling** at 100 degrees.*~~<br>✓ *Water **boils** at 100 degrees.* | |
| • to tell stories, or summarise the plot of a film or book:<br>*Our hero **goes off** to search for the treasure, which he eventually **finds** after many adventures.* | |
| | • to express annoying habits with words like *always*:<br>*You're always **borrowing** money!* |

- When we use *always* with the Present Simple, it usually means 'every time':
  *I **always complain** if the service is bad in restaurants.*
- When we use *always* with the Present Continuous, it means 'all the time' or 'too/very often':
  *You're **always complaining** that waiters are rude.*
- We cannot use *never ... again* with the Present Simple:
  ✗ ~~*I **never speak** to you **again**.*~~
  ✓ *I'm **never speaking** to you **again**.*

- We do not usually use certain verbs in the Present Continuous, e.g.:
  appearance: *appear, resemble, seem*
  composition: *consist of, contain, have*
  connection: *come from, concern, cost, fit, suit*
  existence: *be, exist*
  knowledge: *forget, know, realise, understand*
  likes and dislikes: *dislike, hate, like, love, prefer*
  needs and wants: *need, want, wish*
  opinion: *believe, doubt, imagine, suppose, think*
  possession: *belong to, have, own, owe, possess*
  senses: *feel, hear, notice, see, smell, sound, taste*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

- We can use some of the verbs at the bottom of page 14 in the Present Continuous when they have different meanings. Here are some examples:

| Present Simple | Present Continuous |
|---|---|
| *She **has** (**got**) a big car.* (= possession)<br>*I **have** three brothers.* (= connection) | *She **is having** an operation/a good time/a meal/a bath.* (= actively involved in) |
| *They **think** it's too expensive.* (= opinion) | *They **are thinking** of buying a cheaper car.* (= considering)<br>*I'm just **thinking**.* (= at this moment) |
| *I **feel** what we did was wrong.* (= opinion) | *I **am feeling** exhausted.* (= physical reaction) |
| *Do you **see** what I mean?* (= knowledge; understand) | *Are you **seeing** a lot of Mary nowadays?* (= spending time with)<br>*You're **seeing** things – there's nobody at the window.* (= imagining) |
| *This juice **tastes** good.* (= senses) | *He **is tasting** the milk to see if it's OK.* (= checking the quality) |
| *She **appears** to be very upset.* (= appearance) | *The Blues Band **is appearing** at the Odeon on Saturday.* (= performing) |

- We can use verbs that describe the way we feel physically in a Simple or Continuous form with no change of meaning:

*I **feel** sick.* or: *I **am feeling** sick.*
*My feet **ache**.* or: *My feet **are aching**.*
*My leg **hurts**.* or: *My leg's **hurting**.*

## Practice

**1 Underline the correct tense, Present Simple or Present Continuous, in the following sentences.**

1 I'*m sleeping* / *sleep* on Niko's sofa until I find a place of my own.
2 I'*m* only *working* / only *work* there for a couple of months because I'm going abroad in the summer.
3 If you *aren't listening* / *don't listen* to the radio, why don't you switch it off?
4 His only bad habit is that he *talks* / *is talking* too loudly.
5 So in the first scene we *see* / *are seeing* him getting up and then he *goes out* / *is going out* and *meets* / *is meeting* a strange woman.
6 You *make* / *are making* goulash using meat, vegetables and paprika.
7 I never do anything I *feel* / *am feeling* is against my principles.
8 He *appears* / *is appearing* to be very friendly but I don't know him very well.
9 There's nobody at the door; you just *hear* / *are* just *hearing* things.
10 I'm thinking of doing a postgraduate degree – what *do you think* / *are you thinking*? Is it a good idea?



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Complete this letter with the correct form of the Present Simple or the Present Continuous. Use each verb in the list once. The first (0) is given as an example.**

*stand seem ~~write~~ be make shine stay taste look cost feel*

Dear Jill,

I .am writing. (0) to you from Granada where everything ..... (1) to be going just fine; we ..... (2) nice and relaxed. We ..... (3) in a gorgeous hotel just down the road from the Alhambra, which ..... (4) an old fortress built by the Moors. It ..... (5) at the top of the hill just opposite our hotel and we can see this wonderful building through our window. It ..... (6) absolutely magnificent! The hotel is lovely, but unfortunately it ..... (7) a lot to stay here! Eating out is great. Have you heard of gazpacho? It's a cold cucumber and tomato soup which they ..... (8) with oil, vinegar and garlic and it ..... (9) delicious.

Well, outside the sun ..... (10) so I'm off to get a bit of a suntan; I hope everything's OK back in Birmingham.

Lucy

**3 Read the text below and look carefully at each line. In most of the lines there is one word too many, a word that does not fit grammatically. Write this unwanted word on the right. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓). The first two are given as examples.**

THE GREENHOUSE EFFECT

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | This week in Kyoto in Japan the latest conference | ✓ |
| 00 | on the environment is being taking place. The whole | being |
| 1 | world is today watching to see what happens | ..... |
| 2 | as delegates from more than 165 countries discuss | ..... |
| 3 | what measures need not to be taken to reduce the | ..... |
| 4 | fumes that do create the Greenhouse Effect. They | ..... |
| 5 | are hope to agree on ways of reducing the amount | ..... |
| 6 | of carbon dioxide and other gases that we | ..... |
| 7 | send into the atmosphere. These gases to act the way a | ..... |
| 8 | greenhouse does and, as a result, the Earth is | ..... |
| 9 | be getting hotter and hotter all the time. The | ..... |
| 10 | temperature it is rising gradually and | ..... |
| 11 | in 100 years' time the Earth will be hotter by about 4°C. | ..... |
| 12 | The problem is be getting worse as more cars | ..... |
| 13 | are make an appearance on our already crowded roads. | ..... |
| 14 | The solution in Kyoto is depends on what the United States, | ..... |
| 15 | the most powerful nation on Earth, feels is in its interests. | ..... |



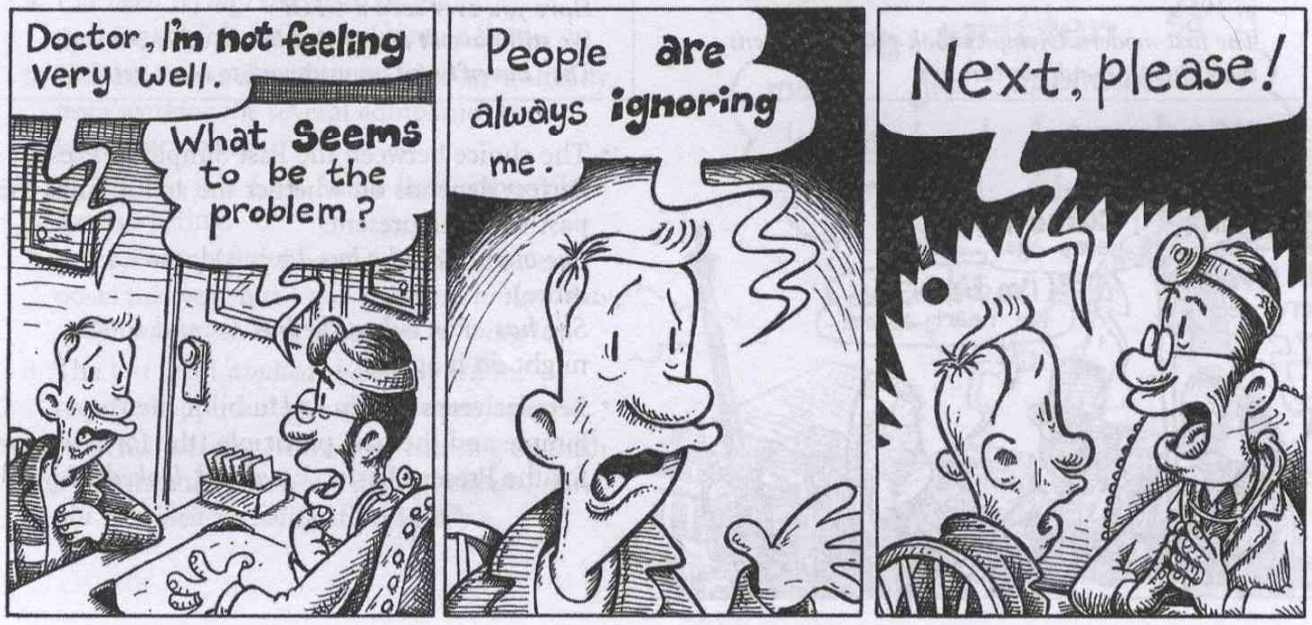
PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**4 Complete these sentences using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous. Use the verb given in brackets.**

1 My sister ..... (**wait**) patiently for her exam results.
2 We ..... (**not travel**) by train very often.
3 I ..... (**consider**) accepting that job in Crete.
4 The film ..... (**end**) with a dramatic car chase.
5 I'm sorry, I ..... (**feel**) too tired to go out this evening.
6 We ..... (**have**) a great time here in London.
7 ..... you ..... (**see**) much of your brother these days?
8 We ..... (**rely**) on you to bring the keys with you.
9 I ..... (**wish**) people didn't smoke in restaurants.
10 Who ..... you ..... (**think**) you are, speaking to me like that!

**5 Complete these sentences using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous. Use the verbs given in brackets. Add *never* or *always* if this is also given.**

1 I ..... (**use**; ***never***) my mobile phone if I ..... (**drive**).
2 I ..... (**like**; ***always***) to get post but I ..... (**seem**; ***never***) to have the time to reply.
3 The heroine ..... (**prefer**) to be with Paul because James ..... (**argue**; ***always***).
4 Maria ..... (**forget**; ***always***) what time the soap ..... (**start**).
5 You ..... (**moan**; ***always***) about the state of the flat but you ..... (**help**; ***never***) me.
6 Turtles ..... (**lay**; ***always***) their eggs on the same beach; however, they ..... (**come**; ***never***) in winter.
7 Whether I ..... (**go**) swimming or not ..... (**depend on**; ***always***) the weather.
8 I ..... (**shop**; ***never***) here again – they ..... (**be**; ***always***) so rude.
9 We ..... (**smell**; ***always***) cooking when we ..... (**pass**) your house.
10 He ..... (**borrow**; ***always***) money but he ..... (**pay**; ***always***) me back.






PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 1b Past Simple, Present Perfect, Present Perfect Continuous

## Past Simple and Present Perfect

The Present Perfect is the tense that links the past with the present.

| Past Simple (past form) | Present Perfect (present of *have* + past participle) |
|---|---|
| **We use the Past Simple:** | **We use the Present Perfect:** |
| • for past habits or states, whether continuous or repeated:<br>*Long ago, they **built** most houses out of wood.*<br>*He always **caught** the same train.* | • for actions or states in the past which have a connection with the present:<br>*They **have bought** a new house.* (= they can now go and live in it)<br>*It's just **started** to rain.* (= now, so bring the washing in)<br>• when the results of an action or state are obvious now:<br>*You'**ve spilt** the coffee all over my trousers – look!*<br>*They'**ve polluted** the river.* (= the fish are dead)<br>• for repeated actions in the past, with words like *often, rarely, seldom*:<br>*He's often **been** to France.* |
| • with periods of time that have finished:<br>*I **read** the newspaper this morning.* (= it is now afternoon or evening)<br>*He **did** a lot in his short life.* (= he's dead) | • with periods of time that have not finished yet:<br>*We'**ve built** 20 new schools this year.* (= it is still this year)<br>*He **has done** a lot in his short life.* (= he's alive and young) |
| • for finished actions with time words like *a year ago, last Sunday, last week, yesterday*, etc.:<br>*Watson and Crick **identified** the structure of DNA in 1953.*<br>*The first modern Olympics **took place** in Athens more than a hundred years ago.* | • for actions with expressions like *already, before, ever, never, often, recently, still, yet*, etc.:<br>*Rain **has already** ruined the tomato crops.*<br>***Have** you **ever seen** a UFO?*<br>*We **still haven't discovered** life on other planets.*<br>*They **haven't sent** an astronaut to Mars **yet**.* |

- The choice between the Past Simple or Present Perfect depends on whether the action links the past with the present:
  *She often **took** the bus.* (= but doesn't any more)
  *She **has** often **taken** the bus.* (= and so she might do it again)
- Regular verbs end in *-ed* in both the Past Simple and the past participle (the form we use for the Present Perfect): *worked, looked, played.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Present Perfect Continuous

We use the Present Perfect Continuous (present form of *have* + *been* + *-ing*) to talk about actions which started in the past and which continue up to the moment of speaking. We use it especially when we are interested in the duration of the action:

*I've **been waiting** for a whole hour!*

- Notice the difference between the Present Perfect Continuous and the Present Perfect :

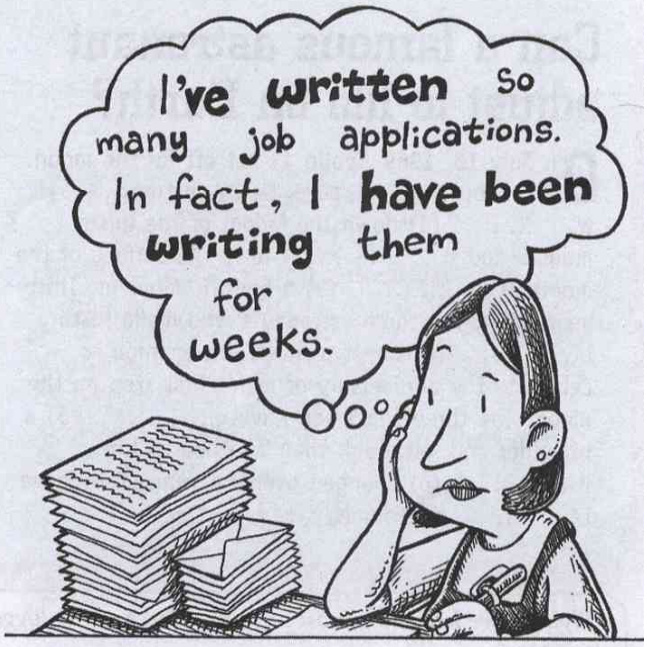
| Present Perfect | Present Perfect Continuous |
|---|---|
| *I've **done** my homework.* | *I've **been doing** my homework.* |

- The Present Perfect emphasises the idea of completion (= the homework is finished); we use the Present Perfect Continuous to indicate that the action has lasted for a period and is incomplete. Compare:
  *I've **read** the newspaper today.* (= I've finished it)
  *I've **been reading** the Encyclopaedia Britannica.* (= I haven't finished it yet)
- We often use the Present Perfect Continuous with *for* and *since* (see 1d):
  *Those potatoes **have been boiling for** an hour. And the carrots **have been boiling since** three o'clock.*

## Practice

**1 Underline the correct tense in the following sentences.**

1 I am writing in connection with the advertisement which *appeared / has appeared* on 3 December.
2 I originally *studied / have studied* mechanical engineering at university and I *graduated / have been graduating* with a first-class degree.
3 I now *completed / have* now *completed* a postgraduate degree in business and administration.
4 I'*ve been trying* / I'*ve tried* to find a permanent job for a considerable time.
5 Indeed, I *have* already *worked* / I *have* already *been working* for several companies on a temporary basis.
6 In my first job, I *was / have been* responsible for marketing.
7 I'*ve been applying / have applied* for several posts this year but I still *did not manage / have not managed* to find what I'm looking for.
8 The last job I *applied / have applied* for required applicants to speak some Japanese.
9 I *started learning / have been learning* Spanish a few months ago but I *did not obtain / have not obtained* a qualification in it yet.
10 I *did not apply / have not applied* for a job with your company before.
11 I *hoped / have hoped* that you would consider my application favourably.
12 However, I *have been waiting / have waited* for a reply for several weeks and I still *have not received / did not receive* any answer.






PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Fill in the gaps with the correct verb. Use the correct form of the Past Simple or Present Perfect. Use each verb once.**

*arrive go have hear do read tell invite come explain buy visit take look at*

## Interview with Katerina Denuevo, film star

*Interviewer:* You've never been to our country before, right? What are your first impressions?

*Katerina:* I ..... (1) many interesting things about your country in magazines and newspapers; before I ..... (2), people ..... (3) me you were all very friendly, and when I ..... (4) at the airport everyone brought me flowers. And it's true, your shops are wonderful! I (already) ..... (5) some shopping – I ..... (6) a colourful scarf and some hand-painted china.

*Interviewer:* ..... you ..... (7) time to do any sightseeing yet?

*Katerina:* Yes, I ..... (8) a stroll round the Old Town. At one restaurant the owner ..... (9) me to try some of your specialities; he ..... (10) to me some of the secrets of your cuisine – the way you prepare mushrooms is excellent.

*Interviewer:* What about the future? .....you (ever) ..... (11) to see a fortune-teller, and do you read your horoscope?

*Katerina:* I (never) ..... (12) my horoscope. All I know is I'm a Scorpio!

*Interviewer:* Will you come here again?

*Katerina:* As soon as I can. I ..... (13) Kraków yet which I ..... (14) so much about.

**Which country is Katerina visiting? Underline it.**

France Poland Greece Spain

**3 Fill each gap in the following text with one suitable word. The first letter of each word is given.**

## Can a famous astronaut adjust to life on Earth?

On July 16, 1969 Apollo 11 set off for the moon. After four days in space, Neil Armstrong w..... (1) down the ladder of the lunar module and s..... (2) onto the surface of the moon. It w..... (3) a historic moment. Thirty years later, the three astronauts who made history h..... (4) never planned any reunion to celebrate the anniversary of man's first step on the moon. The three spacemen have g..... (5) a bit older and, although their attitude to life h..... (6) changed over the years, they have r..... (7) friends.

Armstrong has r..... (8) to give interviews about his private life. After Apollo 11, he w..... (9) at NASA; he l..... (10) in 1971 to become an engineering professor at Cincinnati University. In 1979 he g..... (11) up teaching, and since then he has b..... (12) working as a business consultant.

Andrew Chalkin, a space journalist, has been r..... (13) the lives of the Apollo astronauts and has h..... (14) unique access to them. He has just w..... (15) a book on the subject. He says that Armstrong is not a very easy man to know, although he is very warm once you do get to know him.

*'Flying? I've **been** to almost as many places as my luggage!'*
BOB HOPE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 1c Past Continuous, Past Perfect, Past Perfect Continuous

## Past Continuous

We use the Past Continuous (past form of *be* + *-ing*) to talk about something which was in progress during a period of time in the past:

*I **was listening** to the news on television at nine o'clock last night.*

- We use it to give background information:
  *It **was pouring** with rain and she **was wondering** what to do.*
- We also use it with the Past Simple to say that something happened in the middle of something else:
  ✗ ~~*I **slept** when my friend called.*~~
  ✓ *I **was sleeping** when my friend called.*

## Past Perfect

The Past Perfect (*had* + past participle) is the past form of the Present Perfect. We use it to talk about a past event which happened before another past event:

✗ ~~*When I **bought** some fruit I went back to the beach.*~~
✓ *When I **had bought** some fruit I went back to the beach.*

- We often use the Past Perfect with *when* or *after*:
  ***After** they **had eaten**, they cleared the table.*
- We also use the Past Perfect in indirect speech when reporting the Past Simple or Present Perfect:
  *'I have found the answer.'* becomes: *She told us she **had found** the answer.*
- Compare the Past Perfect and the Past Simple:
  *When I arrived at the party, Mary **left**.* (= I arrived and then Mary left)
  *When I arrived at the party, Mary **had left**.* (= Mary left and then I arrived)

## Past Perfect Continuous

The Past Perfect Continuous (*had been* + *-ing*) is the past form of the Present Perfect Continuous. We use it to talk about something which had been in progress up to the time in the past we are talking about:

*They **had been climbing** for five hours before they reached the top of the mountain.*
*I **had been feeling** sleepy all day so I went to bed early.*

## Practice

**1 Complete the sentences below using the information in the box opposite.**

**Discoveries**

1 Fleming was studying influenza .....
2 Columbus discovered America .....
3 Hillary and Tenzing reached the top of Everest .....
4 Scott reached the South Pole in 1912 .....
5 Franklin was flying a kite when .....
6 Before Columbus discovered America .....
7 Newton made his great discovery .....
8 Climbers had been trying to conquer Everest .....

a after they had been climbing for several days.
b when he discovered penicillin.
c but Amundsen had beaten him by a month.
d though at first he believed he had reached Asia.
e he discovered the principle of the lightning conductor.
f and several had lost their lives in the attempt.
g people had believed that the Earth was flat.
h while he was sitting under an apple tree.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Complete the sentences using the Past Continuous, Past Perfect or Past Perfect Continuous. Use the verb given in brackets. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.**

1 They stood under the shelter because it ..... (**rain**).
2 The roads were wet because it ..... (**rain**) all night.
3 He was broke. He ..... (**spend**) all his money.
4 I ..... (**have**) a nightmare when the alarm went off and woke me up.
5 His hands were covered in oil because he ..... (**try**) to fix the car all morning. Unfortunately, he ..... (**manage**) to make it start.
6 When she opened the window she was happy to see it ..... (**snow**) lightly. In fact, it ..... (**snow**) all night and snow ..... (**cover**) all the rooftops.
7 When Mrs Morgan came into the classroom, the pupils ..... (**run**) around and ..... (**scream**) at the tops of their voices. They ..... (**knock**) over chairs and desks and someone ..... (**draw**) funny pictures on the board.
8 Although I ..... (**set**) off early, I got there late and everyone ..... (**wait**) for me to start the meeting; the chairperson told me they ..... (**wait**) for a whole hour.
9 When we got back from our holiday we discovered that someone ..... (**break**) into our house. The burglars, however, ..... (**drop**) a piece of paper with an address on it as they ..... (**climb**) out of the window.

**3 Fill each gap in this text with one suitable word.**

# DISASTER!

About seventy years ago, a Dutch ship was ..... (1) near the North Pole; it ..... (2) heading for Blacklead Island. On the ship was a scientist, Edgar Greenhead, who ..... (3) worked on the island for many years; he had ..... (4) conducting research into the life of the local inhabitants, who were Eskimos (Inuits). Greenhead had ..... (5) away for a long holiday and now he was ..... (6) back to the island to continue his work.

At about midnight, Greenhead felt very tired as he had ..... (7) writing his journal all day. After he had ..... (8) good-night to the captain, he ..... (9) down to his cabin. Outside there ..... (10) a strong wind, and the waves ..... (11) crashing onto the side of the ship. Greenhead was just ..... (12) ready to climb into his bunk when he suddenly ..... (13) a great crash. He dashed up on deck and although it was dark he ..... (14) see that the ship ..... (15) run into an iceberg.

*Before John Kennedy became President in 1960 he **had said** that the state of the country was bad; when he became President he said things were just as bad as he'**d been saying** they were.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 1d for, since, during, yet, etc.

### since and for

We use *since* to indicate a starting-point:
*They haven't met **since** the wedding.* (= *since* + noun phrase)
*A lot has happened to me **since** I last wrote to you.* (= *since* + clause)

- We can use *It's a long time, two weeks,* etc. + *since* + Past Simple to focus on the period:
  ***It's ages since** I saw Eva.*

We use *for* to say how long something lasts:
*I'm tired. We've been walking **for** four hours.*
*I haven't seen Eva **for** ages.*
✗ ~~*I've have been living in London **since** four weeks.*~~
✓ *I've been living in London **for** four weeks.*

### over / during

We use *over / during* to indicate the period of time in which something happens or develops:
***Over / During** the last eighteen months there have been three tax increases.*

- Compare the use of *since*:
  ***Since** the middle of last year* (= the starting-point) *there have been three tax increases.*

### from … to / until / till

We use *from … to / until / till* to indicate when something starts and ends – *from* one point in time *to* another:
*Dinner is **from** eight o'clock **to** ten o'clock.*
*I waited **from** ten **till** two.*

- We can use *from …* without *to / until / till* if we do not say when something ends:
  *I was training **from** ten o'clock.*

### from and since

Compare *from* and *since*:
*The minister was here **from** ten o'clock.* (= he came at ten o'clock)
*They've been here **since** ten o'clock.* (= they're still here)

### for and during

*For* answers the question 'how long?'. We use it with time expressions to talk about actions that last the whole of the period of time:
*He was with the company **for forty years**.*

1958 ——— 1998 ———➤ now
└ His time with the company ┘

- We use *during* + *that week, your stay, the match,* etc. when one action happened inside a period of time:
  ***During that year** he rose from deputy manager to managing director.*

- Here are some typical phrases we use with *for* and *during*:
  ***for** two hours / a whole week / a long time / a couple of days / a minute or so*
  ***during** office hours / the day / the full ninety minutes / the twentieth century / the interval*

### during or while?

*During* is a preposition. We use it before a noun (phrase). We never use *during* with a clause.
*We didn't see anybody **during** the holidays.*
└ NOUN ┘

*While* is a conjunction. We use it with a clause:
*We didn't see anybody **while** we were on holiday.*
└ CLAUSE ┘

✗ ~~***During** I was at home, a salesman called.*~~
✓ ***While** I was at home, a salesman called.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## ago, already, before, still and yet

| word | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***ago*** | tells you how long before the moment of speaking. We use *ago* with the Past Simple, not the Present Perfect. It comes after a time phrase. | *I came to Rome exactly six months* ***ago****.*<br>*I'm writing in reply to your letter which I received two days* ***ago****.* |
| ***already*** | expresses surprise that something has happened sooner than expected. Or, we use it to say that something that has been done need not be repeated. We normally use it in positive sentences and questions. We often use it with Perfect tenses. It can come in the mid or end position. | *Is the taxi* ***already*** *here? Is the taxi here* ***already****?*<br>*I've* ***already*** *tried that. I've tried that* ***already****.* |
| ***before*** | earlier than a time in the past | *I went to the airport last Monday to meet Sue. I hadn't been to the airport* ***before****.* (= before last Monday) |
| ***still*** | tells you that something is continuing and has not finished. It can suggest surprise that it continues longer than expected. We use it in mid position and if the sentence is negative, it comes before the negative word. | *I've been to Rome several times but I* ***still*** *like going there.*<br>*I've had fifty driving lessons, but I* ***still*** *can't drive very well.*<br>*We've been waiting for an hour, but she* ***still*** *isn't here.* |
| ***yet*** | tells you that something expected to happen has not happened (we use a negative sentence), or to ask if it has happened (we use a question). We use it at the end of a sentence. | *I haven't had breakfast* ***yet****.* (= I expected to have it before now)<br>*Aren't you ready* ***yet****?* (= I expected you to be ready before now) |

(See also 6d.)

## Practice

**1 Fill in each gap with one suitable word.**

1 It must be a month ..... we last had a meal together.
2 We haven't eaten together ..... about a month.
3 ..... her stay here she made a lot of good friends.
4 ..... she was staying here, she made a lot of good friends.
5 Dabizas was injured ..... the last minute of the match.
6 ..... several seasons Dabizas has never been seriously injured in a game.
7 ..... 1998, Dabizas has only been badly injured once on the pitch.
8 Do you know, I'd never been to Rome ..... our visit together.
9 Really? I've been there twice ..... this year.
10 If you go that often, do you ..... enjoy it?
11 Of course. However, I haven't been to Milan ..... .
12 Oh, I have. I went there about a year ..... .



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Fill in the gaps, using the words given. You may use some words more than once.**

*ago since already before still until while for yet during in from*

## FLYING HOME

A couple of months ago Charles was in Athens on his way back to the States from a business trip. It had been ages ..... (1) he had felt so angry. He had been at the airport ..... (2) seven o'clock in the morning ..... (3) now, waiting for a flight to New York. An announcement had ..... (4) been made to say that the plane was delayed due to 'technical problems'. Half an hour ..... (5) that, another announcement had said there was to be a delay caused by air traffic congestion. Now the plane had been sitting on the runway ..... (6) at least an hour but it was ..... (7) not ready to board. ..... (8) this delay, Charles tried to complete his report, which he hadn't finished ..... (9), though his boss was expecting it on his return. There was a lot of noise going on around him ..... (10) he was trying to put the finishing touches to his final paragraph so ..... (11) the end he gave up. It had been years ..... (12) Charles had travelled by plane. He avoided flying if he could, ever ..... (13) a particularly unpleasant flight years ..... (14) when he was ..... (15) convinced flying was the worst way to get around.

**3 Fill in each gap with one suitable word.**

1 The accident happened ten years ..... .
2 Just five minutes ..... the train left I was still in a traffic jam.
3 I know this place – I'm sure I've been here ..... but I can't remember when.
4 I ..... enjoy this type of music, even though it isn't very fashionable nowadays.
5 The design of the building is similar to those that have ..... been built.
6 I won't have a coffee thanks – I've had one ..... .
7 I don't know the answer ..... . I'll let you know as soon as I can.
8 A solution to the problem has ..... not been found.
9 Haven't you finished having a shower ..... ?
10 I started learning English two years ..... .

**4 Write these sentences using *already, still* or *yet* in the correct position. More than one word, or more than one position, may be possible.**

1 The style is similar to others that have been built.
.....
2 I'm sorry, but your dry-cleaning isn't ready.
.....
3 Lucy asked me to e-mail the office in Vienna but I've done it.
.....
4 Do you need a visa to travel to Hungary?
.....
5 My birthday isn't for ages.
.....
6 It's raining so there's no point in going to the beach.
.....
7 Has your uncle arrived?
.....
8 I've waited a whole hour and he hasn't come.
.....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 1e suffixes (1)

We normally use suffixes to change a word to a different part of speech:
*employ* (verb) + ***er*** = *employer* (noun).
Sometimes a suffix produces a change in meaning:
*neighbour* + ***hood*** = *neighbourhood*
We use the following suffixes to make nouns (see also 3e, 4e, 10e, 12e, 13e):

| form | use | examples |
|---|---|---|
| verb + ***er*** | forms a noun that describes sb's occupation, or what sb does | *employ – employer, shop – shopper, teach – teacher work – worker, write – writer* |
| verb + ***or*** | forms a noun that describes sb's occupation, or what sb does | *act – actor, invest – investor, invigilate – invigilator operate – operator, sail – sailor, supervise – supervisor* |
| verb + ***er*** | forms a noun that describes what sth does | *cook – cooker, dry hair – hair dryer, grate – grater open (tins) – tin-opener, sharpen (pencils) – pencil-sharpener, wash dishes – dishwasher, wipe a windscreen – windscreen wiper* |
| verb/noun + ***ee*** | forms a noun that describes what sb does, or who sb is | *employ – employee, pay – payee, refuge – refugee* |
| verb/noun + ***ing*** | forms a noun that describes an example or act | *draw – drawing, build – building* |
| noun + ***eer*** | forms a noun that says what activity sb does | *engineer, mountaineer* |
| noun/verb/ adjective + ***ist*** | forms a noun that expresses sb's belief or occupation | *anarchist, artist, Buddhist, journalist, physicist, pianist, typist, violinist* |
| adjective + ***ity*** | forms an abstract noun | *equal – equality, flexible – flexibility* |
| adjective + ***ness*** | forms an abstract noun | *good – goodness, great – greatness, happy – happiness, sad – sadness* |
| noun + ***hood*** | forms an abstract noun | *brother – brotherhood, mother – motherhood, neighbour – neighbourhood* |
| noun + ***ship*** | forms an abstract noun | *champion – championship, friend – friendship* |
| verb + ***ance, ence*** | forms an abstract noun | *admit – admittance, emerge – emergence* |
| verb + ***ment*** | forms an abstract noun | *achieve – achievement, employ – employment, enjoy – enjoyment, excite – excitement* |
| verb + ***(a)tion, (i)tion*** or ***sion*** | forms an abstract noun | *form – formation, alter – alteration, complicate – complication, educate – education, occupy – occupation, qualify – qualification, invent – invention, oppose – opposition, pollute – pollution, produce – production, cohere – cohesion, omit – omission, profess – profession, revise – revision* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Complete the chart with the correct noun. Underlined words will help you.**

| clue | noun |
|---|---|
| 1 s/he takes photographs | ..... |
| 2 s/he plays the guitar | ..... |
| 3 it washes dishes | ..... |
| 4 the state of being able to do something | ..... |
| 5 the relationship you have with your friend | ..... |
| 6 s/he designs roads, bridges and machines | ..... |
| 7 s/he writes for a newspaper | ..... |
| 8 he acts in films and plays | ..... |
| 9 the thing we make when we build | ..... |
| 10 the quality of being important | ..... |
| 11 the period when you are a child | ..... |
| 12 the feeling of being excited | ..... |
| 13 the state of being happy | ..... |
| 14 knowledge you get when you are educated | ..... |
| 15 the act of dividing something | ..... |
| 16 entering a place, or the cost of entering | ..... |
| 17 the thing we open tins with | ..... |
| 18 s/he is forced to seek refuge in a new country | ..... |
| 19 something we do when we are active | ..... |
| 20 the state or fact of being great | ..... |

**2 Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. The first (0) is given as an example.**

### A challenge for Europe

| | |
|---|---|
| Although recently there has been a small ...reduction... (0) in the | REDUCE |
| number of people out of work in Europe, ..... (1) | EMPLOY |
| is still the number one ..... (2) problem facing the fifteen member | SOCIETY |
| states of the European Union. Moreover, ..... (3) of opportunity | EQUAL |
| between men and women is still an issue that ..... (4) in many countries | POLITICAL |
| have not come to grips with. In ..... (5) such as the law and | PROFESS |
| engineering women are still noticeable by their absence. ..... (6) | EMPLOY |
| still discriminate against female ..... (7) in a number of ways | EMPLOY |
| even if their ..... (8) are the same as those of men. | QUALIFY |
| It would be a pity if the ..... (9) of the EU on an economic | ACHIEVE |
| level were marred by ..... (10) in the vital area of social policy. | FAIL |

*The roots of **education** are bitter but the fruit is sweet.*
ARISTOTLE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 2

## AGENDA

### Grammar

- 2a the future
- 2b *be going to*, Present Continuous, Present Simple
- 2c Future Continuous and Future Perfect

### Vocabulary

- 2d phrasal verbs: time and chang
- 2e prefixes (1)

# Entry test

**Underline the correct tense in sentences 1–5.**

1 Leave the dishes – *I'll / I'm going to* do them for you if you like.
2 It's already five to eight – you're going to *miss / missing* the train.
3 I think *I have / I'll have* a break now; I'm exhausted.
4 *Am I going / Shall I go* and get a video for this evening?
5 Look out, *you will step / you're going to step* on the cat!

**Now look at 2a on page 30.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.**

6 I can't come tonight – ..... my in-laws.
A I visit B I visited C I'm visiting D I will visit

7 Next month, the National Theatre ..... a new production of Hamlet.
A are putting on B shall put on C put on D putting on

8 ..... a successful author one day.
A I'm being B I'm going to be C I go to be D I be

9 According to the programme, the show ..... at 9 o'clock prompt.
A is start B shall start C starts D starting

10 ..... to John's party on Saturday – do you want to come?
A I go B I will go C I going D I'm going

**Now look at 2b on page 32.**

SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.**

11 This time tomorrow ..... on the beach sunbathing and drinking freshly squeezed fruit juice!
A I'll lie B I'll have lain C I'll be lying
D I'll will have been lying

12 By next August, I ..... my exams and I'll be ready for a holiday.
A will have been finishing B am finishing C will be finishing
D will have finished

13 Shall I take your letters to the post office? ..... there anyway.
A I will go B I'll have gone C I'll have been going
D I'll be going

14 The work ..... by next week so we'll be free to do what we want.
A will be finished B are finishing C will have finished
D will have been finishing

15 By August, ..... in this house for twenty years.
A I'll have lived B I am living C I'm going to live
D I will live

**Now look at 2c on page 34.**

SCORE

**Underline the correct verb A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 16–20.**

16 If the strike's still on we'll have to ..A... our trip till another time.
A put off B call off C carry on D go through

17 She ..A..... till the early hours listening to pop music.
A held me up B caught me up C kept me up D took me up

18 As children, we were ..C..... to respect our elders.
A grown up B kept up C brought up D held up

19 They should ..D..... corporal punishment at school, if you ask me.
A get back B carry on C keep up D bring back

20 I wish you'd stop chatting and ..B... with some work.
A get down B get on C come on D come back

**Now look at 2d on page 36.**

SCORE

**In questions 21–25 add the correct prefix in the spaces to complete the sentences.**

21 I think that waiter .....charged us. What cheek!

22 You mustn't .....do things – you need to work less and relax more.

23 I can't get my laces .....done. They're in a knot.

24 The music on the radio did not .....please him. He simply paid no attention to it.

25 This food is a bit .....cooked – ask them to put it back in the oven.

**Now look at 2e on page 38.**

SCORE

TOTAL SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 2a the future

We can use different ways to express the future in English. The choice depends on the situation. Here are the main forms and their uses (see also 6b):

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| Future Simple with ***will*** + base form | • decisions made at the moment of speaking | *OK, I'll **see** you this evening at eight.*<br>✗ ~~*All right. I'm **going to see** you at eight.*~~<br>✓ *All right, I'll **see** you at eight.* |
| | • predictions, often with *I believe, expect, hope, think*, etc. | *I think it **will be** a difficult game.* |
| | • offers or willingness | *I'll **give** you a lift if you like.*<br>*All right. I'll **water** the plants.* |
| | • requests | ***Will** you **do** me a favour?* |
| | • firm intentions, promises | *I'll **love** you forever.* |
| | • threats | *I **won't speak** to you ever again!* |
| | • facts about the future | *Christmas day **will fall** on Tuesday this year.* |
| ***be going to*** + base form | • intentions, plans | *I'm **going to phone** him tomorrow.* |
| | • something in the future is because of something in the present | ✗ ~~*Look. It will **rain**.*~~<br>✓ *Look. It's **going to rain**.* |
| | • predictions, especially when there is evidence | *That building **is going to collapse** soon.* |
| ***shall*** + base form | • suggestions | ***Shall** we **go** for a walk?* |
| | • offers (with *I* or *we*) | ***Shall** I **help** you with those bags?* |
| | • asking for advice | *What **shall** I **say** if she calls?* |
| Future Continuous ***will be*** + ***-ing*** | • activities planned to a future time | *We'll **be waiting** outside the station.* |
| | • arrangements, routines | *I'll **be going** by bus as usual.* |
| Present Continuous ***be*** + ***-ing*** | • arrangements, often with *tonight, at eight, this weekend*, etc. | *I'm **having** my hair **cut** today.* |
| ***be*** + ***to***-infinitive | • official arrangements, especially when announced | *The President **is to visit** Brussels next week.* |
| Present Simple | • firm plans or timetables, especially after *when, as soon as, until*, etc. | *The boat **leaves** the island on Friday.*<br>*I'll phone you when I **arrive**.* |
| ***would*** + base form | • reporting predictions in the past, often with *I believed, hoped*, etc. | *I thought it **would be** a difficult game.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Match the first sentence (1–14) with the second sentence (a–n) to make short exchanges.**

*Example:* 0 + o

(0 'Look at all those dark clouds.')
1 'Mum, I've dropped my glass of milk.'
2 'The meeting will be held on Tuesday at 3pm.'
3 'What time did she say she's going to get here?'
4 'I told her to tidy her room but she won't.'
5 'How much longer are you going to be?'
6 'I feel awful. I think I'm going to faint.'
7 'I'll come and help you clear the attic in a moment.'
8 'Tessa seems to have gained a lot of weight.'
9 'Shall we go now? I've had enough.'
10 'Will you please shut the door?'
11 'What shall I get for dinner?'
12 'When am I going to see you again?'
13 'What do you think you'll do when you finish?'
14 'I'm just going to go to the post office.'

a 'Shall I have a word with her?'
b 'I'll be with you in just a minute.'
c 'That's easy. I'm going to get a job that earns me lots of money.'
d 'Thanks. That will be very helpful.'
e 'Actually she's going to have a baby.'
f 'Never mind. Accidents will happen.'
g 'I'm not sure I'll be able to come.'
h 'She'll probably be here by 9.30.'
i 'I'll call the doctor right away.'
j 'Let's just have fish and chips.'
k 'Perhaps I'll see you tomorrow.'
l 'No, I won't. Do it yourself!'
m 'Are you? I'll come with you.'
n 'OK. I'll just get your coat.'
(o 'Yes, there's going to be a storm.')

**2 Complete the conversation using *will/won't, shall/shan't, going to/not going to* and the verbs given at the end of the lines. The first is given as an example.**

ROSA Hi, what ...are... you ...doing... this evening? **do**
..... I ..... (1) round? **come**
MARIA Not this evening. I ..... (2) busy till late. **be**
ROSA When do you think it ..... (3) convenient for me to pop round? **be**
MARIA Well, ..... we ..... (4) the dates? **check**
Have you got your diary handy? Now, let's see. Today is Tuesday the 20th so tomorrow ..... (5) Wednesday 21st. I ..... (6) so busy **be**
tomorrow – what about you? Do you think you ..... (7) free? **be**
ROSA I ..... (8) my dentist tomorrow. Is Thursday OK? **see**
MARIA Yeah. I think that ..... (9) fine. **be**
ROSA OK. What time ..... I ..... (10) round? **come**
MARIA I ..... (11) the house at all on Thursday so I don't think **leave**
it ..... (12) a problem, whatever time you come. **be**
ROSA That's fine.
MARIA And ..... you ..... (13) the manuscript with you? **bring**
ROSA Don't worry. I ..... (14) it. **forget**
MARIA OK. I ..... (15) you Thursday then. Cheers. **see**

*Things **will get worse** before they **get better**.* (ENGLISH SAYING)
*Things **will get worse** before they **get worse**.* (PESSIMIST)



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 2b *be going to*, Present Continuous, Present Simple

## Present Continuous or *be going to*?

We often use the Present Continuous to talk about the near future rather than the distant future:

*I'm **taking** the kids to the cinema this evening.*
*I'm **getting up** at 6.30 tomorrow.*

- We can use *be going to* or the Present Continuous for more distant events:
  *We're **going to sail**/'re **sailing** round the world next year.*
- To talk about plans, we can use the Present Continuous or *be going to* in the same future situations, sometimes with a slight change of emphasis (To ask about plans or arrangements we use the Future Continuous. See 2c):
  *I'm **going to see** my psychiatrist tomorrow.* (= I intend to see my psychiatrist tomorrow)
  *I'm **seeing** my psychiatrist tomorrow.* (= I have already arranged to see my psychiatrist tomorrow)
- If there is no plan or arrangement, we can only use *be going to*. This use is prediction, especially when there is evidence. The Present Continuous is not possible:
  *Those dark clouds mean we **are going to have** a storm.*
  ✗ ~~*You're getting a headache if you don't turn the volume down.*~~
  ✓ *You're **going to get** a headache if you don't turn the volume down.*

## Present Continuous or Present Simple?

In future use, the Present Simple always suggests a fixed timetable. The Present Continuous can suggest the possibility of change:

✗ ~~*The sun is rising at six tomorrow.*~~
✓ *The sun **rises** at six tomorrow.*
*I'm **seeing** him at six o'clock.* (= my plan)
*I **see** him at six o'clock.* (= my fixed schedule)

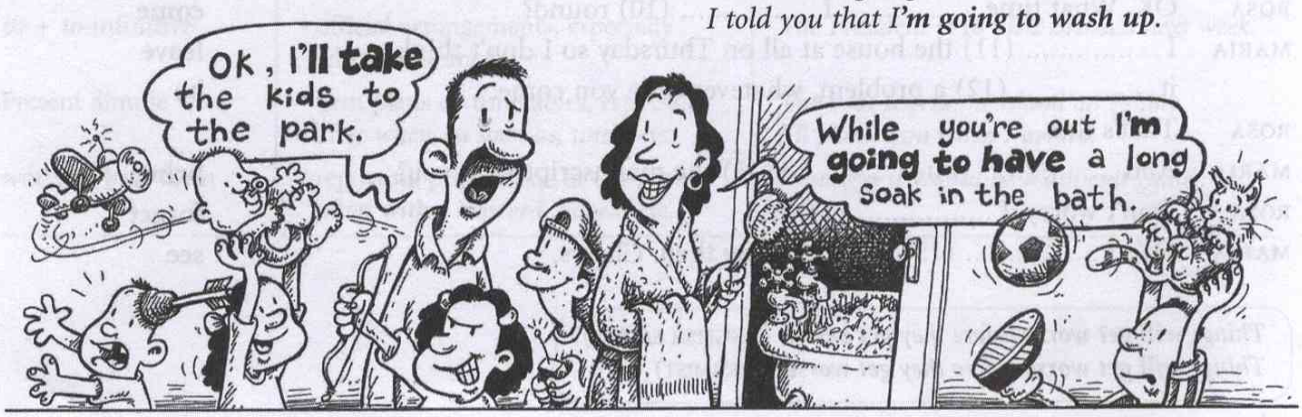
- We often use the Present Continuous for personal arrangements, and the Present Simple for when an official or a committee makes the arrangements:
  *I'm **seeing** Mikis at the weekend.* (= my arrangement)
  *I **leave** for London tomorrow.* (= my boss says so)

## *be going to* or *will*?

We use *be going to* to talk about something we know will happen because of information in the present (see also 3b):

*The sky's grey – I think it's **going to rain**.*
*It's eight o'clock – you're **going to be** late again.*

- We use *will* to talk about something we believe will happen:
  *Don't carry that heavy box – you **will hurt** your back.*
- We also use *will* to indicate a sudden decision:
  *Leave the washing up – I'**ll do** it later.*
- We can use *going to* if we decided earlier:
  *I told you that I'**m going to wash up**.*






PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Complete these sentences using *be going to, will,* the Present Continuous or the Present Simple. Use the verbs in brackets.**

1 Look, that car over there ..... (**crash**)!
2 I can't come tonight because I ..... (**stay in**) to watch TV.
3 The Prime Minister ..... (**travel**) to Brussels tomorrow.
4 The match ..... (**start**) at 3pm as always.
5 Don't worry about the car; I ..... (**phone**) for a taxi.
6 Nina often ..... (**visit**) her parents.
7 I ..... (**be**) rich one day!
8 According to my diary, we ..... (**meet**) at 3pm tomorrow.
9 We ..... (**win**) the European Cup next year.
10 The National Theatre ..... (**celebrate**) its thirtieth anniversary soon.

**2 Put the verb in brackets into the most suitable form of the future.**

1 'What ..... you ..... this evening?' (**do**) 'Nothing'.
'Well, ..... we ..... to that new pizzeria?' (**go**)
2 In 2004 the Olympic Games ..... in Athens. (**take place**)
3 Which showing do you want to go to? The film ..... at nine and eleven. (**start**)
4 I ..... work at five – so shall we meet at a quarter past? (**finish**)
5 Seven o'clock isn't possible as I ..... something else then. (**do**)
6 This lesson is boring. When ..... it ..... to ..... ? (**finish**)

**3 Underline the most suitable form of the future in the following text.**

# AQUARIUS

All Aquarians this month (1) *get off / are getting off* to a good start with some good news on the home front. The news (2) *is helping / will help* to relax recent tensions and give you the chance to make a fresh start. There (3) *shall / will* be lots of new things on other fronts this month. It really (4) *is going to be / is being* a time of great opportunity. A special person (5) *shall come / is coming* into your life soon – and you mustn't think this (6) *is going to be / is being* just another friendship. At work, you (7) *are needing / will need* to rise to new challenges that (8) *are testing / will test* your character to the utmost. If you (9) *make / are making* a wrong move, you (10) *will probably regret / probably regret* it. In short, this is a month which (11) *will bring / shall bring* many opportunities but there (12) *will be / are being* risks, too, so be careful!

WOMAN: *I'm **getting married** on Saturday and we're **having** a traditional wedding.*
MAN: *Are you **having** a white wedding?*
WOMAN: *Yes, and I'm **going to wear** my grandmother's dress.*
MAN: *And what's your grandmother **going to wear**?*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 2c Future Continuous and Future Perfect

## Future Continuous

The Future Continuous (*will be -ing*) can refer to temporary activities during a future period:

*This time next week, she'**ll be flying** to New York.* (= she has planned to fly to New York then)

- The Future Continuous often refers to a routine or to things which will happen in the normal course of events. It emphasises that no new arrangement is necessary:
  *I can give you a lift to the station. It's no trouble for me – I'**ll be going** that way anyway.*
- We use the Future Continuous to ask about someone's plan or arrangement:
  ***Will** you be **using** the library this afternoon?*
  *When **will** the President **be arriving** because I must organise the reception?*

## Future Continuous or Future Simple?

We use the Future Simple (*will* + infinitive without *to*) to indicate a personal decision at the moment of speaking:

*OK, I'**ll see** you this evening.*

- In the Future Continuous, the activity has already been decided:
  ✗ ~~*This time tomorrow I **will lie** on the beach.*~~
  ✓ *This time tomorrow I'**ll be lying** on the beach.*
  *We'**ll be staying** here until next weekend.*
  *I'**ll be driving** to Madrid next week so I can give you a lift if you like.*
- The Future Simple in questions can sound less polite than the Future Continuous. Compare:
  ***Will** you **drive** me to the airport?*
  ***Will** you be **driving** me to the airport?* (= more polite)

## Future Perfect

We use the Future Perfect (*will have -ed*) to talk about something that will finish at a time in the future.

*I'**ll have finished** this assignment by Saturday.*

*Today is Tuesday. Rosie says she **will have finished** her assignments by Saturday.* (= Rosie will finish at any time up to Saturday, but not later)

✗ ~~*When I finish this book it means I **will read** all of her books.*~~
✓ *When I finish this book it means I **will have read** all of her books.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Complete these pairs of sentences using the Future Simple, the Future Continuous or the Future Perfect. Use the verb given in brackets.**

1 **a** ..... part in our play? You're a really good actor, we need you! (**take**)
**b** I know you're a keen member of the drama group. I suppose you ..... part in the play this year. (**take**)

2 **a** I ..... in London next year, still doing the same old job. (**be**)
**b** I ..... in London for ten years by next June. (**be**)

3 **a** By Friday, I ..... this new book by Marquez. (**finish**)
**b** If I don't have too much work this year, I think I ..... all of Marquez's novels. (**finish**)

4 **a** This time tomorrow, Maria ..... on a beach in Majorca. (**sunbathe**)
**b** I expect she ..... until she gets badly burnt – that's what she did last year. (**sunbathe**)

5 **a** Don't make too much noise after midnight – I ..... soundly, I hope. (**sleep**)
**b** Wake me up by nine o'clock – I ..... long enough by then. (**sleep**)

6 **a** We ..... to Australia later this summer. It's a long flight. (**fly**)
**b** It's strange that when we get to Sydney, we ..... half way round the world. (**fly**)

7 **a** Look, I can give you a lift to the station – I ..... that way anyway. (**drive**)
**b** You'll be late for your train – I ..... you to the station if you like. (**drive**)

**2 Fill in the spaces using the Future Simple, the Future Continuous or the Future Perfect of the verb in brackets. The first (0) is given as an example.**

ROSA When shall I ..... (0 *come round*)? Is Thursday still OK?
MARIA Well, don't come at six – I ..... (1 *work*) then.
ROSA What time do you think you ..... (2 *be*) free?
MARIA Let's see, I ..... (3 *work*) on the manuscript all day as I told you, and I expect I ..... (4 *complete*) the second chapter by about seven. OK?
ROSA Yes, because I ..... (5 *be*) quite busy at about six tomorrow as well. I've got an appointment with my dentist and I don't think she ..... (6 *finish*) much before seven.
MARIA Well, we really must be getting on with the book, you know – by the end of this month we ..... (7 *work on*) the project for a whole year. It's taking far too long.
ROSA Yes, I ..... (8 *jump*) for joy when it's finished.
MARIA Me too. By the way, ..... (9 *go*) near the post office?
ROSA Probably. It's not far from the dentist.
MARIA You see, I've been expecting an important parcel and I think it ..... (10 *arrive*) by Thursday. If you ..... (11 *go*) past there anyway, could you collect it for me?
ROSA No problem. So, I ..... (12 *see*) you later. Bye for now.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 2d phrasal verbs: time and change

| phrasal verb | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***bring back*** sth; ***bring*** sth ***back*** | reintroduce | *They are going to **bring back** the old system.* |
| ***bring up*** sb; ***bring*** sb ***up*** | raise children | *Are you **bringing** your children **up** as Catholics?* |
| ***call off*** sth; ***call*** sth ***off*** | cancel | *They **called off** their trip when Granny died.* |
| ***carry on*** (doing sth) | continue | *Are you going to **carry on** making that horrible noise?* |
| ***come back*** (***from*** somewhere) | return | *When did you **come back from** your holidays?* |
| ***fall behind*** (***with*** sth) | fail to produce sth at the right time | *He's **falling behind with** the payments.* |
| ***get back*** (***to*** somewhere) | return somewhere | *What time do you have to **get back to** college?* |
| ***get on*** (***in life***) | advance, make progress | *He's new here, but he'll **get on** fine, I'm sure.* |
| ***get down to*** sth | finally start doing sth | *Isn't it time you **got down to** marking those papers?* |
| ***give up*** (doing sth); ***give*** sth ***up*** | stop doing sth (often bad) | *Don't **give up**! You'll get there in the end.* *She **gave up** smoking. She's **given** it **up**.* |
| ***go ahead*** (***with*** sth) | begin to do sth planned or promised | *He decided to **go ahead with** his plans in spite of her objections.* |
| ***go through*** (sth) | experience a difficult time | *After all they've **gone through**, they can still smile.* |
| ***grow up*** | develop from child to adult | *I **grew up** on a farm.* |
| ***hold on*** | wait | ***Hold on** a minute. I won't be long.* |
| ***hold*** sth/sb **up** | delay sth/sb | *The building work **has been held up** by bad weather.* |
| ***keep*** sb **up** | delay sb from going to bed | *I won't **keep** you **up** long.* |
| ***put*** sth ***off***; ***put off*** sth | postpone | *If it rains, they will have to **put off** the match.* |
| ***set off*** | start a journey | *When are we **setting off** in the morning?* |
| ***stay up*** | go to bed later than usual | *We **stayed up** to watch the late film on TV.* |
| ***take up*** sth; ***take*** sth ***up*** | to start learning sth | *She's **taken up** tennis.* |

- Some phrasal verbs, e.g. *fall behind, grow up, set off,* are intransitive (they do not have an object):
  *I **grew up** in America.*
- We can place the object between the verb and the particle with some transitive phrasal verbs:
  *We **put off** their visit. = We **put** their visit **off**.*
  *They **called off** the match. = They **called** the match **off**.*
- However, if the object is a pronoun, we always place it between the verb and the particle:
  *We **put** them **off**.*
  *They **called** it **off**.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Fill each space with a suitable phrasal verb from the list on page 36.**

1 If you want to ..get on..... in life, you'll have to work harder.
2 We'll have to ..set off..... before lunch time if we want to get there in time.
3 You'll ..fall behind..with your work if you don't get on with it.
4 I wanted to go to bed but she ..keep me up..ll one o'clock in the morning.
5 It's about time you ..get down to..ome hard work, isn't it?
6 Why don't you ..go ahead.. a sport now that you have all this free time?
7 I'm going to ..call of..... eating red meat after all these reports.
8 Can you ..hold on.. a minute while I check my diary?
9 If he ..carry on.. breaking the law like that, he'll end up in prison.
10 What do you want to be when you ..grow up.. ?

**2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. This word must not be changed.**

1 I hear they're going to revive some of the old customs in our villages.
***back***
I hear they ..bring back..some of the old customs in our villages.
2 She was born in New Zealand but raised in Australia.
***up***
She was born in New Zealand but ..grown up.. in Australia.
3 If you don't stop misbehaving, I'll have to ask you to leave the room.
***carry***
If you ..carry on.. misbehaving, I'll have to ask you to leave the room.
4 I'm sorry but this month's rent hasn't been paid yet.
***behind***
I'm sorry but you ..fell behind..with the rent.
5 After Christmas, I'm going to do some serious job hunting.
***get***
After Christmas, I'm ..going to get down to..some serious job hunting.
6 Her chatting about this and that stopped me from going to bed.
***up***
She ..holded up..chatting about this and that.
7 They've rearranged the meeting for next week.
***put***
The meeting ..put off.... till next week.
8 There's no rush now – the performance has been cancelled.
***called***
There's no rush now – they ..called off..... the performance.

*– Why are policemen strong?*
*– Because they **hold up** the traffic.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 2e prefixes (1)

We use prefixes to change meaning (see also 5e). They rarely change the part of speech. (Most suffixes change the part of speech.)

- Many prefixes give a word a meaning which is the opposite or negative of the original. For example, we can use the prefixes *dis* or *un*:
  ***dis*** + *appear* = *disappear*
  ***un*** + *tie* = *untie*

| prefix | meaning/ use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***anti*** + adjective / noun | opposite | *anti-clockwise*<br>*anti-climax* |
| ***anti*** + noun / adjective | against | *anti-theft device*<br>*anti-European* |
| ***co*** + noun / verb | together | *co-worker*<br>*cohabit* |
| ***dis*** + verb | negative / opposite | *dislike*<br>*disembark* |
| ***il*** + adjective | opposite | *illegal* |
| ***im*** + adjective | opposite | *impossible* |
| ***in*** + adjective | opposite | *indirect* |
| ***inter*** + adjective | between | *intercontinental* |
| ***ir*** + adjective | opposite | *irregular* |
| ***mis*** + verb | wrongly / badly | *mistook*<br>*mishandle* |
| ***over*** + verb | too much | *overdo*<br>*overwork* |
| ***out*** + verb | more | *outnumber* |
| ***post*** + noun / verb | after | *postgraduate* |
| ***pre*** + noun / verb | before | *pre-arrangement* |
| ***pro*** + noun / adjective | in favour of | *pro-Unions*<br>*pro-European* |
| ***sub*** + adjective | below | *substandard* |
| ***super*** + noun/ adjective | greater than | *superhuman* |
| ***trans*** + noun / verb / adjective | across | *transplant*<br>*transcontinental* |
| ***un*** + verb / adjective | negative / opposite | *unlock*<br>*unhappy* |
| ***under*** + verb | not enough<br>too little | *undercook*<br>*undercharge* |

There are a few rules:

- We use *il* instead of *in* with words that begin with *l*:
  ***il*** + *legal* = *illegal*
- We use *im* instead of *in* with words that begin with *m* or *p*:
  ***im*** + *polite* = *impolite*
- We often use *ir* instead of *in* with words that begin with *r*:
  ***ir*** + *responsible* = *irresponsible*.
- Some common mistakes are:
  ✗ ~~*You must **unconnect** the cables first.*~~
  ✓ *You must **disconnect** the cables first.*
  ✗ ~~*They expelled him for **disbehaving**.*~~
  ✓ *They expelled him for **misbehaving**.*
- Note that many words with a prefix have a base part that never exists on its own. Here are examples:
  *immediate, incontrovertible, uncalled-for*

## Practice

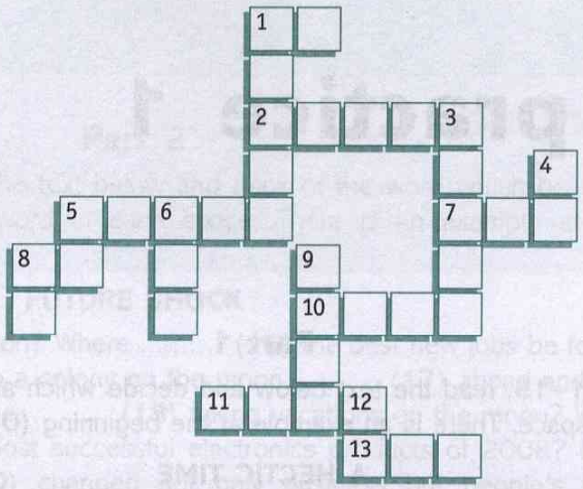
**1 Add a correct prefix to the following words. You may use your dictionary.**

1 .....*dependent*
2 .....*polite*
3 .....*do*
4 .....*driver*
5 .....*approve*
6 .....*behave*
7 .....*logical*
8 .....*zip*
9 .....*inform*
10 .....*agree*
11 .....*eat*
12 .....*historic*
13 .....*Atlantic*
14 .....*behaving*
15 .....*moral*
16 .....*hear*
17 .....*interpret*
18 .....*national*
19 .....*sleep*
20 .....*relevant*
21 .....*believe*
22 .....*crowded*
23 .....*understand*
24 .....*natal*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## 2 Complete the crossword with the correct prefixes.



### Across

1 This prefix + words that begin with l means 'not'.
2 The .....-*Siberian* railway goes from Moscow to Vladivostock.
5 Never .....*estimate* the time you need to study for the exam.
7 We use this prefix to mean 'in favour of'.
8 The opposite of *humane* is .....*humane*.
10 They told me I am .....*qualified* for the job.
11 .....-*European* protesters gathered round the embassy.
13 This prefix means 'wrongly' or 'badly'.

### Down

1 Take the .....*continental* express train from Paris to Warsaw.
3 Do you believe in the .....*natural*?
4 .....*exist* means 'to exist at the same time'.
5 The opposite of *familiar* is .....*familiar*.
6 The boys .....*appeared* as soon as they saw the farmer coming.
8 The opposite of *responsible* is .....*responsible*.
9 If you .....-*date* a cheque, you write a later date on it.
12 We use this prefix meaning 'not' in front of words that begin with *m*.

## 3 Add a prefix to the correct form of the word at the end of each line and use the word in the space on the same line. The first (0) is given as an example.

| | |
|---|---|
| Attempts to communicate in a foreign language can easily (0) ...misfire... . | **fire** |
| I'm always (1) ..... by my attempts to get speak Greek. | **appoint** |
| The waiter on Mykonos (2) ..... what I wanted and instead | **understand** |
| of beetroots brought me mushrooms. I (3) ..... mushrooms intensely | **like** |
| but when I asked him to (4) ..... them with beetroots he smiled, | **place** |
| went into the kitchen and (5) ..... with a plateful of aubergines. | **turn** |
| He also (6) ..... my friendly attitude towards everyone I meet | **take** |
| and when I complained that they had (7) ..... the meat, | **cook** |
| Manuel (that was his name if I'm not (8) .....) grinned and | **take** |
| twirled his moustache. To cap it all, I (9) ..... the bill and accused | **read** |
| the poor man of (10) ..... me! It was just my awful Greek again. | **charge** |

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Exam practice 1

## Part 1

For questions **1–15**, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### A HECTIC TIME

**Example: 0** **A** long time **B** sometimes **C** ages **D** lately

Dear Trevor,

I know it's been ..... (**0**) since I wrote to you but I've been very busy ..... (**1**) we decided to move into the country. The house in the village is not quite ready ..... (**2**) but as you can imagine ..... (**3**) the last few weeks we've had to chase up builders and plumbers and we've ..... (**4**) got a long way to go.

It's been such a long time since we ..... (**5**) work on it I've almost forgotten how long it's been exactly. We must have started it about seven years ..... (**6**) and we've ..... (**7**) spent a small fortune on it. We are ..... (**8**) living in our rather cramped flat where you ..... (**9**) us a few years ago but it ..... (**10**) to get unbearable and we ..... (**11**) to moving out. We are still ..... (**12**) around from morning ..... (**13**) night and it's been particularly hectic ..... (**14**) the last week. Anyway, ..... (**15**) all this was going on Karen fell and sprained her ankle which was the last thing we needed!

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1** | **A** every time | **B** ever since | **C** while | **D** before |
| **2** | **A** still | **B** already | **C** yet | **D** soon |
| **3** | **A** for | **B** as | **C** while | **D** since |
| **4** | **A** yet | **B** already | **C** nearly | **D** still |
| **5** | **A** have started | **B** start | **C** did start | **D** started |
| **6** | **A** before | **B** ago | **C** previous | **D** since |
| **7** | **A** still | **B** not | **C** already | **D** yet |
| **8** | **A** already | **B** still | **C** yet | **D** longer |
| **9** | **A** were visiting | **B** have visited | **C** had been visited | **D** visited |
| **10** | **A** begun | **B** is beginning | **C** begins | **D** begin |
| **11** | **A** have looked forward | **B** looked forward | **C** will look forward | **D** are looking forward |
| **12** | **A** rush | **B** rushed | **C** rushing | **D** be rushed |
| **13** | **A** and | **B** into | **C** till | **D** through |
| **14** | **A** during | **B** from | **C** in | **D** while |
| **15** | **A** in | **B** during | **C** while | **D** for |

SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Part 2

For questions **16–30**, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only **one** word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### FUTURE SHOCK

Who ..will.... (**0**) win the election? Where ..... (**16**) the best new jobs be found next year? Will plans to set up a colony on the moon ..... (**17**) ahead and will ordinary members of the public ..... (**18**) taking vacations on the moon? What are ..... (**19**) to be the most successful electronics products of 2008? How will the Internet ..... (**20**) changed not only business but people's lives ..... (**21**) the middle of the 21st century? Will the government ..... (**22**) back hanging for mass murderers? Famous futurist Alvin Toffler will be ..... (**23**) these and other questions about the future when his new weekly TV programme ..... (**24**) in the new year. Toffler, whose best-seller Future Shock was published in 1970, ..... (**25**) be hosting a TV show which will ..... (**26**) be reporting on what happened yesterday. Instead it will be ..... (**27**) what is going to ..... (**28**) tomorrow. Alvin Toffler, who by the end of this year will ..... (**29**) been predicting the future professionally for nearly thirty years, told reporters: 'There's no future channel on TV – we ..... (**30**) going to change all that'. Toffler's books make the stunning prediction that what is really going to change in years to come is the speed at which change itself takes place.

SCORE

## Part 3

For Questions **31–40**, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. **Do not change the word given**. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (**0**).

**Example: 0** I don't want Anne to come to the meeting. **rather**
I 'd rather Anne didn't come to the meeting.

**31** The last time I saw Helen was before she left for Australia.
**since**
I ..... she left for Australia.

**32** The cost of the wine is not included in the price of the ticket.
**not**
The price of the ticket ..... the cost of the wine.

**33** I applied but haven't had a reply yet.
**replied**
I applied, but they ..... yet.

**34** You don't seem to be enjoying yourself tonight.
**are**
I get the impression ..... tonight.

**35** I glanced at the letter while my boss was out of the room.
**waiting**
I glanced quickly at the letter while ..... return.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**36** It was the best film I had ever seen.
**never**
I ..... a good film before.

**37** Paul just works for this firm, doesn't he?
**only**
Paul ..... for this firm, isn't he?

**38** He learned to drive when he was eighteen.
**been**
He ..... he was eighteen.

**39** At the moment he is writing articles for the Daily News.
**as**
At the moment he ..... the Daily News.

**40** Spending the whole morning gardening left her exhausted.
**doing**
She ..... all morning and was exhausted.

SCORE

## Part 4

For questions **41–55**, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning (**0**) and (**00**).

**0** I am not sure what I'm going to do with myself ✓
**00** when I leave from school. Next week, our class are from
**41** having a meeting with the school careers officer .....
**42** who they say is he going to tell us all about the different .....
**43** jobs available. We'll also have be able to ask questions. .....
**44** I am thinking of taking up evening classes to improve .....
**45** my marks in maths because of my dream is to become .....
**46** a doctor. Although my parents don't disagree with my .....
**47** ambition they doubt whether I'm going for to get good .....
**48** enough marks to get into university to do medicine. But .....
**49** they don't want to discourage me from so I think they'll .....
**50** agree with to the extra lessons. By the time I finish school .....
**51** I will have been formed a much better idea of what I'd like .....
**52** to do, but the problem is we are going to be have to .....
**53** decide which subjects to study for university two years .....
**54** before we will finish school. Anyway, whatever happens .....
**55** I'm going to have to get on down to some hard work if I want to achieve my aims. .....

SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Part 5

For questions **56–65**, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### NOT A COMPUTER WHIZZ-KID

| | |
|---|---|
| I was .....lazily..... (**0**) browsing through the small ads in the local | LAZY |
| newspaper when I saw an ..... (**56**) for a second-hand | ADVERTISE |
| word ..... (**57**), so I decided to give them a ring to get | PROCESS |
| more ..... (**58**). I have a computer but it doesn't really | INFORM |
| have a ..... (**59**) enough memory for the project I'm involved | POWER |
| in at the moment. In most ..... (**60**) nowadays, it is becoming | OCCUPY |
| useful to be 'computer-literate' but in my ..... (**61**) it has | PROFESS |
| become an absolute ..... (**62**). I must admit I do not get | NECESSARY |
| much ..... (**63**) out of sitting in front of a computer screen | PLEASE |
| for hours, but I don't stand much chance of ..... (**64**) | PROMOTE |
| without computer skills. So I made an ..... (**65**) to | APPOINT |
| see my bargain computer the next day. | |

SCORE

TOTAL SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 3

**AGENDA**

**Grammar**

- 3a modal verbs (1)
- 3b modal verbs (2)
- 3c link words or phrases: purpose and reason

**Vocabulary**

- 3d *have, take, bring*
- 3e suffixes (2)

# Entry test

**Underline the correct answer in 1–5.**

1 Helen *must / had to* leave the meeting early because she had a train to catch.

2 What you *must / should* have done is call the police, not get involved yourself.

3 I *will / could* be able to speak better if I practise more.

4 Terry has done so little work, he *should / needn't* have bothered to come to class today.

5 I *didn't need to / couldn't* get tickets after all – they were sold out.

**Now look at 3a on page 46.**

SCORE

**Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 6–10.**

6 It ...B.... be weeks before the building is actually finished.
A must B would C ought to D could

7 You ...B.... even have lost your job by then, who knows ?
A should B may C can D will

8 It ...C.... be a good movie – the reviews were very good.
A can't B should C could have D must have

9 That ...C.... be Tim coming home now. Go and open the door for him, will you?
A will B can C ought D shall

10 Things ...D.... have been worse – everything seemed to be going wrong at once.
A shouldn't B couldn't C mustn't D may

**Now look at 3b on page 49.**

SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 11–15.**

11 She got the job ...D.... she was the best candidate.
A owing to B due to C on account of D because

12 Flight 502 has been delayed ...D.... to bad weather.
A as B for C due D on account

13 ...A.... you are unable to accept the job, we have offered it to someone else.
A Because of B As a result C Thanks to D Since

14 I locked the door ...C.... we could continue our discussion undisturbed.
A in order to B in order C so that D for that

15 The pilots suddenly went on strike. ...C.... , our flight was cancelled.
A As result B With the result C As a result D With result

SCORE

**Now look at 3c on page 52.**

**Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 16–20.**

16 There's no need to rush back – just ...D.... your time.
A have B get C be on D take

17 I ...B.... the FCE last week, but I didn't do too well.
A wrote B passed C sat for D obtained

18 Could you ...C.... me a hammer from the shed?
A take B carry C bring D deliver

19 The children were ...D.... so much fun, I hated to call them inside.
A making B doing C being D having

20 Ronald took ...A.... Julia from the first moment they met.
A up B to C over D out

SCORE

**Now look at 3d on page 55.**

**Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 21–25.**

21 Isobel has all the right ...B.... to become a successful manager.
A education B qualifications C experiences D applications

22 Sometimes there's a lot of competition between children for their mother's ...C.... .
A attraction B protection C attention D recognition

23 Several serious ...D.... have been made against him by the police.
A investigations B demonstrations C suggestions D accusations

24 United were knocked out of the ...B.... in the first round.
A organisation B competition C production D situation

25 They announced the ...A.... of the flight this morning.
A cancellation B abolition C communication D resignation

SCORE

**Now look at 3e on page 58.**

TOTAL SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 3a modal verbs (1)

There are nine modal verbs:

***can*** ***could*** ***shall*** ***should***
***may*** ***might*** ***will*** ***would***
***must***

- The third person singular does not take *s*.
- We use a bare infinitive (a verb without *to*) after all modal verbs:
  *You **should go** home early.*
- We form questions by inverting the modal verb and subject:
  ***Can** you swim?* ***Must** I go to bed now?*
- We form negatives by adding *not* or *n't*. We do not use *do*:
  *I **cannot** swim.* *You **mustn't** tell lies.*
- We often use modal verbs in tag questions and short answers:
  *You can drive, **can't** you?* *Yes, I **can**. / No, I **can't**.*
- Modals do not exist in all tenses. There is normally no Past Simple form:
  *The train **might** be in the station.* (= present)
  *The train **might** arrive late.* (= future)
- There are Perfect forms of modal verbs:
  *You **could have** done better.*
- When a tense of a modal verb does not exist, we use another verb with the same meaning:
  ✗ ~~*I could buy a ticket with any credit card.*~~
  ✓ *I **was able to** buy a ticket with my credit card*
  *I **had to** help my father yesterday.*
- We cannot use one modal verb after another:
  ✗ ~~*She must can do it.*~~
  ✓ *She **must be able to** do it.*
  ✗ ~~*You will can go.*~~
  ✓ *You **will be able to** go.*
- *Don't have to* is the opposite of *must*:
  *You **don't have to** be a member.*

### obligation and necessity

Here are common uses of modals for obligation and necessity (similar verbs are in brackets):

| verb | meaning / use | example (Present) | example (Past) |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***must*** | obligation | *You **must** eat less.* | *You **should have** eaten less.* |
| ***(have to)*** | | *I **must** do some work.* | *I **had to** do some work.* |
| ***should*** | | *You **mustn't** smoke.* | *You **shouldn't have** smoked.* |
| ***(ought to)*** | | *I **have to** return the book now.* | *I **had to** return the book immediately* |
| | | *You **should** wear a seatbelt.* | *You **should have** worn a seatbelt.* |
| | | *He **ought to** apologise.* | *He **ought to have** apologised.* |
| ***(do not have to)*** | no obligation | *We **don't have to** wear a tie.* | *We **didn't have to** wear a tie.* |
| ***must*** | necessity | *They **must** have clean water.* | *They **had to** have clean water.* |
| ***(have (got) to)*** | | *We **have to** get some sleep.* | *We **had to** get some sleep.* |
| | | *I've **got to** find a job.* | *I **had to** find a job.* |
| ***(need)*** | | *I **need** new glasses.* | *I **needed** new glasses.* |
| ***(need to)*** | | *We **need to** book in advance.* | *We **needed to** book in advance.* |
| ***(don't have to)*** | no necessity | *We **don't have to** wear a tie.* | *We **didn't have to** wear a tie.* |
| ***(needn't)*** | | *We **needn't** book in advance.* | *We **needn't have** booked in advance.* |
| ***(don't need to)*** | | *We **don't need to** book in advance* | *We **didn't need to** book in advance.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## *must* and *have to*

- *Must* is often personal and expresses someone's opinion. *Have to* often refers to laws and regulations:
  *You **must** get your hair cut.* (= I think it's a good idea)
  *You **have to** wear a uniform.* (= It's a regulation)
  *You **mustn't** tell lies.* (= It's necessary that you DO NOT lie)
  *You **don't have to** lie.* (= It's NOT necessary for you to lie)
- Unlike *must, have to* exists in all forms so we can use it wherever *must* is not possible:
  *She's **having to** travel by bus instead.*

## *need* and *need to*

We can use *need* as if it is a modal verb:
*No one **need** feel left out.*

- We normally use *need* with a *to*-infinitive. It means the same as *have to*:
  *We **need to** get some sleep.*
- *Need* is nearly always negative. *Not need to* is also possible:
  *You **needn't** go.* (= modal pattern)
  *You **don't need to** go.* (= normal negative pattern with *don't*)

## ability and permission

Here are common uses of modals for ability and permission. For asking, giving or refusing permission, etc., see 3b, page 50 (ordinary verbs are in brackets):

| verb | meaning / use | example (Present) | example (Past) |
|---|---|---|---|
| *can* | ability | *She **can** play the piano.* | *She **could** play the piano from the age of five.* |
| | | *We **can** buy a new house now.* | *We **were able to** buy a new house.* |
| | | *I **can** smell something burning!* | *I **could** smell something burning.* |
| *(be able to)* | | *She's **able to** play the piano whenever she wants to.* | *She **was able to** play the piano whenever she wanted to.* |
| *cannot / can't (not be able to)* | no ability | *She **can't** play the piano today.* | *She **couldn't** play the piano yesterday.* |
| | | *She **isn't able to** play the piano because her hand hurts.* | *She **wasn't able to** play the piano because her hand hurt.* |
| *can* | permission | *You **can** park here.* | *We **could** park there.* |
| *may* | | *Visitors **may** use the car park.* | *Visitors **could** use the car park.* |
| *(be allowed to)* | | *Visitors **are allowed to** use the car park.* | *Visitors **were allowed to** use the car park.* |
| *cannot / can't may not (not be allowed to)* | prohibition | *You **can't** park here.* | *We **couldn't** park there.* |
| | | *Visitors **may not** use the car park.* | *Visitors **could not** use the car park.* |
| | | *Visitors **are not allowed to** use the car park.* | *Visitors **were not allowed to** use the car park.* |

## *be able to*

- We use *be able to* for particular instances, and it often suggests 'managing to overcome difficulties':
  *She **was able to** swim across the river although it was very wide.*
  *We **were able to** pay although we were poor.*
- We also use *be able to* for things which a person will be capable of doing in the future but not now:
  *If she practises, she'll **be able to** play Chopin.*

## *could*

- *Could* does not always have a past meaning:
  *You **can** visit the museum.* (= now or in future)
  *You **could** visit the museum.* (= now or in future)
  *It **can** be very cold at night.* (= generally speaking)
  *It **could** be very cold at night.* (= generally speaking)
  See also 3b.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Underline the correct verb in these sentences.**

1 When we were at school, we *had to / ought to* wear a uniform.
2 You *don't have to / mustn't* wear your seatbelt during the whole of the flight.
3 You *should / have got* to tell her that you are sorry.
4 You *need / must* be a member of the library before you can borrow books.
5 I *don't need to / shouldn't* wear glasses because my eyesight is still quite good.
6 We *weren't allowed to / wouldn't* talk to our partner because it was an examination.
7 We *needn't have / couldn't have* ordered so much food as nobody was hungry.
8 She *didn't need / needn't have* to take any money because her friend was going to pay.
9 When I first came to Madrid I *could / couldn't* speak only a few words of Spanish.
10 *Did you have to / Must you* have your hair cut before the interview last week?

**2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. Use between two and five words, including the word given.**

*Example:* The teacher gave me permission to leave the room. **could**
The teacher said I could leave the room.

1 In the end, I couldn't make it to the party because I had too much work to do.
**able** wasn't able to
In the end, I ..... come to the party because I had too much work to do.

2 At school, she was the fastest runner in her class.
**could** could run more
At school, she ..... than anyone else in her class.

3 Although I'm good at physics, I don't think I'll manage to pass the exam.
**able**
In spite of being good at physics I don't think I am able to ..... pass the exam.

4 We weren't obliged to attend all the classes because some of them were optional.
**have** didn't have to attend
We ..... to all the classes because some of them were optional.

5 If I don't find a job soon, I won't be able to pay the bills.
**have** I have to
I need to pay the bills so ..... find a job soon.

6 'All telephone calls made from the office must be paid for,' said the manager.
**had** ?
The manager told ..... for all telephone calls made from the office

7 I took a lot of suntan lotion with me but I didn't need it.
**taken**
I shouldn't have taken ..... so much suntan lotion with me.

8 The traffic warden said we weren't allowed to park the car outside the bank.
**could** we could not
The traffic warden told ..... park the car outside the bank.

9 I think you can manage without a pullover in this weather.
**need**
You need to ..... wear a pullover in this weather.

10 Oxygen masks were essential when they got to the top of the mountain.
**had** had to put on
They ..... oxygen masks when they reached the top of the mountain.

*Those who **can**, do; those who **can't**, teach.*
GEORGE BERNARD SHAW



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 3b modal verbs (2)

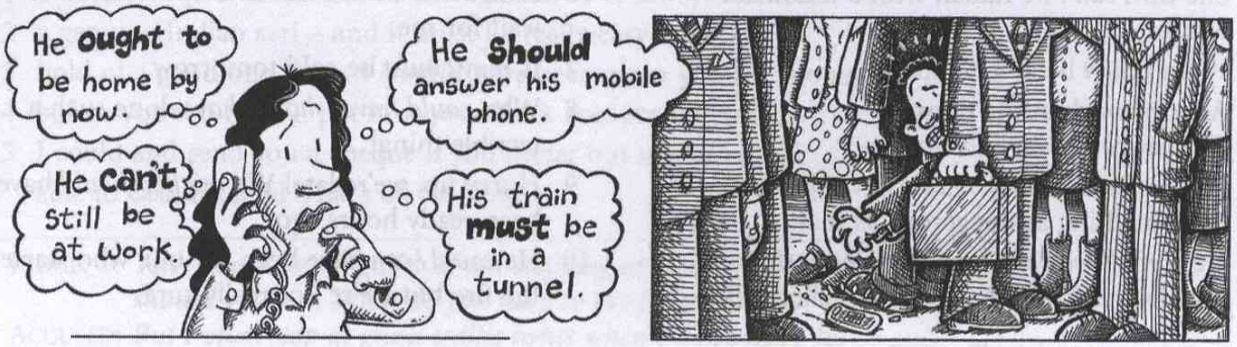
## certainty, probability and possibility

We use modal verbs to talk about certainty, probability and possibility (for *will* and *be going to*, see page 32). Here are examples:

| certainty: negative | possibility | probability | certainty: positive |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Present** | | | |
| *She **can't be** in France.* | *She **may be** in France.* | *She'll **be** in France now.* | *She **must be** in France now.* |
| *She **couldn't be** in France.* | *She **could be** in France.* | *She **should /ought to be** in France.* | *She **must be** in France.* |
| (= It's impossible, e.g. I saw her a moment ago) | (= I'm not sure) | (= She set off hours ago) | (= I'm certain) |
| **Past** | | | |
| *She **can't have been** in France.* | | | *She **must have been** in France.* |
| *She **couldn't have been** in France.* | | | |

- We use *will* to express a strong probability that something is true, especially when we don't have actual evidence at that moment:
  *That'll be Maria on the phone – she said she'd call.*
- We use *must* to express complete certainty:
  *That **must** be Maria on the phone – she's the only person with my new number.*
- We can also use *had to be* meaning 'must have been' to express certainty in the past:
  *She **had to be** the person I saw on the train.*
- We use *can / could* or *will / would* to form questions:
  *Who **can** that be on the phone?*
  *Who **would have** phoned so late?*

- We can use modal verbs of possibility to refer to the past, present or future:
  *Don't drink it – it **could / may / might** be poisonous.* (= present)
  *It **can't / could / may / might have been** poisonous.* (= past)
  *We **may / ought to / might / should** get a reply tomorrow.* (= future)
  *It **could / may / might** rain, so take an umbrella.* (= future)
- There is sometimes a change in meaning:
  *It **may have / might have** rained.* (= I'm not sure)
  *It **could have** rained.* (= but luckily it didn't)






PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## communicating

We also use modal verbs in the following situations:

| meaning / use | examples |
|---|---|
| **making requests** | ***Can*** *I ask you to do me a favour?*<br>***Could*** *I ask you to do me a favour?*<br>***May*** *I use your telephone?* (= polite)<br>***Would*** *you do me a favour?*<br>***Would*** *you help me carry these bags?*<br>***Will*** *you please be quiet in here.* |
| **giving and refusing permission** | *'You* ***can*** *have the day off,' said the manager.*<br>*You* ***can't*** *borrow my car tonight because I need it.*<br>***Could*** *I leave the class early today?*<br>*You* ***may*** *register for the exam until the end of March.* (= formal) |
| **asking for advice** | ***Shall*** *I take the exam now or wait till later?*<br>***Should*** *I go by car or by train?*<br>***Would*** *you accept the job if you were me?* |
| **giving advice** | *You* ***should*** *get your hair cut.*<br>*You* ***should have*** *had less to drink.*<br>*You* ***ought to*** *use a decent dictionary.*<br>*You* ***ought to have*** *revised a bit more.* |
| **making offers** | ***Shall*** *I help you clear the table?*<br>***Can*** *I give you a hand with your luggage?*<br>***Would*** *you like a lift to the airport?* |
| **making suggestions** | ***Shall*** *we open a window in here?*<br>*We* ***can*** *hire a video and stay in tonight if you like.*<br>*We* ***could*** *hire a video and stay in tonight.* (= less definite) |
| **complaining** | *You* ***could*** *at least have asked me before taking the money.*<br>*You* ***should*** *make less noise while other people are asleep.*<br>*You* ***shouldn't have*** *taken the car without asking me.*<br>*You* ***ought to have*** *turned up on time.*<br>*You* ***might*** *at least* ***have*** *helped with the washing up!* |

## Practice

**1 Underline the correct modal verb in these sentences.**

1 She *can / can't* be Italian with a name like Smith!
2 I *may / can't* be able to come.
3 A: Someone's at the door.
B: That *can be / will be* Joan.
4 You *could have been / must have been* crazy to do something as dangerous as that!
5 He *can't have been / may have been* the murderer because he has an excellent alibi.
6 I *might / can* not be able to come so don't wait for me.
7 It *may / must* be cold tomorrow.
8 Who *could have / should have* done such a terrible thing?
9 Hurry up, we're late! We *might / should* have been ready hours ago.
10 He *could / can* have been the one who started the fire but we're not really sure.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Match a first sentence (1–10) with a second sentence (a–j) to make short exchanges.**

1 'Shall we go to a Chinese restaurant this evening?'
2 'May I borrow your calculator for a moment?'
3 'Would you help me get the dinner ready?'
4 'You shouldn't get upset so easily.'
5 'You ought to have gone to the doctor as soon as you felt bad.'
6 'Do you think I should go and complain to the manager?'
7 'I'm sorry but you can't hand in the assignment a month late.'
8 'Could I have some time off to visit my friend in hospital?'
9 'Can I get you anything from the shops?'
10 'You shouldn't have spoken like that to your mother.'

a 'Not really; I'll be popping out myself in a minute.'
b 'I'd rather stay at home.'
c 'Actually, it would be difficult to do without you right now.'
d 'Could you give me another week then?'
e 'It's up to you really; it depends how strongly you feel.'
f 'I'm sorry but I'm using it.'
g 'I've apologised; what else can I do?'
h 'Do I have to? I've got to do my homework.'
i 'I can't help it; he really makes me furious.'
j 'I couldn't because there was no one to take me.'

**3 Read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓). If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word. The first two have been given as examples.**

DISCOVERING INDIA

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | By the time you will get this letter I expect you will | will |
| 00 | have been in Calcutta for a week or so. You will | ✓ |
| 1 | have been there able to settle in a bit and get used to the | ..... |
| 2 | place. It must can have been an exhausting journey. | ..... |
| 3 | It can't have been being much fun flying non-stop for nearly | ..... |
| 4 | twenty-four hours. I must to say I admire your decision | ..... |
| 5 | to go and work in Calcutta. I know the poverty is | ..... |
| 6 | depressing but the job at least should to be quite worthwhile. | ..... |
| 7 | I suppose your boss might have been sent you somewhere | ..... |
| 8 | where there was war and famine so it could have been | ..... |
| 9 | worse. And it really must have be a fascinating culture to explore – | ..... |
| 10 | it must couldn't be more different from living in Manchester, I bet. | ..... |
| 11 | I wonder if you could able do me a favour? I've always wanted | ..... |
| 12 | a genuine Indian sari – and it must be really easy to get | ..... |
| 13 | hold of a good one there. I should have been given you the money | ..... |
| 14 | before you left but I'll put it in your bank account if you like. | ..... |
| 15 | I could and send you a cheque if you prefer but would you be able to cash it there? That's all for now. | ..... |

JUDGE: *You've been found guilty of not stopping at a red traffic light when you **should've** done. What do you have to say for yourself?*
ACCUSED: *But I often stop at green traffic lights when I **don't have to**!*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 3c link words or phrases: purpose and reason

## because, as, since

*Because, as,* and *since* have similar meanings; they show the reason or cause of something. They come before a clause:

| | LINK WORD | CLAUSE |
|---|---|---|
| *We stayed at home* | ***because*** | *it was raining.* |
| | ***as*** | |
| | ***since*** | |

- There is almost no difference in meaning between *because, as* and *since,* but *because* can emphasise the reason more strongly. *As* and *since* assume that the reason is obvious:
  *I'll do it* ***because*** *I want to, not* ***because*** *you asked me to.*
  ***As / Since*** *everyone is here, we can begin.* (= It is obvious)
- We use only *because* when we answer with a clause on its own:
  *'Why are you late?' '****Because*** *I missed the bus.'*

## because of, owing to, etc.

*Because of, owing to, on account of* and *due to* show the reason or cause of something. They come before a noun (phrase), not a clause:

| | LINK WORDS | NOUN (PHRASE) |
|---|---|---|
| *We stayed at home* | ***because of*** | *the rain.* |
| | ***on account of*** | |
| | ***owing to*** | |
| | ***due to*** | |
| | ***as a result of*** | |
| | ***thanks to*** | |

✗ ~~*They came here looking for work* ***owing to*** *the wages are higher.*~~
✓ *They came here looking for work* ***because*** *the wages are higher.* (= *because* + clause)

- We use *because of* much more often than the others.
- *Owing to* is more formal than *because of*:
  ***Owing to*** *lack of money, the project will not continue next year.*
- *Due to* often comes after the verb *be*:
  *The crash* ***was due to*** *bad weather.*
  *Owing to* cannot come after the verb *be.* We use *due to*:
  ✗ ~~*The accident* ***was owing to*** *human error.*~~
  ✓ *The accident* ***was due to*** *human error.*
- *On account of* often means 'because of a problem or difficulty':
  *He can't run very fast* ***on account of*** *his asthma.*
- *As a result of* often means 'because of something that has already happened':
  ***As a result of*** *the pilots' strike, all flights have had to be cancelled.*
- We use *thanks to* to say that something, usually good, has happened:
  ***Thanks to*** *Ron and his car, we've managed to get all the deliveries done on time.*

## in order to, so as to

We use *in order to* and *so as to* before a verb which expresses the purpose of an action. *In order to* and *so as to* can be more emphatic than *to* alone:

*She went on a diet* ***in order to*** *lose weight*
*She went on a diet* ***so as to*** *lose weight.*
*She went on a diet* ***to*** *lose weight.*

- We can use the negative forms *in order not to* and *so as not to,* but we cannot use *not to* on its own:
  ✗ ~~*She sent on a diet* ***not to*** *be fat.*~~
  ✓ *She went on a diet* ***in order not to*** *be fat.*
  ✓ *She went on a diet* ***so as not to*** *be fat.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## *in order that*, *so (that)*, etc.

We use *in order that* and *so (that)* before a clause expressing purpose. The clause contains a modal verb:

| | LINK WORDS | CLAUSE WITH MODAL VERB |
|---|---|---|
| | ***so*** | |
| *We're leaving now* | ***so that*** | *we can arrive* |
| | ***in order that*** | *early.* |

## *consequently*, *as a result*, etc.

We can use *consequently*, *as a result* and *because of that* to express the result of an action mentioned earlier. When we use them at the beginning of a sentence, they are followed by a comma:

*We talked until the early hours of the morning.*

***Consequently,***
***As a result,*** *I overslept.*
***Because of that,***

- We use *so* in mid position to introduce a result. We do not put a comma after it:
  *She couldn't eat meat **so** she just had vegetables.*

## *so* or *since*?

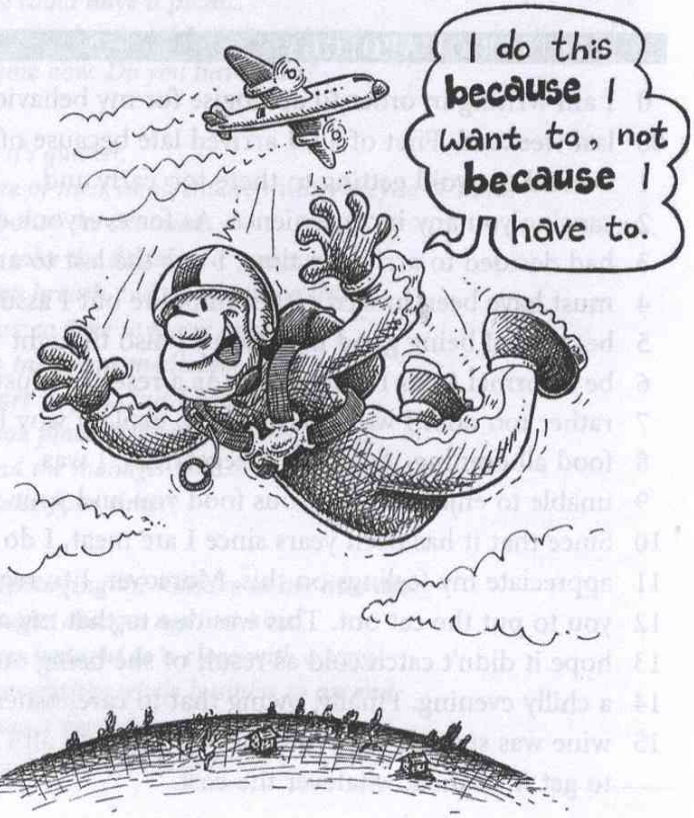
Compare *so* and *since*:

✗ ~~***Since** it's his birthday on Monday, **so** he's having a party.*~~
✓ ***Since** it's his birthday on Monday, he's having a party.*
✓ *It's his birthday on Monday **so** he's having a party.*

## Practice

**1 Underline the correct link word or phrase.**

1 I phoned *because/since* I need to speak to you.
2 *Since/Because* the rain has stopped, we can go back in the garden.
3 *Because of/Because* the bus was late, I missed the meeting.
4 We took a taxi *in order not to/not to* be late.
5 The traffic jam is *due to/owing to* major roadworks.
6 Emma came first *on account of/as a result of* all her hard work.
7 I'm going by bus *in order to/owing to* save costs.
8 I'll reply by e-mail *so that/consequently* he can buy the ticket today.
9 She didn't water the plants, *since/so* they died.
10 We'll join the euro *because/because of that* our economy will improve.






PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Fill in each space in these sentences with a suitable link word or phrase. More than one answer may be possible.**

1 Sandra's upset and it's all ..... to your behaviour.
2 Prices have risen ..... of an increase in demand.
3 The 15.30 train to Sheffield has been cancelled ..... to circumstances beyond our control.
4 ..... understand how the human body works, you need some knowledge of chemistry.
5 ..... there was no food in the house we rang for a pizza.
6 The vase was put on top of the cupboard ..... it would not get broken.
7 I was scared when I walked home ..... the street was so dark.
8 ..... milk is so good for you, why don't you drink more of it?
9 I didn't go ..... I didn't want to leave you alone.
10 She started to use e-mail ..... that she could send messages more quickly.
11 I caught the plane in order that I could get there on time but in the end it took longer as a ..... of delays.
12 The bank refused to give the company another loan. ....., it went bankrupt.

**3 Read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a (✓). If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word. The first two have been done as examples.**

A LETTER OF APOLOGY

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | I am writing in order to apologise for my behaviour | ✓ |
| 00 | last weekend. First of all, I arrived late because of I | of |
| 1 | wanted to avoid getting to there too early and | ..... |
| 2 | causing you any inconvenience. As for everyone else | ..... |
| 3 | had decided to arrive on time, I was the last to arrive, which | ..... |
| 4 | must have been looked rather impolite but I assure you it was all | ..... |
| 5 | because of being good intentions. I also thought the party was going to | ..... |
| 6 | be informal so as I wore jeans. As a result, I must have looked | ..... |
| 7 | rather too odd. I would also like to explain why I hardly ate any | ..... |
| 8 | food all evening. As of I'm a vegetarian, I was | ..... |
| 9 | unable to enjoy the delicious food you and your wife had prepared. | ..... |
| 10 | Since that it has been years since I ate meat, I do hope you will | ..... |
| 11 | appreciate my feelings on this. Moreover, I to regret asking | ..... |
| 12 | you to put the cat out. This was due to that my allergy to cats. I sincerely | ..... |
| 13 | hope it didn't catch cold as result of she being outside on such | ..... |
| 14 | a chilly evening. Finally, owing that to carelessness on my part | ..... |
| 15 | wine was spilt all over your carpet. I will do all I can in order for to get it cleaned, whatever the cost. | ..... |

*'Why are false teeth like stars?'*
*'**Because** they come out at night and go in in the morning.'*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 3d *have, take, bring*

We can use *have, take* and *bring* with many nouns to form fixed expressions. In these cases, these verbs have little meaning of their own and the meaning is that of the noun that follows. These are examples:

| expression | example |
|---|---|
| **have** | |
| ***have a bath/shower*** | *She's probably upstairs **having a bath**.* |
| ***have dinner/lunch***, etc. | *We **had dinner** and then went for a walk.* |
| ***have a drink*** | *I'll collapse if I don't **have a drink** soon.* |
| ***have*** sth ***to eat*** | *I must **have** a bite **to eat**; I'm starving.* |
| ***have (an) experience*** | *He **has no experience** of running a large company.* |
| ***have fun*** | *You can't stop people from **having fun**.* |
| ***have a holiday*** | *Its almost a year since we **had a** real **holiday**.* |
| ***have an operation*** | *Before I **had the operation** I could hardly walk.* |
| ***have a party*** | *We're **having a party** on Saturday. Can you come?* |
| ***have a picnic*** | *If it's sunny we could **have a picnic**.* |
| ***have a rest*** | *I'm just going to lie down and **have a rest**.* |
| ***have time*** | *I don't **have time** now. Do you **have time**?* |
| **take** | |
| ***take the bus, a taxi***, etc. | ***Take a taxi** – it's quicker.* |
| ***take care of*** sb | *Who **takes care of** their small children when they're at work?* |
| ***take control of*** sth | *She **took control of** the situation.* |
| ***take a decision*** | *When did you **take the decision** to resign?* |
| ***take a deep breath*** | *She **took a deep breath** and dived off the cliff.* |
| ***take an exam*** | *Why do we have to **take** so many **exams**?* |
| ***take her, their***, etc. ***medicine*** | *Don't forget to **take your medicine**.* |
| ***take part*** (***in*** sth) | *I don't **take part in** plays but I like to watch.* |
| ***take place*** | *The concert **took place** at Wembley.* |
| ***take a seat*** | ***Take a seat** and the manager will see you in a minute.* |
| ***take time, take your time*** | *Don't rush – **take your time**.* |
| **bring** | |
| ***bring*** sth ***to*** sb's ***attention*** | *Thank you for **bringing** the mistake **to my attention**.* |
| ***bring charges*** (***against*** sb) | *The police **brought charges against** him.* |
| ***bring*** sth ***to a close*** | *The evening was **brought to a close** with a song.* |
| ***bring*** sth ***to an end*** | *It's time we **brought** the whole business **to an end**.* |
| ***bring a lump to*** sb's ***throat*** | *It was so moving it **brought a lump to my throat**.* |
| ***bring tears to*** sb's ***eyes*** | *The film **brought tears to my eyes**.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## take place or occur?

If an event *takes place*, it happens after a plan of some sort:

*The contest **takes place** every four years.*

- If something *occurs* it happens without someone planning it:
  *Where did the accident **occur**?*

## take, bring, get or fetch?

If we *take something* (*from a place*), we generally mean 'steal something':

✗ ~~*I went shopping and **took** a pullover.*~~
✓ *I went shopping and **bought** a pullover.*
✗ ~~*I **took** a letter.*~~
✓ *I **got** a letter. / I **received** a letter.*

- *Bring* generally means 'take something or someone to the place where you are now':
  *Did you **bring** anything to drink?*
- *Fetch* means 'go to another place to get something and bring it back':
  *I'll go and **fetch** the others so that we can start the meeting.*
- *Take* something (*with you*) means 'carry something from one place to another':
  *Don't forget to **take** your briefcase (**with you**).*

## phrasal verbs with *take*

| phrasal verb | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***take after*** sb | resemble sb | *Jenny really **takes after** her mother.* |
| ***take*** sth ***back*** | return sth | *If the shirt doesn't fit, **take** it **back**.* |
| ***take back*** sth | say you regret saying sth | *I'm sorry I was wrong. I **take back** what I said.* |
| ***take*** sth ***down***<br>***take down*** sth | make a note of sth | *Let me **take down** your name and number.* |
| ***take*** sb ***in*** | deceive sb | *Don't **be taken in** by products claiming to help you lose weight in a week.* |
| ***take in*** sb / sth ***in***<br>***take in*** sth | give a home to sb / sth<br>include sth | *She's always **taking in** stray animals.*<br>*The price **takes in** the cost of accommodation and meals.* |
| ***take*** sth ***in*** | reduce the width of (clothing) | *This dress is too big – I'll have to **take** it **in** a bit.* |
| ***take off*** | leave the ground | *As the plane was **taking off**, I remembered I hadn't turned the iron off.* |
| ***take*** sth ***off*** | remove (clothing)<br>remove (make-up) | ***Take** your coat **off**.*<br>*I forgot to **take** my make-up **off**.* |
| ***take*** sb ***on*** | employ sb | *We're **taking on** 50 new employees this year.* |
| ***take on*** sth / sb | agree to do sth | *He's **taken on** too much work.* |
| ***take*** sb ***out*** | invite sb to a place | *He was looking forward to **taking** his daughter **out** to a nice restaurant.* |
| ***take over*** sth | take control of sth | *Who's going to **take over** the shop when Mr Jones retires?* |
| ***take to*** sb / sth | begin to like sb / sth | *I **took to** Paul as soon as I met him.* |
| ***take*** sth ***up*** | start an activity<br>discuss sth | *Glen has **taken up** painting.*<br>*I'm going to **take** the matter **up** with my lawyer.* |
| ***take up*** sth | start a job<br>accept a job<br>take a period of time | *She **took up** her first teaching post in 1970.*<br>*Are you going to **take up** the offer of a job with them?*<br>*Writing her homework **took up** most of the weekend.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Complete these sentences with one of the following expressions.**

*bring this meeting to an end* *have fun* *take a seat* *having a shower* *take part*
*have an operation* *takes place* *have time* *have any experience* *have lunch*

1 Don't give him any supper because he's going to ..... .
2 Do you ..... of using these computers?
3 There will be a discussion afterwards and you can all ..... .
4 If there is no other business, I'd like to ..... .
5 ..... and someone will be with you shortly.
6 Pauline's just ..... – she'll be downstairs soon.
7 The tennis tournament ..... in June.
8 Goodbye, enjoy the trip and ..... !
9 We could ..... in town while we're shopping, if you like.
10 I think we ..... for one more question before the Minister leaves us.

**2 Fill in each space in the text with one verb. The first (0) is given as an example.**

### EXAM SUCCESS

There are many ways of making sure you .....do..... (0) well in the FCE examination, both before and during the exam. If you don't ..... (1) much experience of examinations, read the following notes carefully. First of all, if you are ..... (2) the exam the next day, make sure you ..... (3) a good night's rest. Check that you know exactly where the exam is going to ..... (4) place. You should not sit the exam on an empty stomach so ..... (5) a good breakfast – but don't overdo it. Don't forget to ..... (6) with you a pen, pencil and eraser. Try and get to the examination centre in good time so you ..... (7) enough time to find the right room. As soon as you ..... (8) your answer sheet, ..... (9) a deep breath, check your name and number and ..... (10) any errors to the attention of the supervisor immediately. Read the instructions carefully and ..... (11) your time answering before the invigilator ..... (12) the exam to a close.

**3 Complete these sentences with *out, on, off, up, after, in* or *back*.**

1 We ought to get rid of this table, it takes ..... far too much space.
2 If you're hot, you can take ..... your jacket.
3 This meat can't be fresh, it smells awful – I'm taking it ..... to the butcher.
4 John's always been difficult – he must take ..... his dad.
5 You shouldn't take ..... more responsibilities than you can handle.
6 It must be difficult to give ..... teaching in order to travel.
7 We'll need to take ..... some temporary teachers for the summer.
8 She took ..... her glasses when she had her photograph taken.
9 He was such a charmer – he took me ..... completely.
10 Rachel took me ..... to lunch.

CUSTOMER: *Waiter, this steak tastes awful.* ***Take it back*** *to the chef.*
WAITER: *Sorry, sir, but the chef won't eat it either.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 3e suffixes (2)

We normally use suffixes to change a word to a different part of speech. Sometimes a suffix produces a change in meaning (see also 1e, 4e, 10e, 12e, 13e).

## verb + *(a)tion*, *(i)tion* or *sion*

We can use the suffixes *(a)tion*, *(i)tion* or *sion* to make nouns from verbs. Many of these nouns are abstract. The use of abstract nouns often makes a sentence sound rather formal:

*It is important **to preserve** the rainforests.*
***The preservation** of the rainforests is important.*
(= more formal)

- Abstract nouns are always uncountable:
  *The **omission** of the victims' names was deliberate.*
- However, sometimes abstract nouns also have a concrete meaning. In these cases they can be countable:
  *Your essay is full of errors and **omissions**.*
- Some common errors with abstract nouns are:
  ✗ ~~*They are in danger of **to be extinct**.*~~
  ✓ *They are in danger of **extinction**.*
  ✗ ~~*He doesn't have much **fantasy**.*~~
  ✓ *He doesn't have much **imagination**.*
- Here is a list of common nouns ending in *tion* and *sion*. Check any meanings that you do not know in a dictionary.

| verb | noun |
|---|---|
| *abolish* | *abolition* |
| *accuse* | *accusation* |
| *apply* | *application* |
| *attend* | *attention* |
| *civilise* | *civilisation* |
| *compete* | *competition* |
| *conserve* | *conservation* |
| *demonstrate* | *demonstration* |
| *to become extinct* | *extinction* |
| *imagine* | *imagination* |
| *inflate* | *inflation* |
| *inspire* | *inspiration* |
| *oppose* | *opposition* |
| *revise* | *revision* |

## Practice

**1 Complete the spaces in the table. You can use a dictionary.**

| verb | noun |
|---|---|
| *divide* | ..... |
| *intend* | ..... |
| *investigate* | ..... |
| *invite* | ..... |
| *omit* | ..... |
| *organise* | ..... |
| *preserve* | ..... |
| *prevent* | ..... |
| *produce* | ..... |
| *repeat* | ..... |
| *satisfy* | ..... |
| *solve* | ..... |
| *react* | ..... |
| *tempt* | ..... |

**2 Use a suitable form of the verbs below to fill in the spaces in the sentences.**

*suggest* *attract* *recognise* *demonstrate*
*hesitate* *explain* *promote* *cancel*

1 The ..... between Tom and Mary was immediate.
2 The Oscar award was in ..... of her great acting ability.
3 I can say without ..... that she's the best student I've ever had.
4 He couldn't give the court any ..... for his strange behaviour.
5 I'd like a job with good ..... prospects.
6 We're fully booked but sometimes there are last-minute ..... .
7 Can I make a ..... ? Why don't we hire a car?
8 The students decided to hold a ..... against higher fees.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given.**

*Example:* They use local labour when they construct roads.
**carry**
They carry road construction out with local labour.

1 I calculate the bill as being much less.
**comes**
According to my ..... to much less.

2 They were determined to educate their daughter the way they wanted.
**give**
They were determined to ..... they wanted.

3 Will he be fit enough to compete in the match on Saturday?
**take**
Will he be fit enough to ..... on Saturday?

4 The authorities are planning to investigate the crash thoroughly.
**thorough**
The authorities are planning to carry ..... into the crash.

5 Shortly afterwards, Dawson was invited to speak at the conference.
**given**
Shortly afterwards, Dawson ..... to speak at the conference.

6 They celebrate New Year's Day in the main square of the city.
**held**
New Year's Day ..... the main square of the city.

**4 Fill in the spaces in the following text using a suitable form of the word given at the end of the lines. The first is given as an example.**

## GLOBALISATION

| | |
|---|---|
| It is no exaggeration to say that the world has become a global village. | **exaggerate** |
| Modern methods of ..... (1) have made the world much smaller | **communicate** |
| and the problems we face such as ..... (2) are not restricted to this | **pollute** |
| country. The ..... (3) of the rainforests in Brazil is everyone's | **destroy** |
| problem and the ..... (4) which is common in many African countries | **starve** |
| is a challenge for Europe too. The ..... (5) of rare species is | **extinct** |
| a tragedy for the planet as a whole and the ..... (6) of oil | **exhaust** |
| supplies will shake the ..... (7) of the world's economy. | **found** |
| The ..... (8) of the environment is the responsibility of all | **protect** |
| nations, rich and poor. However, uncontrolled economic ..... (9) | **compete** |
| between strong and weak nations leads to the ..... (10) of | **create** |
| greater inequality between the rich and poor nations of the world. | |

*I can resist everything – except* ***temptation****.*
OSCAR WILDE

***Imagination*** *is more important than knowledge.*
ALBERT EINSTEIN



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 4

## AGENDA

**Grammar**

- 4a question words
- 4b question tags
- 4c phrases of agreement

**Vocabulary**

- 4d *do* and *make*
- 4e suffixes (3)

# Entry test

**Underline the correct answer in 1–5.**

1 Who *did you pay / paid you* the money to?
2 What *have you been / did you* doing all day?
3 Why *you didn't / didn't you* give me a ring?
4 *What time / How long* does the lesson last?
5 *Whose / Who* painting won first prize, Picasso's or Van Gogh's?

**Now look at 4a on page 62.**

SCORE

**Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.**

6 They'd rather go somewhere else, ..... they?
A hadn't B didn't C wouldn't D would

7 You've got three sisters, .....?
A have you got B don't you C isn't it D haven't you

8 She needs to be more careful, .....?
A don't she B doesn't she C doesn't she need D needn't she

9 You're having an operation next week, .....?
A isn't it B don't you have C don't you D aren't you

10 Let's go to the theatre tonight, .....?
A will we B do we C won't we D shall we

SCORE

**Now look at 4b on page 64.**



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.**

11 Mary loves going to the cinema and ..... .
A so do I B I too do C I do so D I love

12 They haven't got a computer and ..... .
A neither have I B neither I have C I haven't got D I don't neither

13 Parent: Did my son pass the test?
Teacher: ..... .
A I afraid no B I afraid not C I'm afraid to D I'm afraid not

14 John: I'd rather stay at home.
Mary: ..... .
A Would you? B Wouldn't you? C Had you? D Hadn't you?

15 They never go skiing and ..... .
A I haven't too B I don't either C I do neither D I haven't either

**Now look at 4c on page 66.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.**

16 We got in the car and made ..... Chicago as fast as we could.
A to B at C towards D for

17 They grabbed the money and just made ..... .
A to B from C off D on

18 We'd like to make the spare room ..... a child's bedroom.
A to B up C into D for

19 You ought to ..... more of an effort at school.
A do B take C try D make

20 They made an urgent ..... on the radio.
A announcement B advertisement C disturbance D appearance

**Now look at 4d on page 69.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 21–25.**

21 Under no ..... will I allow such a thing.
A situation B situations C circumstances D circumstance

22 The economy needs more ..... if it is to grow.
A investigation B insurance C encouragement D investment

23 They put the accident down to his ..... .
A carelessly B careless C carelessness D carefulness

24 What is the legal age of ..... in your country?
A retirement B retiring C retired D retire

25 Her encouragement and support gave me the ..... to carry on.
A force B warmth C strength D purpose

**Now look at 4e on page 73.**

SCORE _____

TOTAL SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 4a question words

### questions about the subject

When we ask questions about the subject of a sentence, the word order in the question and the answer is the same:

***Ben*** *designed this house.*
***Who*** *designed this house?*
✗ ~~***Who did build*** *this house*~~*?*
✓ ***Who built*** *this house?*

- We use *what, who, which, whose* and *how many* in questions about the subject.

### questions about the object

Questions about the object need an auxiliary verb (*do, have, is,* etc.) before the subject:

*Wren designed this cathedral.*
***What did*** *Wren* ***design****?*

- We use *what, which, who, whose, when, where, how often,* etc. in questions about the object.

✗ ~~***Which*** *cathedral Wren* ***built****?*~~
✓ ***Which*** *cathedral* ***did*** *Wren* ***build****?*

Here is a summary of question words with examples:

| question word | example: subject question | example: object question |
|---|---|---|
| ***who*** | ***Who*** *is teaching you?* | ***Who do*** *you know here?* (*Whom* is very formal.) |
| ***what*** | ***What*** *caused the problem?* | ***What*** *film* ***did*** *you see?* |
| ***what kind of*** | ***What*** *kind of people live here?* | ***What*** *kind of TV programmes* ***do*** *you watch?* |
| ***which*** | ***Which*** *book sold most?* | ***Which*** *picture* ***do*** *you like?* |
| ***whose*** | ***Whose*** *book won the prize?* | ***Whose*** *book* ***did*** *you borrow?* |
| ***how many*** | ***How many*** *pupils came to the lesson?* | ***How many*** *people* ***did*** *you see?* |
| ***why*** | | ***Why did*** *you get up so late?* |
| ***when*** | | ***When did*** *you go to England?* |
| ***how*** | | ***How do*** *I get to your house?* |
| ***how far*** | | ***How far is*** *the college from here?* |
| ***how long*** | | ***How long does*** *it take to get there?* |
| ***how often*** | | ***How often do*** *you go swimming?* |

### position of prepositions

- Note the change in the position of a preposition in questions about the object:
  *I gave the book* ***to*** *John.* becomes: *Who did you give the book* ***to****?* or ***To whom*** *did you give the book?* (= formal)
  *She sent the letter* ***from*** *India.* becomes: *Where did she send the letter* ***from****?* or ***From*** *where did she send the letter?* (= formal)

### *what* or *which?*

We use *what* when the choice is open. We use *which* when there is a limited choice:

***What*** *colour do you like?* (= open choice)
***Which*** *colour do you prefer, red or blue?* (= limited choice)
***What*** *countries have you visited?* (= open choice)
***Which*** *countries in South America have you visited?* (= limited choice)



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Ask a question about the information underlined in each of the following sentences using *who, what* or another question word.**

1 We live in the old town.
.....

2 I gave the book to Valerie.
.....

3 Michael lent me his car.
.....

4 I got married 20 years ago.
.....

5 He plays basketball best.
.....

6 I'd like the green pullover, please.
.....

7 I like big woolly pullovers.
.....

8 A madman murdered the President.
.....

9 A madman murdered the President.
.....

10 The madman murdered the President.
.....

11 I go to the cinema at least once a week.
.....

12 The journey takes about six hours from here.
.....

13 To get to my house, you take the bus and get off at Wood Green.
.....

14 He keeps the key in that box.
.....

15 There's a litre of milk left.
.....

**2 Put the words in the questions in the right order.**

1 Where / you / born / were?
.....

2 Where / you / did / grow up?
.....

3 What / like / did / you / doing / at school?
.....

4 What / like / were / you / as / a young child?
.....

5 When / decide / you / did / an actor / to become?
.....

6 How / parents / your / did / react?
.....

7 What / say / when / told / did / you / they / them?
.....

8 How / you / when / old / left / were / you / home?
.....

9 What / job / first / your / in the theatre / was?
.....

10 What / of / directors / working / kind / with / you / do / like?
.....

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 4b question tags

We add question tags to the end of a statement:
*It's Monday today,* ***isn't it?***

- The general pattern for using tags is:
  Positive sentence + negative tag
  *She* ***likes*** *Beethoven,* ***doesn't she?***

  Negative sentence + positive tag
  *She* ***doesn't*** *like Beethoven,* ***does she?***
- We form question tags with an auxiliary verb (e.g. *be, have, do*) + personal pronoun (e.g. *it, you, she, he, they*). If there is an auxiliary verb in the statement, we repeat the same auxiliary verb in the tag:
  *You'**re** from Greece,* ***aren't*** *you?*
  *They* ***don't*** *speak English,* ***do*** *they?*
- The tense of the auxiliary verb agrees with the tense in the main verb:
  *She* ***came*** *home late,* ***didn't*** *she?* (= Past Simple)
- If there is a modal verb in the statement, we repeat the same modal verb in the tag:
  *It* ***shouldn't*** *cost that much,* ***should*** *it?*
- After main verbs without an auxiliary verb or modal, we use *do* in the tag:
  *She* ***plays*** *the piano,* ***doesn't*** *she?*

## special cases

- The question tag for *I am* is ***aren't I?***: However, for *I'm not*, we use ***am I?***
- To form a tag question for *Let's...*, we use *shall*:
  *Let's surprise them,* ***shall we?***
- To form a tag for an imperative, we use *will*:
  *Turn the sound down,* ***will / won't you?***
- To form a tag for *There...*, we add *there*:
  *There isn't any danger,* ***is there?***
- After *somebody, someone, everybody, everyone, no one*, etc. we use *they* in the tag:
  ***Everybody*** *is sleeping, aren't* ***they?***
- After *nothing, something*, and *everything*, we use the personal pronoun *it* in the tag:
  ***Nothing*** *happened, did* ***it?***

Here is a summary of verbs used in tags:

| verb in statement | verb in tag | examples |
|---|---|---|
| statement without an auxiliary or modal | ***do*** | *You like him,* ***don't you?*** |
| ***be*** | ***be*** | *This is yours,* ***isn't it?*** |
| ***have*** (= possess) | ***do*** | *You don't have a watch,* ***do you?*** |
| ***have got*** | ***have*** | *You haven't got a brother,* ***have you?*** |
| ***have*** (= auxiliary) | ***have*** | *You haven't seen Joe,* ***have you?*** |
| ***do*** | ***do*** | *You do aerobics,* ***don't you?*** |
| ***can*** | ***can*** | *She can swim,* ***can't she?*** |
| ***could*** | ***could*** | *We could do better,* ***couldn't we?*** |
| ***may*** | ***might*** | *It may rain,* ***mightn't it?*** |
| ***will*** | ***will*** | *You won't tell them,* ***will you?*** |
| ***would*** | ***would*** | *He'd like that,* ***wouldn't he?*** |
| ***needn't*** | ***need*** | *We needn't come,* ***need we?*** |
| ***must*** | ***must*** | *We mustn't make a noise,* ***must we?*** |
| ***have to*** | ***do*** | *We have to work harder,* ***don't we?*** |
| ***need to*** | ***do*** | *She needs to be there,* ***doesn't she?*** |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## uses of question tags

We use question tags

- to get agreement from the person we are speaking to:
  *You don't come from Spain,* ***do you?*** (= voice falls on the tag = the speaker expects the answer no)
  *You come from Italy,* ***don't you?*** (= voice rises on the tag = the speaker expects the answer yes)
- to ask politely:
  *You couldn't give me a hand with this box,* ***could you?***
  *You don't know anything about computers,* ***do you?***
- to order people to do things politely. The tag is usually positive:
  ✗ ~~*Be careful,* ***don't you!***~~
  ✓ *Be careful,* ***won't you?***
  *Clear the table,* ***will you?***
- to make an informal offer:
  *Have a drink,* ***won't you?***
- to make a polite suggestion:
  *Let's go to the beach,* ***shall we?***

## Practice

**1 Fill in the spaces with the correct tag.**

1 Your dad does the cooking, .....?
Yours never does the housework, .....?
2 There's not much we can do about it, .....?
3 It's a beautiful day, .....?
Yes. Let's go for a walk, .....?
4 You've got a bicycle, .....?
Yes. You no longer have yours, .....?
5 You weren't cheating in the test, .....?
No, I'd never cheat, .....?
6 You don't know his secret, .....?
7 You could take up tennis, .....?
8 You'd rather carry on with volleyball, .....?
9 She lost her temper, .....?
10 Yes, but she shouldn't have, .....?

**2 Complete the sentences using an appropriate tag and any other necessary words.**

*Example:* You enjoyed the film.
You say: 'That film was great, wasn't it?'

1 Your friend has just read a book which you like, too.
You say: 'It's a .....?'
2 You look at your watch. It's early.
You say: 'We've got .....?'
3 You're thirsty. You like tea.
You say: 'Let's have .....?'
4 You want to make sure your name is on the list.
You say: 'I'm .....?'
5 You want to go out for a walk.
You say: 'Let's .....?'
6 You want to check if the train leaves from platform 2.
You ask: 'The train .....?'
7 You can't reach the salt.
Ask someone to pass it to you: 'Pass .....?'
8 Your little sister has got cake crumbs on her sweater.
You say: 'You've been .....?'
9 You're worried about your friend going climbing.
Tell your friend: 'Take care, .....?'
10 You want to check that you are leaving tomorrow morning, as agreed.
You ask: 'We're .....?'

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 4c phrases of agreement

## short answers

We often answer *yes / no* questions with short answers using an auxiliary verb:

*Can you come?* ***Yes, I can.***

- We repeat the auxiliary verb or modal verb which we use in the question:
  ***Is*** *there a light on?* ***Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.***
  ***Aren't*** *you Penny's brother?* ***Yes, I am.***
  ***Are*** *they good friends?* ***Yes, they are.***
  ***Do*** *they get on?* ***Yes, they do.***
  ***Does*** *she like acting?* ***No, she doesn't.***
  ***Will*** *you be there?* ***No, I won't.***
  ***Would*** *you ever lie?* ***No, I wouldn't.***
  ***Do*** *you have to leave now?* ***No, I don't****, but I prefer to.*
- The short answer for *Shall we … ?* is *Yes, let's / No, let's not*:
  *Shall we have a party?* ***Yes, let's. / No, let's not.***

## so

We can also give a short answer to *yes / no* questions with the verbs *think, be afraid, hope, suppose*, etc. + *so*. After *afraid, hope* and *suppose*, we use *not* instead of *so* when the short answer is negative:

| question | short answer |
|---|---|
| *Are they good friends?* | ***I think so. / I don't think so.*** |
| *Do they get on?* | ***I think so. / I don't think so.*** |
| *Do you think they'll come to the party?* | ***I hope so. / I hope not.*** |
| *Do we have to pay all that money?* | ***I'm afraid so.*** |
| *Can I come to the cinema, too?* | ***I'm afraid not.*** |
| *Are you going to lend me some money?* | ***I suppose so.*** |
| *You're not going to punish us all, are you?* | ***I suppose not.*** |

## expressing agreement with *so* and *neither*

In informal speech, we can use certain phrases which include *so* and *neither*, usually with *do* or *have*, to express agreement with something said previously.

- We use *so* + an auxiliary verb to express agreement with affirmative statements:
  ✗ ~~*Bill likes it and* ***I also***~~.
  ✓ *Bill likes it and* ***so do I.***
  *Max: I like rock music.*
  *Bill:* ***So do I.***
- We use *neither* + an auxiliary verb to express agreement with negative statements:
  ✗ ~~*She hasn't got any money and* ***I haven't***~~.
  ✓ *She hasn't got any money and* ***neither have I.***

| statement | reply (agreement) |
|---|---|
| *I've got a poster of Michael Owen.* | ***So have I.*** |
| *I usually go to the seaside in the summer.* | ***So do I.*** |
| *I don't have a photo of her.* | ***Neither do I.*** |
| *They didn't pass the test.* | ***Neither did I.*** |
| *John hasn't arrived yet.* | ***Neither has Mary.*** |
| *Steve didn't come to the rehearsal.* | ***Neither did Michael.*** |
| *She hasn't finished her homework.* | ***Neither have I.*** |

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## echo questions

We often use short questions in informal conversation to confirm that we have listened to what the other person has said, or to show interest in what the other person is saying. These echo questions do not need an answer.

- The pattern for using these echo questions is:
  Positive statement – positive echo question
  *Ben: I have already been to the States.*
  *Fred:* ***Have you?***
  Negative statement – negative echo question
  *Ben: But I haven't been to Australia.*
  *Fred:* ***Haven't you?***
- When the subject of the statement is an object, animal, etc., we use *it* in the echo question:
  *'This bike is very expensive?' 'Is* ***it****?'*
- When the subject is a group, we use *they*:
  *'United will win on Saturday.' 'Will* ***they****?'*
- After statements without an auxiliary verb or modal verb, we use *do* in the echo question:
  *'Mary arrived last night.' '****Did*** *she?'*
  *'Geese fly south for the winter.' '****Do*** *they?'*

As with question tags and short answers, we repeat the auxiliary verb or modal verb in the echo question which was in the original statement:

| statement | echo question |
|---|---|
| *I can come by taxi.* | ***Can you?*** |
| *I can't swim.* | ***Can't you?*** |
| *Maria doesn't play the piano.* | ***Doesn't she?*** |
| *The Smiths haven't arrived yet.* | ***Haven't they?*** |
| *I've got two dogs.* | ***Have you?*** |
| *John isn't coming.* | ***Isn't he?*** |
| *Emma could walk when she was one.* | ***Could she?*** |
| *You ought to be more careful.* | ***Should I?*** |
| *You should change university.* | ***Should I?*** |
| *We shouldn't drink so much.* | ***Shouldn't we?*** |
| *I'll do the washing up.* | ***Will you?*** |
| *I won't be able to pay the bill.* | ***Won't you?*** |
| *I'd rather stay at home.* | ***Would you?*** |
| *I'd never lie to you.* | ***Wouldn't you?*** |

## Practice

**1 Complete the following questions with appropriate short answers.**

1 'Have you done the washing up yet?' 'Yes, ..... .'
2 'Does he need his nappy changed?' 'No, ..... .'
3 'Would you like to come with me to the shops?' 'Yes, I think ..... .'
4 'Are you going to visit John while you're in London?' 'No, ..... .'
5 'Am I all right with my hair like this?' 'No, ..... .'
6 'Could you climb that wall if you had to?' 'Yes, ..... so.'
7 'Had you been waiting long before the police arrived?' 'No, ..... .'
8 'Can Bob come to the cinema, too?' 'No, I'm afraid ..... .'
9 'You wouldn't tell.' 'Oh yes ..... !'
10 'Shall we go?' 'Yes, ..... .'

**2 Add an appropriate echo question.**

1 'I can't use this computer.' '..... ?'
2 'Some parrots live longer than humans.' '..... ?'
3 'I'd wait a bit longer if I were you.' '..... ?'
4 'I won't bother about it.' '..... ?'
5 'She's got a rich uncle.' '..... ?'
6 'The motor can't work without petrol.' '..... ?'
7 'He always makes me laugh.' '..... ?'
8 'She never says she's sorry.' '..... ?'
9 'That dog barks all night.' '..... ?'
10 'Arsenal won the semi-final.' '..... ?'
11 'I could be there by six o'clock.' '..... ?'
12 'Elephants cry.' '..... ?'



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Fill each space in the following short exchanges with an appropriate auxiliary verb.**

*Example:* A: She hasn't finished painting her house yet.
B: Hasn't she?

1 A: I haven't got a computer yet.
B: ..... you?

2 A: I ..... lend you my bike, if you want.
B: Can you? Thanks.

3 A: You shouldn't take more than three of those pills a day.
B: ..... I?

4 A: We ..... have to be going home now.
B: Will we?

5 A: I'd rather stay at home tonight.
B: ..... you?

6 A: We could have done more to help him.
B: ..... we?

7 A: You don't have to invite them again.
B: ..... I?

8 A: They won't be able to visit this Christmas.
B: ..... they?

9 A: She ought to apologise.
B: ..... she?

10 A: I'm afraid she hasn't got a clue.
B: ..... she?

**4 Match a statement (1–10) with an appropriate short answer (a–j).**

1 They've got a lovely house in the country.
2 I like going to the theatre.
3 I don't really enjoy thrillers.
4 I've never seen such a huge car before.
5 Mike didn't do his homework.
6 I paid to get into the theatre.
7 They can't speak French.
8 You shouldn't lose your temper.
9 I'd love to be in Hawaii now.
10 You should save some money if you want to go to India with them.

**a** So did I.
**b** Neither should you.
**c** Neither can she.
**d** So should you.
**e** So do I.
**f** So have we.
**g** Neither do I.
**h** Neither have I.
**i** So would I.
**j** Neither did Tony.

HUSBAND: *I think our son got his intelligence from me,* ***don't you?***
WIFE: *Yes, I think so. I've still got mine.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 4d do and make

### do or make?

Here are some verb phrases with *do* and *make*.

| phrase | example |
|---|---|
| **do** | |
| *do your best* | *I **did my best** – what else could I do?* |
| *do a lot of damage* | *He crashed the car and **did a lot of damage** to it.* |
| *do some*, etc. *exercise* | *'I try and **do a bit of exercise** every day.' 'Do you?'* |
| *do harm* | *Smoking **does harm** to your health.* |
| *do homework* | ✗ ~~*I made my homework.*~~ ✓ *I **did** my homework.* |
| *do (the) housework* | ✗ ~~*She makes the housework.*~~ ✓ *She **does** the housework.* |
| *do research* | *Scientists will have to **do** more **research** into the problem.* |
| *do the*, etc. *shopping* | *I **had some shopping to do** before I came home.* |
| *do* a subject *at school* | *'We **do science** every day at school.' 'So do we.'* |
| *do badly/well* | *She's **doing** very **well** at school, isn't she?* |
| *do some work* | ***Do some work** and then we'll go for a drink.* |
| **make** | |
| *make an attempt* | *She **made an attempt** to break the world record.* |
| *make a cake, pizza*, etc. | *How did your son learn to **make his own pizzas**?* |
| *make the/some coffee* | *I'm just **making some coffee** if you want some.* |
| *make an effort* | *You'll have to **make** more of **an effort** if you want to succeed.* |
| *make an excuse* | *The pupil **made an excuse** after being late for the lesson.* |
| *make a fortune* | *He **made a fortune** out of importing expensive cars.* |
| *make fun of* sb / sth | *You shouldn't **make fun of** the way people talk.* |
| *make a mess* (*of* sth) | *I tried to fix the car myself but I **made a** complete **mess of** it.* |
| *make a mistake* | *If I've **made a mistake**, I'll correct it.* |
| *make money* | *She **made** a lot of **money** as a model.* |
| *make the most* (*of* sth) | ***Make the most of** the opportunity to travel.* |
| *make a noise* | *Who **made that noise**?* |
| *make notes* | *'Did you **make notes** as the lecturer was speaking?' 'Yes, I did.'* |
| *make an offer* | *I'll **make you an offer** you can't refuse.* |
| *make progress* | *Have you **made** much **progress** with your Spanish?* |
| *make sense* (*of* sth) | *I can't **make sense of** what you're saying. Speak more slowly.* |
| *make one's way back/home* | *The last bus had gone so I **made my way home** on foot.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## phrasal verbs with *do* and *make*

Here are some common phrasal verbs with *do* and *make*:

| phrasal verb | meaning/use | example |
|---|---|---|
| **do** | | |
| ***do away with*** sb/sth | abolish, get rid of sb/sth | *Europe has **done away with** duty-free shopping.* |
| ***do*** sb ***out of*** sth | cheat sb | *The sales assistant **did** me **out of** 5 euros.* |
| ***do without*** sth | manage to live without sb/sth | *I can't afford a car so I'll just have to **do without**.* |
| ***do*** sth ***up*** | fasten, tie sth | *I can't **do** my laces **up**.* |
| ***do up*** sth | repair, redecorate sth | *They **did up** the house and sold it.* |
| ***could do with*** sth | need, want sth | *I **could do with** something to eat.* |
| ***do with*** sth | have a connection with sth | *The problem has nothing **to do with** me.* |
| **make** | | |
| ***make away with*** sth | steal sth | *Thieves **made away with** her jewellery.* |
| ***make for*** somewhere | move towards somewhere | *Two thieves **made for** the window.* |
| ***make of*** sth | understand, interpret sth | *What do you **make of** their proposal?* |
| ***make off (with*** sth) | (steal sth and) leave quickly | *They attacked him and **made off with** his watch.* |
| ***make out*** sth<br>***make*** sth ***out*** | be only just able to hear, see, understand sth | *I can't **make out** her handwriting.* |
| ***make up (of*** sth) | combine together, form | *Tourism **makes up** 70% of their income.* |
| ***make up*** sth | invent an excuse, etc. | *She **made up** a silly story about the post being late.* |

## Practice

**1** **Put the following with the correct verb to make verb phrases.**

*an appointment*
*badly*
*a cup of coffee*
*a difference*
*a dress*
*good*
*your hair*
*your homework*
*a living*
*marks on the wall*
*a mistake*
*a phone call*
*a profit*
*a suggestion*
*well*
*a bad impression*
*the bed*
*a decision*
*the dishes*
*French*
*a good impression*
*harm*
*a job*
*a loss*
*Maths*
*money*
*Physics*
*sth for a living*
*the washing up*
*some work*

| do | make |
|---|---|
| | |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Match the verb phrases (1–10) with the meanings (a–j).**

1 make notes
2 do badly
3 make an attempt
4 make a journey
5 do harm
6 do some exercise
7 make sense
8 make a fortune
9 make sure
10 do your best

*Both players **made for** the ball at the same time.*

**a** check that sth is certain

**b** injure

**c** work and become rich

**d** try as hard as possible

**e** write down information

**f** try

**g** not be successful

**h** travel

**i** practise a set of movements to stay healthy

**j** understand because it is clear

**3 Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of *do* or *make*.**

1 Her job has something to ..... with marketing.
2 Girls ..... up half of the students in the school.
3 You'll have to ..... without your dinner if you don't get back in time.
4 She sits in front of the mirror for ages ..... herself up.
5 The government have decided to ..... away with the old tax law.
6 When the bell rang, the students ..... for the door.
7 Let's ..... the store room into an extra kitchen, shall we?
8 Speak louder – I can't ..... out what you're saying.
9 ..... up your coat – it's cold.
10 I was ..... out of ten pounds in the shop this morning.
11 They mugged the old lady and ..... off with her handbag.
12 If you ..... your best to explain the problem, I'm sure she'll understand.
13 What did the robbers ..... off with?
14 It's about time you ..... some exercise – you're getting a bit overweight.
15 I don't know what to ..... of Christina's odd behaviour just lately.
16 I could have ..... with more help.
17 I don't believe him – he's ..... it up!
18 How many times a week do you ..... the shopping?



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**4 Complete the questions with *do* or *make* and then write an answer.**

| WORK | ANSWER |
|---|---|
| 1 What would you like to ..... for a living? | ..... |
| 2 Is ..... a lot of money important to you? | ..... |
| 3 What would you wear to ..... a good impression at a job interview? | ..... |
| 4 Would you accept a well-paid job if it ..... harm to your health? | ..... |
| 5 Does it ..... a difference to you if your boss is a man or woman? | ..... |
| 6 Would you ..... a job which involved responsibility for people's lives? | ..... |
| **Are you a good student?** | |
| 7 Do you always ..... your homework? | ..... |
| 8 Which subject ..... you do well in at school? | ..... |
| 9 How do you feel when you ..... a mistake in your English? | ..... |
| 10 What do you do if you ..... badly in an exam? | ..... |
| 11 What kind of exercises do you like ..... in class? | ..... |
| 12 Do you ..... notes while you're listening to the cassette in English? | ..... |

**5 Fill each gap in the following text with one suitable word.**

# Overdoing it

'OK, you can ..... (1) your shirt up now,' said Doctor Hymes. He had just given me a thorough check-up and was ..... (2) detailed notes on a big sheet of paper.

'What do you ..... (3) of it all, doctor?' I asked anxiously.

'Well, the first thing is that you could ..... (4) with a good rest. You've been overdoing it a bit haven't you?' I admitted I had been ..... (5) a lot of overtime recently. I had taken a lot on and had ..... (6) a bit of a mess of it all and was suffering from stress. He agreed that this probably had a lot to ..... (7) with it. I had also ..... (8) the mistake of starting to smoke again; in fact my diet was now largely made ..... (9) of coffee and cigarettes. The doctor then reminded me that coffee did a lot of ..... (10) to our nervous system and of course cigarettes ..... (11) a lot of damage to the whole system. He said I should try and ..... (12) without coffee for a few days and make a serious ..... (13) to cut out smoking altogether.

'And make ..... (14) you have a proper meal every day,' he warned. His last piece of advice was that I should find time to ..... (15) some jogging every day. I promised him I'd do my best.

*There's no need to* ***do housework*** *– after four years the dirt doesn't get worse.*
QUENTIN CRISP



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 4e suffixes (3)

We normally use suffixes to change a word to a different part of speech. Sometimes a suffix produces a change in meaning (see 1e, 3e, 10e, 12e, 13e).

## abstract nouns

Abstract nouns name an idea, feeling experience or a state rather than an object person or particular instance.

Abstract nouns are always uncountable:

✗ ~~*There are no reliable evidences.*~~
✓ *There* ***is*** *no reliable* ***evidence.***
✗ ~~*They were satisfied with the new equipments.*~~
✓ *They were satisfied with the new* ***equipment.***

- However, some abstract nouns also have concrete meanings. In these cases they can be countable:
  ***Appearances*** *can be deceptive.*
  *We should consider all her* ***strengths*** *and* ***weaknesses.***

## ance / ence

We add *ance* or *ence* to many verbs to form abstract nouns. For abstract nouns ending in *(a)tion, (i)tion* or *sion*, see 3e:

*accept +* ***ance*** *= acceptance*
*exist +* ***ence*** *= existence*

- Many adjectives which end in *ant* or *ent* become abstract nouns by changing *t* to *ce*:
  *fragrant – fragrance  dependent – dependence*

## ment

We can also add *ment* to many verbs to form abstract nouns:

*agree +* ***ment*** *= agreement*

- Note that many nouns ending in *ment* have only a concrete meaning:
  *document, monument, ointment*

## ness

We can add *ness* to many adjectives to form abstract nouns:

*good +* ***ness*** *= goodness*

- Some of these nouns can be countable:
  *Thanks for the many* ***kindnesses*** *you've done me.*

## th

We use *th* with numbers (except one, two and three) to form ordinal numbers:

*fourth, fifteenth, eightieth*

- We also use *th* to form abstract nouns which are usually connected with size or quality:
  *growth, warmth*

Here are examples of abstract nouns using the suffixes *ance, ence, ment, ness* and *th*:

| ance | ence | ment | ness | th |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *acceptance* | *absence* | *advertisement* | *brightness* | *breadth* |
| *allegiance* | *affluence* | *achievement* | *carelessness* | *depth* |
| *annoyance* | *confidence* | *commitment* | *emptiness* | *fortieth* |
| *appearance* | *correspondence* | *embarrassment* | *greatness* | *growth* |
| *arrogance* | *defence* | *employment* | *happiness* | *health* |
| *avoidance* | *existence* | *encouragement* | *kindness* | *hundredth* |
| *distance* | *emergence* | *enjoyment* | *loneliness* | *length* |
| *disturbance* | *experience* | *entertainment* | *sleepiness* | *strength* |
| *importance* | *intelligence* | *environment* | *tenderness* | *umpteenth* |
| *insurance* | *occurrence* | *fulfilment* | *tightness* | *warmth* |
| *reluctance* | *patience* | *movement* | *ugliness* | *wealth* |
| *resistance* | *violence* | *refreshment* | *weakness* | *width* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Write abstract nouns for the following words, using one of the following suffixes: *ance, ence, ment, ness, th.* Use your dictionary.**

1 inherit .....
2 convenient .....
3 clumsy .....
4 obey .....
5 invest .....
6 develop .....
7 kind .....
8 effective .....
9 fair .....
10 prefer .....
11 innocent .....
12 improve .....
13 willing .....
14 retire .....
15 silent .....
16 disappoint .....
17 excite .....
18 polite .....
19 argue .....
20 punish .....
21 selfish .....
22 sixty .....

**2 Complete each of these common expressions with an appropriate form of an abstract noun from the list. You will need to use one of the nouns twice.**

*business silent absent accident ignorant appear patient*

1 ..... are deceptive.
2 ..... makes the heart grow fonder.
3 ..... will happen.
4 ..... before pleasure.
5 ..... is bliss.
6 ..... of the law is no excuse.
7 ..... is a virtue.
8 ..... is golden.

**3 Are the meanings of the underlined nouns countable (C) or uncountable (U)? Circle C or U.**

1 This medicine is available in various <u>strengths</u>. C U
2 It will take time for you to regain your <u>strength</u>. C U
3 There has been a significant <u>movement</u> towards organic food. C U
4 There has been no significant <u>movement</u> in the peace talks, I'm afraid. C U
5 The <u>width</u> of the Dome is more than two hundred metres. C U
6 It's more than two metres in <u>width</u>. C U
7 Our <u>achievement</u> of economic stability has been painful. C U
8 You'll get a great sense of <u>achievement</u> when you pass. C U
9 I've never known such <u>kindness</u> before. C U
10 Which particular <u>kindness</u> are you referring to? C U
11 Nurses sterilise all the <u>equipment</u> after an operation. C U
12 A computer is a very complex piece of <u>equipment</u>. C U



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**4 Make adjectives from the following nouns.**

1 intelligence .....
2 carelessness .....
3 patience .....
4 depth .....
5 arrogance .....
6 ugliness .....
7 width .....
8 emptiness .....
9 confidence .....
10 million .....

**5 Make nouns from the following verbs.**

1 disturb .....
2 correspond .....
3 emerge .....
4 sleep .....
5 resist .....
6 insure .....
7 annoy .....
8 empty .....
9 defend .....
10 commit .....

**6 Use the word given at the end of each line to form a word that fits the gap in the same line.**

A FORMAL LETTER

Dear Sir or Madam,

I read your ..... (1) in International Business magazine and I am writing for more information concerning entry ..... (2) for the course in English Language ..... (3). Could you tell me what language ..... (4) are required? I do not possess the First Certificate and would like to know if ..... (5) on the course depends on having the FCE? In fact, as I am an ..... (6) for an international ..... (7) company I would be interested in a course which focuses on language ..... (8) for both social and ..... (9) purposes. I would also like to know the ..... (10) from the college to London and if ..... (11) at all classes is obligatory, or whether an occasional ..... (12) for purposes of travel is acceptable.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Nelson Fernandez

ADVERTISE
REQUIRE
IMPROVE
QUALIFY
ACCEPT
ACCOUNT
INVEST
DEVELOP
BUSY
DISTANT
ATTEND
ABSENT

*Experience is the best teacher.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Exam practice 2

## Part 1

For Questions **1–15**, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### THE MYSTERY OF THE MARIE CELESTE

**Example: 0** **A** Because of **B** As for **C** Since **D** As a result

We spotted the Marie Celeste drifting in mid-Atlantic on December 5, 1872. ..... (**0**) the ship looked damaged, the captain said the three of us ..... (**1**) board her at once ..... (**2**)investigate and ..... (**3**) him back any information we could get hold of. We ..... (**4**) climb on board without too much difficulty but we couldn't see any sign of life anywhere. The crew of the Marie Celeste ..... (**5**) have abandoned ship ..... (**6**) the ship's small lifeboat was missing. Some navigational equipment which a ship of that kind .....(**7**) had on board was also missing. The crew ..... (**8**) had much time to abandon ship because they had not ..... (**9**) with them many of their personal possessions. Luckily, we ..... (**10**) to find the ship's log which helped us a great deal in our ..... (**11**). The last time the captain of the Marie Celeste had ..... (**12**) an entry in the ship's log was November 21. Something extraordinary must have taken ..... (**13**) between this date and December 5. The captain of the ship, Benjamin Briggs, had extensive ..... (**14**)of the high seas so what had made him ..... (**15**) the decision to abandon ship in the middle of nowhere?

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | **A** have | **B** had to | **C** could | **D** ought |
| 2 | **A** in order that | **B** so that | **C** in order to | **D** for to |
| 3 | **A** take | **B** get | **C** carry | **D** bring |
| 4 | **A** couldn't | **B** managed | **C** unable | **D** were able to |
| 5 | **A** can't | **B** must | **C** hadn't | **D** could |
| 6 | **A** since | **B** on account of | **C** as a result of | **D** owing to |
| 7 | **A** shouldn't | **B** should have | **C** shouldn't have | **D** should be |
| 8 | **A** ought not have | **B** must not | **C** couldn't have | **D** would have |
| 9 | **A** taken | **B** fetched | **C** brought | **D** had |
| 10 | **A** could | **B** able | **C** knew | **D** managed |
| 11 | **A** information | **B** solution | **C** suggestion | **D** investigation |
| 12 | **A** took | **B** passed | **C** wrote | **D** made |
| 13 | **A** part | **B** care | **C** place | **D** control |
| 14 | **A** qualification | **B** education | **C** experience | **D** travel |
| 15 | **A** bring | **B** choose | **C** have | **D** take |

SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Part 2

For Questions **16–30**, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only **one** word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

**WHAT A DAY!**

Who ..... (**0**) says a day at home is restful? I was in the middle of ..... (**16**) the dinner and I still had a huge pile of ironing to ..... (**17**). No sooner had I ironed the first shirt ..... (**18**) the doorbell rang. I had ..... (**19**) most of the housework during the morning and had even had time to pop out to ..... (**20**) some shopping. I had just about enough time left to ..... (**21**) the beds and perhaps ..... (**22**) a few of my daily keep-fit ..... (**23**) when the salesman from the vacuum cleaner company ..... (**24**) up at the door. He had phoned my wife to ..... (**25**) an appointment. She had ..... (**26**) me about it but it had slipped my mind. 'I'm not interrupting anything, ..... (**27**) I?' he said with one of those false smiles people ..... (**28**) on when they are trying to ..... (**29**) you something. 'We did say one o'clock, ..... (**30**) we?' He smiled again and asked if my wife was at home.

SCORE _____

## Part 3

For Questions **31–40**, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. **Do not change the word given**. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (**0**).

**Example: 0** She put on thick socks because she didn't want to get cold feet.
**so**
She put on thick socks so as to avoid getting cold feet.

**31** A friend is looking after the baby while I'm out.
**care**
A friend ..... the baby while I'm out.

**32** It's possible that she didn't hear what I said.
**might**
She ..... what I said.

**33** The noise outside made it difficult for me to concentrate fully.
**because**
I ..... of the noise outside.

**34** The burglar wore gloves so as to avoid leaving any fingerprints.
**order**
The burglar wore gloves ..... any fingerprints.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**35** It's a pity you didn't get your bicycle brakes repaired immediately.
**ought**
You ..... your bicycle brakes repaired immediately.

**36** It was raining so they cancelled the football match.
**owing**
The football match ..... the rain.

**37** The manager gave me permission to have the day off.
**could**
The manager ..... the day off.

**38** She spoke too fast for them to understand.
**because**
They ..... she spoke too fast.

**39** I expect you were very tired after your long flight.
**been**
You ..... very tired after your long flight.

**40** A serious accident led to the road being closed.
**result**
The road had to be ..... a serious accident.

SCORE

## Part 4

For Questions **41–55**, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line.

### FINDING A PEN-FRIEND

**41** The Pen-Pal scheme makes up every effort to match individuals .....
**42** in different countries. Only when on rare occasions have we .....
**43** failed to find clients pen-pals. If you are interested in you should .....
**44** fill in the form asking for details about yourself. We need to .....
**45** know the hobbies and sports you like as only if then .....
**46** can we match you with a suitable partner. To tell us .....
**47** which subjects you like doing at school and if you have .....
**48** any requirements as far as a food is concerned. Most pen pals .....
**49** end up with exchanging visits and it is vital that you feel .....
**50** at ease when you will visit each other. We do our best to .....
**51** avoid obvious clashes. Before you make out your .....
**52** choice of pen-pal make sure you have looked at several .....
**53** possible partners; someone they may make a very good .....
**54** impression on you until you will have seen the other pen- .....
**55** pals so take your time before you make up your mind. .....

SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Part 5

For Questions **56 – 65**, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### SUPERLATIVE VACUUM CLEANERS

| | |
|---|---|
| We all know how exhausting (**0**) housework can be and | EXHAUST |
| sweeping the carpet must be one of the most ..... (**56**) | TIRE |
| of ..... (**57**) chores. We think we have come up with | HOUSE |
| a ..... (**58**) to back-breaking carpet cleaning – our new | SOLVE |
| range of state of the art vacuum ..... (**59**) provide a quick | CLEAN |
| and ..... (**60**) answer to dust, however deeply ingrained. | EFFECT |
| We would be happy to send you ..... (**61**) about our new | INFORM |
| vacuum cleaners; our leaflets contain a complete ..... (**62**) | DESCRIBE |
| of the latest models, and if you would like a ..... (**63**) of | DEMONSTRATE |
| how they work why not take up our free ..... (**64**) offer today | TRY |
| with no ..... (**65**) to buy. Just send off the form below or ring | OBLIGE |
| us on 101 243679 now! | |

SCORE

TOTAL SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 5

## AGENDA

### Grammar

5a First and Second Conditionals
5b Third Conditional
5c *I wish, if only*

### Vocabulary

5d *want, expect, love, bear,* etc
5e prefixes (2)

# Entry test

**Underline the correct answer in sentences 1–5.**

1 If you *don't hurry / will hurry*, you'll miss the train.
2 What *can / will* I do if she refuses to listen to me?
3 His French won't improve *provided / unless* he studies more.
4 If I *had / will have* more time, I would take up tennis.
5 If I *were / would be* in your position, I'd buy a new suit.

**Now look at 5a on page 82.**

**Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.**

6 I ...B..... happy to advise you if you'd asked me.
A had been B would have been C would be D will be

7 If she ...D..... her driving test, she would have bought a car.
A would have passed B has passed C passed D had passed

8 I wouldn't have lent him the money if he ...C..... desperate.
A has not been B wasn't been C hadn't been D couldn't be

9 If you'd run faster, you ...C..... the bus.
A should've caught B wouldn't catch C could've caught D might catch

10 If I hadn't worked hard when I was young I ...D..... where I am now.
A won't have been B would be C hadn't been D wouldn't be

**Now look at 5b on page 84.**



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill spaces in 11–15.**

11 I wish I ..B..... more money.
A have B had C will have D has

12 If only I ..D..... a little bit slimmer.
A will be B be C being D were

13 I do wish you ..D..... make less noise.
A to B will C did D would

14 I wish we ..C..... on the same flight tomorrow.
A were travelling B will travel C would travel D had travelled

15 If only I ..D..... the chance to study when I was younger.
A have had B will have C was having D had had

**Now look at 5c on page 86.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill spaces in 16–20.**

16 I ..B..... to pass all my exams at the first attempt.
A am wishing B am wanting C am hoping D am desiring

17 Farmers are ..D..... a good harvest this year.
A waiting B looking forward C hoping D expecting

18 I am really looking forward ..C..... to camp again this summer.
A go B be going C to going D to go

19 She ..D..... her work passionately and will never give it up.
A likes B is fond of C keen on D loves

20 I can't stand ..C..... to people who complain all the time.
A listen B I listen C listening D to have listened

**Now look at 5d on page 89.**

SCORE _____

**In questions 21–25, add the correct prefix in the spaces to complete the word.**

21 It was a very attractive plan but quite .....practical.

22 A third of the electorate remain .....decided about how they will vote.

23 The local people feel .....trustful towards the police.

24 He faced accusations that he had been .....respectful to his headteacher.

25 The noise coming from next door was so loud it was .....bearable.

**Now look at 5e on page 92.**

SCORE _____

TOTAL SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 5a First and Second Conditionals

Conditional clauses begin with *if* (or a word such as *when* which means the same as *if*) and follow basic patterns (see also 5b). This Section deals with patterns which form the First, Second and Zero Conditionals:

### First Conditionals

We use First Conditionals to talk about events which are possible. The Conditional clause can refer to the present or the future.

| Conditional clause | | main clause |
|---|---|---|
| *if* + Present Simple | – | *will* + bare infinitive |
| ***If** it **rains**,* | | *we **will stay** at home.* |

- The Conditional clause can come before or after the main clause. We use a comma at the end of the Conditional clause when it comes first:
  ***If** you **don't try** harder, you **will fail**.*
  *You **will fail** if you **don't try** harder.*
- Other structures are possible, depending on what you want to say:

| Conditional clause | | main clause |
|---|---|---|
| *if* + Present Simple | – | modal verb |
| ***If** you **behave yourself**,* | | *you **can** come.* |
| *if* + Present Simple | – | *be going to* (future) |
| ***If** you **don't work**,* | | *you're **going** to fail.* |
| *if* + Present Simple | – | imperative |
| ***If** you **need** anything,* | | ***ask**.* |
| *if* + Present Continuous | – | *will* + bare infinitive |
| ***If** we're **leaving** soon,* | | *I'll **get** my coat.* |
| *if* + Present Perfect | – | *will* + bare infinitive. |
| ***If** I've **finished**,* | | ***I'll be able to** come.* |
| *if* + Present Perfect | – | modal verb |
| ***If** you've **finished**,* | | *you **can** go out.* |
| Imperative | – | *and / or + will* |
| ***Eat** less* | | ***and** you'll get slim.* |

### Second Conditional

We use the Second Conditional for unlikely situations in the present or future:

| Conditional clause | | main clause |
|---|---|---|
| *if* + Past Simple | – | *would* |
| ***If I had** enough money,* | | ***I'd** retire.* |

- Instead of *would* we can use other modal verbs:
  ***If I lost** my job, **I might** go abroad for a while.*
- Compare First and Second Conditionals:
  *If **I lose** my job, **I'll** find life very difficult.*
  (= there is a possibility – First Conditional)
  *If **I lost** my job, **I'd** find life very difficult.*
  (= there is no evidence – Second Conditional)

### Zero Conditional

We use the Zero Conditional to show that one action, result, etc. always follows another. We often use *when* for *if*:

| Conditional clause | | main clause |
|---|---|---|
| Present Simple | – | Present Simple |
| ***If/When** water **freezes**,* | | *it **turns** to ice.* |
| ***When I travel** by boat,* | | ***I'm** always **sick**.* |

***(just) in case***

This means 'because it is possible that…' and usually comes after the main clause (see page 97)
*Paul will bring you a sweater **in case** it gets cold.*

***provided (that); as long as***

These phrases suggest that there is one vital condition (see also page 97):
***Provided** you **rest**, you'll **make** a full recovery.*

***unless***

We can use *unless* to replace *if…not* in Conditionals (see also page 97). After *unless*, we use a Present tense to talk about the future:
***Unless** you **leave** now, you **will be** late.*
*You **will be** late **unless** you **go** now.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Complete the sentences using these words and phrases.**

*was leaving can't might starts am would be becomes take should*

1 If I ...am..... not busy, I'll visit you.
2 If he ...was..... careful, he wouldn't break things.
3 If he were slimmer, he ..would be. much more attractive.
4 If she ..becomes. Prime Minister, she'll raise taxes.
5 Unless you stop wasting time, I'm ..leaving.... right now.
6 If you don't give me more information, I ..can't..... help you.
7 If a fire ..starts....., the alarm goes off.
8 You ..should.... make your own food if you don't like my cooking.
9 ..take..... more exercise and you'll soon feel better.
10 If the weather improves, I ..might..... go for a stroll.

**2 Write two sentences using the information. The first should express a *likely* event and the second a *less likely* but still possible event.**

*Example:* we leave at eight / we arrive on time
*likely*: If we leave at eight o'clock, we'll arrive on time.
*less likely*: If we left at eight o'clock, we'd arrive on time.

uf

1 am not busy / come and pick you up
*likely*: .....
*less likely*: .....
2 you fall / break your leg
*likely*: ...If you fall from height, you will break your leg
*less likely*: ..If you fell, you would break your leg
3 I drink too much wine / I feel sleepy
*likely*: ...If I drink too much wine, I will feel sleepy
*less likely*: ..If I drank too much wine, I would feel sleepy
4 you get the job / you have more freedom
*likely*: ..If you get the job, you will have more freedom
*less likely*: ..If you got the job, you would have more freedom
?the 5 the questions be easy enough / everyone pass the test
*likely*: ..If questions are easy enough, everyone will pass the test
*less likely*: ..If questions were easy enough, everyone would pass the test

**3 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given.**

*Example:* Her job is tiring because she doesn't have a secretary. **not**
If she had a secretary, her job would not be so tiring.

1 Give us your vote and we promise to make this country great again. **long**
We'll make this country great again ..... us your vote.
2 There will be no more unemployment, if we win the elections. **jobs**
If we come to power, ..... ..... for everybody.
3 We will build more schools if we can afford to. **enough**
Provided ..... ....., we will build more schools.
4 They won't let you into the theatre without a ticket. **unless**
You can't get into the theatre ..... ..... a ticket.
5 Bring your sun lotion because a heatwave is possible. **case**
Bring your sun lotion ..... ..... a heatwave.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 5b Third Conditional

We use the Third Conditional to talk about an event or situation that did not happen in the past:

| Conditional clause | main clause |
|---|---|
| *if* + Past Perfect | – *would* + Perfect |
| *If Bruce* ***had asked*** *me,* | *I* ***would have said*** *'yes'.* |

✗ ~~*If I* ***wouldn't have become*** *a teacher,* ***I would like to be*** *an actor.*~~

✓ *If I* ***had not become*** *a teacher, I* ***would have liked*** *to be an actor.*

- Notice how we can make either clause negative, with changes in the meaning:
  *If I* ***had taken*** *an umbrella, I* ***wouldn't have*** *got wet.* (= but I did get wet)
  *If I* ***hadn't taken*** *an umbrella, I* ***would have*** *got wet.* (= but I didn't get wet)
- Both clauses can be negative:
  *They* ***wouldn't have*** *missed their plane if they* ***hadn't woken up*** *late.* (= but they did wake up late, and they did miss their plane)
- Instead of *would*, we can use *could* or *might* modal verbs in the main clause:
  *If you****'d asked****, I* ***could've told*** *you the answer.*
  *I* ***might have gone*** *to the party if I* ***had known*** *about it.*
- We often use *if only* meaning 'I wish very strongly' (see 5c):
  ***If only*** *he had asked, I'd have helped him.*

## Mixed Conditionals

Sometimes we make sentences which mix Secon and Third Conditionals, especially when a past event has an effect in the present:

*If you* ***hadn't invited*** *me, I* ***wouldn't have gone*** *to the party.* (= I did go to the party – Third conditional)

*If you* ***hadn't invited*** *me, I* ***wouldn't be here*** *now.* (= I'm at the party now – Third + Secon Conditionals)

## Practice

**1 Complete these sentences to make appropriate Third Conditional or Mixed Conditional sentences, using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

*Example:* If you ..... (**come**) to the theatre yesterday, you ..... (**enjoy**) the play.
If you had come to the theatre with me yesterday, you would have enjoyed the play.

1 If I ..... (**visit**) Athens last year, I ..... (**phone**) you.
2 If only I ..... (**know**) you already had tickets, I ..... (**not get**) any for you.
3 If you ..... (**start**) coming to the course earlier, you ..... (**could pass**) the exam.
4 If I ..... (**not be**) so shy at the party last Saturday, I ..... (**might make**) more friends.
5 If you ..... (**not spend**) so much money, I ..... (**not be**) angry now.
6 I ..... (**could become**) an accountant if I ..... (**be**) good at maths.
7 She ..... (**get**) promoted last year if she ..... (**not argue**) with the boss.
8 He ..... (**not get**) the job, if he ..... (**not wear**) a tie.
9 If I ..... (**meet**) you before, my life ..... (**be**) different.
10 If he ..... (**not see**) the other car, there ..... (**be**) a serious accident.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Make Third Conditional sentences for each of the following situations. Begin with the words given.**

*Example:* I was tired. I went to bed early.
If I hadn't felt tired, I wouldn't have gone to bed early. or:
If I hadn't felt tired, I would have gone to bed later.

1 I didn't have enough money. I didn't take a taxi.
If ..... .
2 I wasn't interested in the film. I didn't go to the cinema.
If ..... .
3 We took the wrong turning. We arrived late.
If ..... .
4 Romeo thought Juliet was dead. He committed suicide.
Romeo wouldn't ..... .
5 Oliver was punished. He asked for more food.
If Oliver ..... .
6 The building had weak foundations. It fell down.
The building wouldn't have ..... .
7 I didn't go downstairs. I was afraid of the dark.
I might ..... .
8 You didn't run fast. You didn't come first.
You could ..... .
9 I didn't know she was the examiner. I made a silly joke.
Had ..... .
10 She didn't have a car. She couldn't have driven there.
If she ..... .

**3 Fill each space in the following text with one suitable word.**

# All the difference

I often wonder how my life would have ..... (1) different if on that particular day I ..... (2) walked in the other direction. Or what ..... (3) have happened if – in those few seconds – I ..... (4) walked just a little bit faster? She wouldn't ..... (5) been able to do what she did, say the things she said. If it ..... (6) not been for these shy words of greeting, I would not ..... (7) here now – I would probably ..... (8) in the same city I grew up in. It is amazing how our lives depend on the most minute details: a split-second decision which makes all the difference. ..... (9) I ever have found romance at all ..... (10) I hadn't met Francesca that day and if she ..... (11) decided not to walk on that path beside the trees? I couldn't possibly ..... (12) done what I did in my life if we ..... (13) not met on that bright, sunny morning. And if the sun had not ..... (14) shining and the birds singing, she would probably have ..... (15) even spoken to me.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 5c I wish, if only

## wishes about the present

We use *wish* with Past Tense forms (Simple and Continuous) to express regret about present situations (see also 5d):

*I wish I* ***was*** *taller.* (= I'm not very tall)
*I wish I* ***was going*** *on holiday with you.* (= but I'm not)
*I wish you* ***were*** *more help.* (= but you're not)

- *I wish I were* can replace *I wish I was.* To many people, *I wish I were* sounds more correct:
  *I wish I* ***were*** *taller.*
- We use *wish* with *could* to express a wish for a present situation to be different:
  *I wish I* ***could*** *use a computer well.*
  ✗ ~~*I wish I* ***would*** *tell her about it.*~~
  ✓ *I wish I* ***could*** *tell her about it.*

## wishes about the future

We use *wish* with *would* to say how we would like somebody to behave in the future:

✗ ~~*I* ***wish*** *you* ***to stop*** *talking.*~~
✓ *I* ***wish*** *you* ***would stop*** *talking.*
✗ ~~*I* ***wish*** *that they* ***will stop*** *arguing.*~~
✓ *I* ***wish*** *they* ***would stop*** *arguing.*

- We can also use this pattern in situations that do not involve people:
  *I* ***wish*** *this car* ***would go*** *faster.*

## wishes about the past

We use *wish* with the Past Perfect when we have regrets about the past:

*I* ***wish*** *I* ***hadn't taken*** *your advice.* (= but I did)
*I* ***wish*** *she* ***could have come.*** (= but she didn't)

Here is a summary of patterns using *wish*:

| verb form after *wish* | time reference | example (+ meaning) |
|---|---|---|
| Past Simple | present | *I wish I* ***knew*** *the answer.* (= I don't know) |
| Past Simple | present | *I wish I* ***was/were*** *better at sports.* (= I'm not) |
| Past Continuous | present | *I wish I* ***was/were*** *going with you.* (= I'm not) |
| *could* | present | *I wish I* ***could*** *give you an answer.* (= I can't) |
| *would* | future | *I wish you* ***would*** *be quiet.* (= Your talking irritates me.) |
| Past Perfect | past | *I wish I* ***had known*** *you then.* (= but I didn't) |
| *could have* | past | *I wish I* ***could have*** *explained.* (= I wasn't able to) |

## *if only*

*If only* can be more emphatic than *I wish.* The verb forms after *if only* are the same as the patterns with *wish*:

***If only*** *I* ***had*** *more money!* (= but I haven't)
***If only*** *I* ***was going*** *on holiday with you!*
***If only*** *you* ***were*** *here.* (= but you're not)
***If only*** *the sun* ***would*** *come out!*
***If only*** *you* ***could*** *be here!* (= but you're not)
***If only*** *I'd* ***listened*** *to you!* (= but I didn't)
***If only*** *he* ***could have*** *explained!* (= but he wasn't able to)

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets. Some sentences require a negative.**

1 Bruce wishes he ..... (**have**) more money so he could buy a new sweater.
2 I wish it ..... (**snow**) now that it's Christmas.
3 I wish I ..... (**be**) taller so that I could be in the basketball team.
4 I wish you ..... (**stop**) watching television while I am talking to you.
5 I wish you ..... (**do**) that. It annoys me.
6 I wish the holidays ..... (**come**) so we could go off to the seaside.
7 I wish they ..... (**build**) that block of flats right in front of our window.
8 Of course Tom wishes he ..... (**come**) with us Paris, but he has to stay here and work.
9 I wish we ..... (**go**) to the match on Saturday but we're visiting my uncle instead.
10 I wish you ..... (**keep**) your mouth shut yesterday. Now Mary knows everything.
11 If only ..... (**lose**) all my money. Now I'm broke.
12 Peter is always late. If only he ..... (**turn up**) on time for a change!

**2 Here are some problems in brackets. How could they have been avoided? Use the words and phrases to help you write two sentences about each problem using *I wish* and *If only*.**

*play fewer computer games* *keep calm* *eat less* *lose temper* *walk more* *use bins*
*watch less TV* *use car less often* *save water* *let someone else drive* *waste water*
*take more exercise* *protect forest* *drive carefully* *recycle more paper* *take rubbish home*

1 (I've gained a lot of weight.)
*I wish* .....
*If only* ..... .
2 (The rivers and reservoirs have dried up.)
*I wish* .....
*If only* ..... .
3 (He crashed his car.)
*I wish* .....
*If only* ..... .
4 (He had a row with his best friend.)
*I wish* .....
*If only* ..... .
5 (People drop litter in the street.)
*I wish* .....
*If only* ..... .
6 (We are cutting down too many trees.)
*I wish* .....
*If only* ..... .
7 (People use their cars when they don't need to.)
*I wish* .....
*If only* ..... .
8 (Children don't read enough nowadays.)
*I wish* .....
*If only* ..... .



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Write a sentence about each problem using *I wish* or *if only* and the word in brackets.**

*Example:* The weather is awful. (**improve**)
I wish the weather would improve. / If only the weather would improve.

1 People leave the tap running all the time. (**turn off**)
.....

2 Your brother is very angry. (**calm down**)
.....

3 The postman hasn't arrived and I'm waiting for an important letter. (**arrive**)
.....

4 People hunt animals for sport. (**stop**)
.....

5 The people next door have their TV on very loud. (**turn down**)
.....

6 Your friend keeps complaining about everything all the time. (**stop**)
.....

7 It doesn't rain enough. (**more**)
.....

8 Your favourite football team has lost every match so far. (**win**)
.....

9 I can't wait for Christmas. (**come**)
.....

10 Too much rubbish is thrown away. (**recycle**)
.....

**4 What are people saying or thinking in these situations? Complete each statement.**

1

'If only .....
.....
..... .'

2

'If only .....
.....
..... .'

3

'If only .....
.....
..... .'

4

'If only .....
.....
..... .'

5

'If only .....
.....
..... .'

6

'If only.....
.....
..... .'

7

'If only .....
.....
..... .'

8

'If only .....
.....
..... .'



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 5d want, expect, love, bear, etc.

### want, wish, hope, long for / to

| pattern | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***want*** + noun | desire sth | *I **want** some money.* |
| ***want*** + (sb) + *to*-infinitive | desire (sb) to do sth | *I **want to go** on holiday.* |
| ***wish*** + Past Simple<br>***wish*** + *could* | want sth though it is unlikely or impossible | *I **wish** I had a dog.*<br>*I **wish** I could fly.* |
| ***wish*** + *to*-infinitive | want (formal) to do sth | *I **wish to** make a complaint.* |
| ***wish*** sb + noun phrase | hope sth for sb | *I **wish** you luck in your career.* |
| ***hope*** + noun clause | want and believe sth is possible | *I **hope** you're coming with us.* |
| ***hope*** + *to*-infinitive | want to do sth | *I **hope** to see you on Saturday.* (slightly formal) |

- *Want* can have a direct object immediately after it, but we cannot use *wish* and *hope* in this way:
  ✗ ~~*I **wish** a drink.*~~ ✗ ~~*I **hope** a drink.*~~
  ✓ *I **want** a drink.*

- We can use *wish* and *hope*, but not *want*, with a noun clause:
  ✗ ~~*I **want** (that) you are happy.*~~
  ✓ *I **hope** (that) you will be happy.*
  ✓ *I **wish** (that) you could be happy.*

### expect, wait for, look forward to, long for

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***expect*** + noun | demand sth | *I **expect** respect from my children.* |
| ***expect*** (sb) + *to*-infinitive | think or demand that sth will happen | *I **expect** you to call me.*<br>*He **expects** to get a mobile phone for Christmas.* |
| ***expect*** + *that*-clause | believe that sth will happen | *I **expect** (that) she'll do well.* |
| ***wait for*** sb / sth | stay until sth happens | *They're **waiting for** a taxi.* |
| ***can't wait*** (+ *to*-infinitive)<br>***can't wait*** (***for*** sth) | be very excited about sth | *I **can** hardly **wait** to see you!*<br>*I **can't wait for** my birthday!* |
| ***look forward to*** sth<br>***look forward to*** + *-ing* | be excited about the future | *I'm **looking forward to** Saturday.*<br>*I'm **looking forward to** seeing you.*<br>✗ ~~*I look **forward to receive** your letter.*~~<br>✓ *I look **forward to receiving** your letter.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## like, love, be fond of, be keen on

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***like*** sth | enjoy sth or think it is nice | *I **like** your new dress.* |
| ***like*** sb | think sb is nice and enjoy being with them | *I don't think he **likes** me.* |
| ***like*** noun | prefer sth | *How do you **like** your coffee?* |
| ***like*** + *to*-infinitive<br>***like*** + *-ing* form | prefer to do sth<br>prefer doing sth | *I **like** to take a walk in the morning.*<br>*I **like** looking at clouds.* |
| ***love*** sb | have deep feelings for sb; to feel strong romantic attraction to sb | *Children need to be **loved**.*<br>*He was the only man she ever **loved**.* |
| ***love*** sth + *to*-infinitive<br>***love*** + *-ing* | like sth very much<br>like doing sth | *I **love** carrots.*<br>*He **loves** to talk about himself.*<br>*I **love** gardening.* |
| ***be fond of*** sb / sth | like sb/sth very much | *John's quite **fond of** Mary, isn't he?* |
| ***be fond of*** + *-ing* | like doing sth very much | *I'm very **fond of** walking in the mountains.* |
| ***be keen on*** sth / *-ing* | be very interested in sth / doing it often | *I'm **keen on** tennis – I take part in a lot of competitions.*<br>*I'm **keen on** gardening.* |
| ***be keen on*** sb | be very attracted to sb romantically | *He must **be** pretty **keen on** her – they've been dancing all night.* |
| ***be keen*** + *to*-infinitive | want very much to start doing sth | *I'm **keen** to learn Japanese.* |

- We use both *be fond of* and *be keen on* with *-ing*:
  ***I'm fond of swimming.*** (= I like swimming very much)
  ***I'm keen on swimming.*** (= I do a lot of swimming)
- We can use *be keen* (but not *fond*) with a *to*-infinitive:
  *She's **keen to** get back to work.*
- Note that *be keen on -ing* means 'interested in -ing' but *be keen to do it* means 'want very much to start doing it'.

## stand, bear

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***can't stand*** sb / sth | find sth or sth very unpleasant | *I **can't stand** coconut.* |
| ***can't / won't stand*** sth | can't / won't accept an unpleasant situation | *I don't know if I **can stand** the tension any longer.*<br>*I **won't stand** any nonsense.* |
| ***can't stand*** + *-ing* | not be able to accept or like doing sth | *Anne **can't stand** working in Mr Brown's office.* |
| ***can't / couldn't bear*** sb / sth | find sb or sth extremely unpleasant | *Oh, I **can't bear** that man!*<br>*Please don't leave me alone – I **couldn't bear** it.* |
| ***can / can't bear*** (sb) + *-ing* | (not) be able to accept or like (sb) doing sth | *He **can't bear** people being late.*<br>*He **can't bear** watching sport on TV.* |
| ***can / can't bear*** + *to*-infinitive | (not) be able to accept or like | *How **can** you **bear** to work all day in that little room?* |

- *Can't bear* is similar to *can't stand*, but often suggests stronger anger, fear or sadness.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Underline the correct word or phrase in these sentences.**

1 Hi! I just *wanted / wished* to say how much I enjoyed our chat last night.
2 I *hope / want* everything goes well and you arrive safe and sound.
3 Congratulations. We all *hope / wish* you every happiness and prosperity.
4 I am *hoping / wishing* to go and study abroad next year.
5 I am *expecting / waiting* the postman any minute now.
6 I've been *waiting for / expecting* you in the rain since nine o'clock. Where have you been?
7 I *wait for / expect* respect from my children.
8 I am so *expecting / looking forward to* seeing my friends again after three months away.
9 He told her he *loved / liked* her with all his heart.
10 I *like / am keen on* David but we have never been close friends.
11 I quite *like / love* my neighbours and we do seem to get on quite well.
12 I am *keen / fond* to get out of hospital and lead a normal life again.
13 I'm actually not very keen *on / to* watching TV. I hardly ever switch it on.
14 I can't *bear / like* it when you're angry. I get really upset.

**2 Fill the gaps in the following text with one suitable word.**

# The best years of your life?

Most people look back on school with fond memories, but while they are going through the experience they can't ..... (1) for it to be over. One joke that students are very ..... (2) of repeating is that what they ..... (3) best about school is the breaks. And what they look forward ..... (4) most of all is the end of term and going on holiday. I think it would be unrealistic to ..... (5) much enthusiasm from children for maths on a Monday morning.

Oddly enough, I was quite fond ..... (6) school at the time and look back on most of my old teachers with affection. Moreover, I am quite ..... (7) on my job and even enjoy the company of noisy children. However, there are some things I ..... (8) from my classes if we are all to get on well. The first thing I tell them is that I will not accept bullying or disrespect towards other students. I ..... (9) I am not being too strict or old-fashioned but I do ..... (10) all members of the class to feel respected. Outside class, I'm not at all keen ..... (11) marking huge piles of examination scripts. I simply ..... (12) stand the idea of spending hours writing corrections in red ink, knowing that most students will not bother to look at them.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 5e prefixes (2)

We have seen (see 2e) that we use prefixes to change meaning. They never change the part of speech. (Most suffixes change the part of speech.)

- Many prefixes give a word a meaning which is the negative of the original. Examples are *dis*, *in*, *un*. Other prefixes change meaning in different ways, for example:
  ***multi*** + *ethnic* = *multiethnic* (= made up of many different ethnic groups)

Here are some more prefixes:

| prefix | meaning/use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***de*** + verb / noun | opposite | *decentralise* |
| ***de*** + verb | remove | *debone* |
| ***de*** + verb | reduce | *devalue* |
| ***ex*** + noun | previous | *ex-husband* |
| ***macro-*** noun | large | *macroeconomics* |
| ***micro*** + noun | very small | *microelectronics* |
| ***mini*** + noun | small | *mini hi-fi* |
| ***mono*** + noun | one | *monolingual* |
| ***multi*** + noun / adjective | many | *multipurpose* |
| ***semi*** + noun / adjective | half | *semicircle* |
| ***semi*** + adjective | partly | *semiliterate* |
| ***sub*** + noun | under | *subterranean* |
| ***sub*** + noun | less/lower | *subcommittee* |

*She went to great trouble to **debone** the fish.*

## Practice

**1 Add a prefix from the list opposite to the words (1–20). You will use each prefix more than once. Then write down the meaning of the new word. You can use your dictionary.**

*Example:* escalate *de-escalate* means *to remov or reduce the amount of fighting*

*de ex mini micro mono multi semi sub*

1 final ..... means .....
2 partner ..... means .....
3 standard ..... means .....
4 national ..... means .....
5 section ..... means .....
6 bus ..... means .....
7 caffeinated ..... means .....
8 ethnic ..... means .....
9 zero ..... means .....
10 regulate ..... means .....
11 plot ..... means .....
12 wife ..... means .....
13 nationalise ..... means .....
14 biology ..... means .....
15 rail ..... means .....
16 skirt ..... means .....
17 soil ..... means .....
18 chip ..... means .....
19 code ..... means .....
20 darkness ..... means .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in the sentences.**

1 I'm not sure what the doctor wrote – it's almost ..... .
A inlegible B illegible C legible D illegal

2 If she left me, life would be ..... .
A unbearable B debearable C subbearable D non-bearable

3 If only I hadn't married so young – I was very ..... at the time.
A inmature B immature C mature D unmature

4 The examiners remove marks for ..... words, don't they?
A unspelt B semi-spelt C under-spelt D misspelt

5 Wear what you like – we're pretty ..... in this office.
A formal B informal C unformal D deformal

6 Unless you ..... the fish first, your guests won't enjoy it.
A semi-bone B unbone C pre-bone D debone

7 I think the Government should ..... the post office.
A denationalise B unnationalise C disnationalise D innationalise

8 I wish my ..... and I were still on speaking terms.
A ex-partner B pre-partner C non-partner D departner

9 Use this ..... tool and you'll do an excellent job.
A macropurpose B monopurpose C micropurpose D multipurpose

10 Let's form a ..... and do something about the poor state of the common.
A subcommittee B anti-committee C multi-committee D undercommittee

**3 Use the word given at the end of each line to form a word that fits the gap in the same line.**

## A BREATH OF FRESH AIR

| | |
|---|---|
| The Government has decided to take the (1) ..... decision to ban smoking in a lot of public places. Though a lot of people find smoking (2) ..... , and though experts all agree it is (3) ..... and that it costs the state a lot to treat victims of smoking, it is also (4) ..... that many people get pleasure from the habit and find smoking (5) ..... when they are in company. However, it is now (6) ..... to deny the antisocial nature of the habit. As advertising has proved (7) ..... with many smokers, the Government has now made smoking (8) ..... in most public places. | POPULAR<br>PLEASE<br>HEALTH<br>DENY<br>RESIST<br>POSSIBLE<br>EFFECT<br>LEGAL |
| Smokers who are (9) ..... to stop smoking will be obliged to enjoy their pastime in private and may feel the new measures are (10) ....., but for passive smokers for whom a room full of smoke is (11) ..... they will come as a breath of fresh air. | ABILITY<br>JUSTICE<br>BEAR |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 6

## AGENDA

### Grammar

- 6a time and condition clauses with future references
- 6b more future forms
- 6c expression of time and preference

### Vocabulary

- 6d *afterwards, after, until, as*
- 6e phrases with *time*

# Entry test

**Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 1–5.**

1 As soon as you ..... what you're doing I'd like a word with you, please.
**A** are finishing **B** will finish **C** will be finished **D** finish

2 I'll write to you when I ..... time.
**A** have had **B** have **C** will have **D** would have

3 Don't interrupt me ..... I'm talking.
**A** while **B** by the time **C** until **D** after

4 I'd give him a ring before you go ..... he goes out.
**A** on condition **B** whether **C** as long **D** in case

5 ..... you could visit another planet, would you go?
**A** Provided **B** Suppose **C** Whether **D** Whenever

**Now look at 6a on page 96.**

SCORE

**Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.**

6 I was on the ..... of leaving when the phone rang.
**A** moment **B** matter **C** point **D** edge

7 Sit down everyone. The film is ..... start.
**A** on the verge of **B** coming to **C** ready for **D** about to

8 The meeting isn't ..... to start till three.
**A** about to **B** owing **C** on the point **D** due

9 The President ..... address the nation on TV later.
**A** mustn't **B** will be **C** is to **D** are not

10 ..... I suggest, I know he will disagree.
**A** No matter **B** Whenever **C** Whatever **D** However

**Now look at 6b on page 99.**

SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.**

11 Have you got the luggage ready? It's time ..... .
A for leaving B we left C we are going D we must leave

12 Open your mouth, it's time ..... your medicine.
A you take B for your taking C for you to take D you will take

13 It's late. It's about time we ..... .
A leaving B did leave C have left D were leaving

14 I'd rather ..... there by car, if you don't mind.
A went B go C to go D going

15 I'd sooner we ..... out at all tonight.
A didn't go B wouldn't go C haven't gone D won't go

**Now look at 6c on page 101.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.**

16 The speech lasts for an hour; ..... , there's a reception.
A after B following C until D afterwards

17 She came to the lesson but left ..... a quarter of an hour.
A until B after C by D till

18 We must wait ..... Friday for our exam results.
A after B by C until D later on

19 I'd like the room to be ready ..... next Monday.
A until B to C as far as D by

20 I am sure Harry will be at home but why not give him a ring just ..... he's not there?
A in the case B in case C in the case of D in case of

**Now look at 6d on page 104.**

SCORE _____

**Fill the spaces in 21–25 with a suitable word to make a phrase with *time*.**

21 Parents should spend ..... with their children than they do.
22 We watched TV to pass ..... until dinner was ready.
23 It's a ..... of time learning something you are never going to use.
24 We had a ..... in London apart from the weather.
25 ..... time with the test – if you rush you'll make mistakes.

**Now look at 6e on page 106.**

SCORE _____

TOTAL SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 6a time and condition clauses with future reference

When we talk about something in the future, we can use a conjunction related to time or condition (called a 'time clause' or 'condition clause').

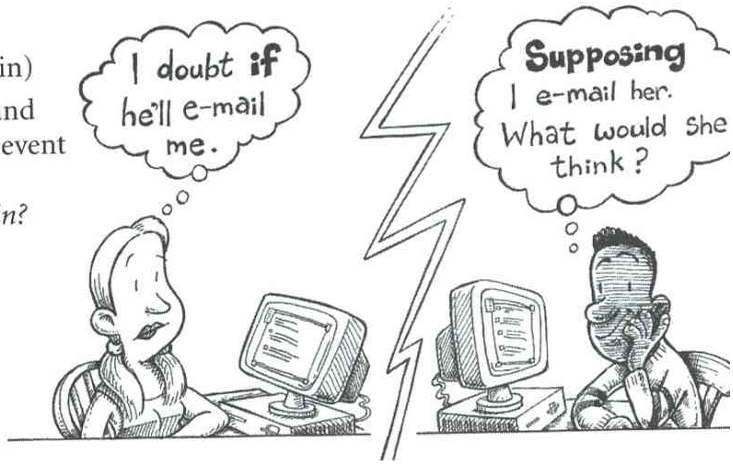
- To refer to the future after these conjunctions, we use the Present Simple (not *will*).

### time clauses

Here are the conjunctions we use with time clauses:

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***after*** + Present Simple | when (a future event has happened) | *I'll see you **after** I get back from my holiday.* |
| ***as soon as*** + Present Simple | immediately after (sth happens) | ***As soon as** he arrives at the hotel, call a taxi.* |
| ***before*** + Present Simple | earlier than (a future event) | *Finish your work **before** Mum comes home.* |
| ***by the time (that)*** + Present Simple | during the time before (sth happens) | *He'll have gone **by the time** you get here.* |
| ***immediately*** + Present Simple | at the same time as | *Tell me **immediately you arrive**.* |
| ***once*** + Present Simple | immediately after (sth happens) | ***Once** she arrives, we can start.* |
| ***until*** + Present Simple | up to the time that | *Keep writing **until** I tell you to stop.* |
| ***when*** + Present Simple | immediately after | *I'll call you **when** I'm free.* |
| ***whenever*** + Present Simple | at any time that | *Phone me **whenever** it's convenient.* |
| ***while*** + Present Simple | during the time that | *Let's forget work **while** we're on holiday.* |

- We can use the Present Perfect in time clauses instead of the Present Simple. Compare these two sentences:
  *I'll take up gardening when I **retire**.*
  (= emphasis on activity)
  *I'll take up gardening when I **have retired**.*
  (= emphasis on when the activity will begin)
- We can use the Past Simple after *suppose* and *supposing* when referring to an imaginary event in the future:
  ***Supposing** you **failed** – would you try again?*






PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## condition clauses

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***as / so long as*** + Present Simple | but only if | *I'll come* ***as / so long as*** *you pay.* |
| ***(just) in case*** + Present Simple | because it is possible that (sth happens) | *Take an umbrella* ***just in case*** *it rains.* |
| ***on condition that*** + Present Simple | but only if (sth else happens) | *I'll lend you the money* ***on condition that*** *you give it back soon.* |
| ***provided/providing (that)*** + Present Simple | but only if (sth happens) | *We'll get there on time* ***provided*** *we leave now.* |
| ***suppose/supposing*** + Present Simple | imagine that | ***Supposing*** *you fall ill, what will you do?* |
| ***unless*** + Present Simple | except if (sth happens as is true in future) | *We won't go for a walk* ***unless*** *it's sunny.* |
| ***whether (... or not)*** + Present Simple | introducing future possibilities or alternatives | ***Whether*** *we win* ***or not*** *depends on how committed we are.* |

(See also 5a.)

- When a clause beginning with *if, whether, when,* etc. is the object of the sentence, we can use *will*:

| | OBJECT |
|---|---|
| *I doubt* | ***if/whether*** *David* ***will*** *come.* |
| *I don't know* | ***when*** *they'**ll** come back.* |

## Practice

**1 Underline the correct expression in the following sentences.**

*Example:* You can drop in and see us *whenever/on condition* you like.

1 *Until/When* he arrives, everyone must stand.
2 We're not going to stop digging *until/as soon as* we find the ancient ruins.
3 They're going to check the building *before/as long as* the President arrives.
4 Those flowers will be in bloom *immediately/by the time* spring comes.
5 Please phone your dad *by the time/immediately.*
6 *Supposing/In case* you had a baby girl – what would you call her?
7 *Whether/If* Chelsea wins the Cup depends on Dennis being on good form.
8 *When/After* the Smiths arrive, ask them to wait outside my office.
9 *As soon as/Before* you hear the alarm, run for the exit.
10 You'll recover quickly *once/provided* you rest.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Complete the following sentences with the correct forms of the words in brackets. Use *will, going to,* Present Simple or the Present Perfect. There may be two possibilities.**

*Example:* As soon as I ..... (**save**) enough money, I'm going to go on a long holiday.
As soon as I *save / have saved* enough money, I'm going to go on a long holiday.

1 I hope you'll still be awake when I ..... (**come**) home.
2 Come when you ..... (**be**) ready.
3 We'd like to stay up until the film ..... (**finish**).
4 All the tickets will have been sold by the time we ..... (**get**) there.
5 Don't open your eyes till I ..... (**tell**) you to.
6 Whether she ..... (**play**) on Saturday depends on what her doctor says.
7 I ..... (**tell**) you a secret on condition that you ..... (**not tell**) anyone else.
8 I ..... (**lend**) you the book as long as you ..... it ..... (**bring back**) on Monday.
9 We ..... (**take**) our swimming things in case we ..... (**get**) a chance to go swimming.
10 We ..... (**go**) to bed as soon as the programme ..... (**finish**).

**3 Fill each space with one suitable word. The first one (0) has been done for you.**

## Comfort on board

Once you ....*are*.... (0) in the cabin, find your seat and arrange your baggage in the luggage compartment above your seat. Be careful ..... (1) you put your baggage in the compartment because, if you ..... (2) not close the compartment properly, the baggage could fall and injure other passengers when the aircraft ..... (3) direction. Before the aircraft ..... (4) off, make sure you have fastened your seat belt. Once the seat-belt sign ..... (5) been turned off, you can undo your seat belt but if you wish, you can keep it on for safety till the flight ..... (6) over. When the aircraft ..... (7) its descent for landing, you should fasten your seat belt and refrain from smoking. During the flight, you should have something non-alcoholic to drink in ..... (8) your body dehydrates. Alcohol is allowed as ..... (9) as it is supplied by the cabin crew. Electronic equipment should be kept switched off ..... (10) case it interferes with the aircraft electronics. At the end of the flight, you should stay in your seat and not undo the seat belt till the aircraft has ..... (11) to a standstill.

*As soon as you start talking sense, people will say you're an old fool.* BOB HOPE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 6b more future forms

We use different ways to express the future in English (see 2a). Here are more forms:

| form | meaning / use | examples |
|---|---|---|
| ***be about to*** + base form | be going to happen very soon | *The train **is about to** leave – let's hurry.* |
| ***be due to*** + base form | be going to do sth already arranged | *She **is due to** start her new job next week.* |
| ***be to*** + base form | be going to do sth that is an official arrangement or order | *The Pope **is to** visit Cuba this month.*<br>*You **are to** be here by nine o'clock.* |
| ***be not to*** + base form | be ordered not to do sth | *You **are not to** begin till I give the order.* |
| ***be on the verge of*** *-ing* / sth | be going to happen very soon | *Scientists **are on the verge of** making an important discovery.* |
| ***however*** + adverb / adjective + Present Simple | it is not because of how sth is being done | ***However** hard he tries, he will not make her fall in love with him.* |
| ***no matter (what, who,*** etc.) + Present Simple | it is not important what happens, who does it, etc. | ***No matter what** she says, they won't believe her.* |
| ***be on the point of*** + *-ing* | be going to do sth immediately | *I **was on the point of** explaining.*<br>✗ ~~*They **were to the point of** leaving when Uncle Joe arrived.*~~<br>✓ *They **were on the point of** leaving when Uncle Joe arrived.* |
| ***whatever, whoever, whenever, wherever,*** + Present Simple | it is not important what, who, when, where, etc. | ***Wherever** we go on holiday, we take the dog with us.*<br>✗ ~~*Whatever she will say, they won't believe her.*~~<br>✓ ***Whatever** she **says**, they won't believe her.* |

## Practice

**1 Fill each space with an appropriate phrase or clause referring to the future.**

*Example:* They are due to set off early tomorrow.

1 Fasten your seatbelts – we ..... take off.
2 The boat ..... leave at 10am.
3 You ..... take the car without my permission.
4 Doctors claim they ..... a breakthrough.
5 He ..... giving up but you can help him.
6 ..... how much the painting costs, I must have it.
7 ..... much it costs, I'll buy it.
8 I ..... be at a conference in Berlin on Monday.
9 ..... I drive, I don't drink.
10 They ..... change the style of the exam from December 1999.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Complete each of these sentences with the correct form of a verb from the list. Use an *-ing* form, *to*-infinitive or Present Simple.**

*arrive expire perform do live hide begin burst run choose see leave*

1 He was on the point of ..... his speech when the alarm went off.
2 She was so upset she was on the verge of ..... into tears.
3 The Prime Minister is ..... in Brussels at 14.30.
4 I am about ..... my last trick, ladies and gentlemen.
5 Your subscription is due ..... next month.
6 You are not ..... your room till I tell you to.
7 No matter what he ....., he'll never be a successful actor.
8 Whenever you ..... Jane, will you tell her to give me a ring?
9 No matter who they ..... for the job of manager, the factory will still close.
10 Wherever the convict ....., the police will find him.
11 She won't break the world record however fast she ..... .
12 No matter where we ....., we will still have to travel to get to work.

**3 Fill each space in the following text with a suitable word or phrase. The first is given as an example.**

# Save the city centre

The council are about to make important changes in the city centre but I'm afraid that ..... (1) they do, the problems will still remain. No matter ..... (2) many new car parks they ..... (3) at the edge of the city, traffic jams will not go away. The council has been ..... (4) the verge of banning cars in the historic centre of the city but, whatever they ..... (5) to do, business interests ..... (6) react and do their best to oppose the new policy.

Some measures have already been introduced. The mayor is ..... (7) to open a new pedestrian precinct in the old market. It has already been announced that cars ..... (8) not to park in the pedestrian area and, whenever they ..... (9), they will be clamped. This is a necessary step if the city centre ..... (10) to become more pleasant for shoppers.

Unfortunately, ..... (11) hard they try, there is one problem the local authorities cannot solve: crime. Shoplifting and pickpocketing increase ..... (12) what measures the police ..... (13). If we want our cities to be safer, we ..... (14) to grumble if local taxes increase.

*So there I am sitting in my seat, **on the verge of** a nervous breakdown. 'We **are about to** leave,' says the man next to me, grinning. The noise of the engines is deafening and I'**m on the point of** being sick. The steward bends over me and says, 'We'**re due to** take off soon, sir. Would you like sweets or cotton wool?' 'I'd rather have the cotton wool, please. **Whenever** I have sweets, they fall out of my ears.'*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 6c expressions of time and preference

## it's time

We can talk about what should happen now or in the immediate future using *it's time...* in the following patterns:

**it's time** +*to*-infinitive:
***It's time to go*** *to bed.*
✗ ~~*It's time we go home to bed.*~~
✓ *It's time* ***to go*** *home.*

**it's time** + prepositional phrase:
***It's time for*** *bed.*

**it's time** + *for* sb + *to*-infinitive:
***It's time for*** *you* ***to go*** *to bed.*

- In the following patterns, a Past tense refers to things that should be done now or very soon:

**it's time** + sb/sth + Past Simple:
*Hurry up.* ***It's time*** *we* ***left.***
***It's time*** *you* ***were*** *in bed.*
✗ ~~*It's time you will go to bed*~~.
✓ *It's time* ***you went*** *to bed.*

**it's time** + sb/sth + Past Continuous:
***It's time*** *we* ***were leaving.***

**it's high time** + sb/sth + Past Simple or Past Continuous for emphasis:
***It's high time*** *we* ***left*** *– we've been here too long.*
***It's high time*** *you* ***were earning*** *your own living.*

**it's about time** + Past Simple or Past Continuous for emphasis, often suggesting criticism:
***It's about time*** *we* ***took*** *global warming seriously.*

## would rather

We can express a present or future preference using *would rather* in two patterns:

**would rather** + bare infinitive:
***I'd rather stay*** *in this evening (than go out).*
***Would*** *you* ***rather go*** *with them (or stay with me)?*
✗ ~~*I'd rather to have coffee.*~~
✓ *I'd* ***rather have*** *coffee.*

**would rather** + sb + Past Simple (+ *than*):
*We'd* ***rather*** *you* ***stayed*** *a little longer.*
*I'd* ***rather*** *Anne* ***didn't come*** *to the meeting.*
✗ ~~*I'd rather you to come now than at six o'clock.*~~
✓ *I'd* ***rather*** *you* ***came*** *now than at six o'clock.*

- We can also use *would rather* to refer to the past by using the Past Perfect:

**would rather** + sb + Past Perfect:
*I'd* ***rather*** *you* ***had asked*** *me before you bought me the shirt.* (= but you didn't)

## would sooner

This is an alternative to *would rather*, and follows the same patterns:
***I'd sooner stay*** *in than go out.*
*I'd* ***sooner*** *you* ***didn't wait*** *for us.*

## would prefer

*Would prefer* can take the following patterns:

- **would prefer** + *to*-infinitive or *-ing*:
  *She'd* ***prefer not to watch*** *the film.*
  *I'd* ***prefer eating*** *seafood.*
- **would prefer** + *to*-infinitive + (*rather*) *than* + bare infinitive:
  ***I'd prefer to stay in (rather) than go out.***
- **would prefer** + sb + *to*-infinitive or *-ing*:
  *We'd* ***prefer*** *you* ***to stay.***
  *I'd* ***prefer*** *you* ***not to come.***
- **would prefer it if** + sb + Past Simple:
  *She'd* ***prefer it if*** *you* ***didn't come.***



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Tick (✔) the correct answer.**

*Example:* It's eight o'clock. Isn't it time .....
A we get up? ☐ B to get up? ☑ C for to get up? ☐

1 It's very late and it's high time .....
A we go. ☐ B we went. ☐ C we must go. ☐

2 No wine for me, thanks – I'd rather ..... water.
A to have ☐ B had ☐ C have ☐

3 She says she'd prefer ..... tomorrow.
A you come ☐ B it if you came ☐ C it and you coming ☐

4 Look at your room! It's about time ..... it.
A for tidying ☐ B you tidy ☐ C you tidied ☐

5 I'm starving. Surely it's time ..... lunch.
A for ☐ B for having ☐ C eat ☐

6 She'd rather you ..... now. Can you come later?
A come ☐ B didn't come ☐ C had come ☐

7 I'd prefer ..... a jacket and tie.
A him wearing ☐ B him ought to wear ☐ C him to wear ☐

8 I think it's time .....
A we separated. ☐ B we are separating. ☐ C we separate. ☐

9 Wouldn't you sooner ..... tea than coffee in England?
A had drunk ☐ B have drunk ☐ C has drunk ☐

10 Sorry. I'd prefer ..... a film this evening.
A to watch TV for ☐ B watching TV rather than ☐ C watch TV or ☐

**2 Match a first part (1–12) with a second part (a–l). Use all the parts.**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 It's time to | a than watch it on TV. |
| 2 It's high time she | b beautiful than rich. |
| 3 What did John tell you? | c have money rather than health? |
| 4 Would you really prefer to | d leave for the airport. |
| 5 Actually, I'd rather be | e to have a good argument occasionally. |
| 6 Trying to persuade him | f didn't shout so much. |
| 7 I'd prefer it | h is nothing but a waste of time. |
| 8 I'd sooner play football | g I'm sorry but I'd rather not say. |
| 9 Pam, it's high time | i I'd rather die! |
| 10 Marry you? | j if you didn't tell anyone about it. |
| 11 I'd rather you | k we got married. |
| 12 And I'd prefer | l took her exams seriously. |



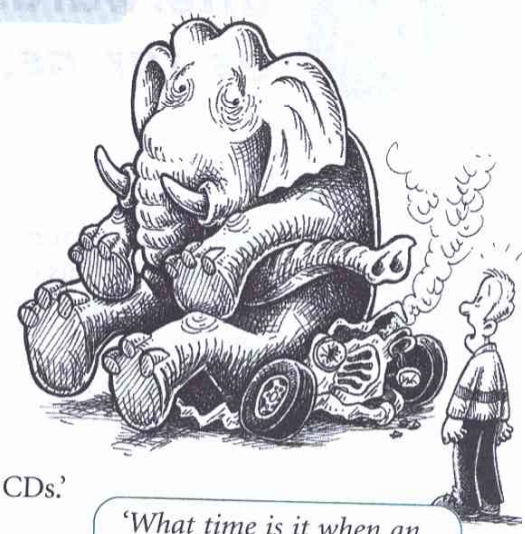
PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Complete these short exchanges with the correct form of these verbs.**

*~~get~~ ~~phone~~ buy repair visit stay leave paint have do waste stop spend help*

*Example:* A: 'It's time to get the dinner ready.'
B: 'I'd rather we phoned for a take-away.'

1 A: 'I think it's time we ..... our cousins in Camden.'
B: 'I'd prefer ..... the money on a nice holiday.'
2 A: 'It's time we ..... the roof.'
B: 'I'd rather we ..... the bedroom.'
3 A: 'I think it's time we ..... .'
B: 'I'd rather ..... a bit longer, if that's OK with you.'
4 A: 'It's about time he ..... you with the housework.'
B: 'To be honest I'd sooner ..... it myself.'
5 A: 'That music again! It's high time you ..... some new CDs.'
B: 'I'd prefer (not) ..... my money on CDs.'
6 A: 'It's time for us ..... a break.
B: I'd sooner we (not) ..... working till we've finished.'



*'What time is it when an elephant sits on your car?'*
*'**It's time** to get a new one.'*

**4 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given.**

*Example:* You really ought to have your hair cut.
**time**
It's (high) time you had your hair cut.

1 You ought to buy a new car.
**time**
It's ..... a new car.
2 She thinks it would be better if you stayed at home tonight.
**prefer**
She ..... it if you stayed at home tonight.
3 Studying drama is more appealing to me than engineering.
**would**
I ..... than engineering.
4 They don't want to go on holiday at all this year.
**rather**
They ..... holiday at all this year.
5 I'd be happier if you could be a bit quieter.
**sooner**
I ..... so much noise.
6 We'd prefer you to sleep in the living room.
**put**
We'd ..... up in the living room.
7 I think you should tell her now what you think of her behaviour.
**told**
It's high ..... her your opinion of her behaviour.
8 I have to go and pick the children up from school now.
**me**
It's time ..... pick up the children from school.
9 We should have redecorated the living room long ago.
**had**
It's high time we ..... redecorated.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 6d afterwards, after, until, as far as, etc.

### afterwards

*Afterwards* is an adverb; we can use it as a link word and it means 'following this event':

*The ceremony lasts half an hour.* ***Afterwards,*** *there's a reception.*

- We can also use it at the end of a sentence with the meaning 'later':
  *My parents met at university but didn't marry till five years* ***afterwards.***

### afterwards and then

When one action follows another within a short time, we can use either *afterwards* or *then*:

*We all had lunch together.* ***Afterwards/Then*** *we went to the beach.*

- To introduce the next action in a series of instructions, we use *then*:
  *Check that the paper is properly loaded.* ***Then*** *press the start button.* ***Then...***

### afterwards and later (on)

*Afterwards* suggests that the next thing happens quite soon after the last one has finished:

*On Saturday, I went to see Adrian in hospital.* ***Afterwards,*** *I drove into town to do some shopping.*

- If there is a longer interval between the two events, we can use *later, much later* or *later on*, especially for events later the same day:
  *I couldn't understand why she hadn't answered my letters.* ***Later,*** *I realised she'd moved to a new address.*
  *I saw an unfamiliar woman on the stairs.* ***Later on,*** *I discovered she was my new neighbour.*
  *My first aim is to graduate.* ***Afterwards/After that*** *I'd like to go and work in Canada.*

### after and in

We can use *after* as a preposition before a time expression, e.g. *after a week*, to talk about an action in the past:

***After a few days,*** *I felt much better.*
*She left* ***after an hour.***
✗ ~~*I'm hoping to visit America.* ***After,*** *I'd like to visit Mexico.*~~
✓ *I'm hoping to visit America.* ***Afterwards/After that*** *I'd like to travel to Mexico.*

- When we use *after* before a time expression, we are talking about later events in the past. For the future, we use *in* (see 14a):
  *She left* ***after*** *five minutes.*
  *She'll be leaving* ***in*** *an hour.*

### by and until/till

- We use *by* for an action which happens before, or no later than, a certain time:
  *Could you let us know your decision* ***by*** *Friday?*
- We use *until/till* for an action or state continuing up to the time mentioned:
  *Let's not continue the walk* ***until*** *the rain stops.*

### until/till, to and as far (as)

- We use *until* or *till* in connection with time:
  *The shops are open* ***until*** *six.*
  *I'll be here* ***till*** *five o'clock.*
- When we are talking about direction towards or distance, we use *to* or *as far (as)*. We use *to* meaning 'towards and stopping at a particular place'. We use *as far (as)* to emphasise the distance:
  *Do you know which bus goes* ***to*** *Marble Arch?*
  *It doesn't go* ***as far as*** *that.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Underline the correct word or phrase in these sentences.**

1 I have to submit my report *by/until* the end of the month.
2 They came in June and left two months *afterwards/then.*
3 We had a quick coffee and *afterwards/later on* we ran to the bus stop.
4 I had a shave and *after/then* I had a shower.
5 We stayed in the club *till/as far as* it closed.
6 I saw him enter the bank at about one o'clock. Ten minutes *later/after,* he ran out with a bag full of money.
7 We need your response *by/until* tonight.
8 You can stay *till/by* the weekend.
9 *After/Afterwards* a few hours, the mist disappeared.
10 We are going to leave Italy *after/in* a couple of months to go and live in the States.

**2 Fill in each space in these sentences with an appropriate word or phrase.**

1 I'll see you ..... a couple of minutes.
2 At first I was bored, but ..... on, I enjoyed it.
3 To start the machine, switch it on. ..... press the red button.
4 On Sunday morning we went for a stroll round the park. ....., we went for a meal.
5 I felt really sick at first but ..... a few days I recovered.
6 I'd like the translation to be ready ..... January 28, please.
7 We waited ..... ten o'clock then we decided to go home.
8 We ran as ..... the bridge and then stopped.

**3 Fill each space in this text with one appropriate word. The first has been done as an example.**

# A NIGHT BY THE ROADSIDE

Did I tell you about the night Max and I drove through the Highlands ....to..... Oban? We had got ..... (1) far as a deserted cottage and ..... (2) looking at the map, we wondered whether we should turn back. It was getting really dark ..... (3) then and we weren't at all sure about the weather. We thought about it for a while and ..... (4) decided Oban was too interesting to miss. ..... (5) on, when we had returned safe and sound and ..... (6) chatting about all the terrible things that had happened, we realised how crazy we had been to do what we did – we should have waited ..... (7) morning. Anyway, we had to stop to change a wheel, and almost immediately ..... (8) we drove along a narrow path and suddenly the car plunged into a deep ditch full of water! ..... (9) an hour or so of trying to get the car out, it finally dawned on us that we were stuck. Max had his mobile phone and called for help and the mechanic said he would be there ..... (10) an hour's time, and ..... (11) we were less frightened. But, a few minutes ..... (12) we heard a terrible scream...



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 6e phrases with *time*

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***be time*** (***for*** sth) | be enough time (to do sth) | *There's **time for** one more question.* |
| ***have time*** (***for*** sth / *to*-infinitive) | have enough time (to do sth) | *Do you **have time for** a coffee?*<br>*I don't **have time** to talk to you now.* |
| ***have a good, great,*** etc. ***time*** | enjoy yourself very much | *Thanks for the party – we both **had a fantastic time**.* |
| ***in time*** (***for*** sth / *to*-infinitive) | early enough (to do sth) | *Luke usually gets home **in time** to bath the children.*<br>✗ ~~*The fire brigade arrived just **on time**.*~~<br>✓ *The fire brigade arrived just **in time**.* |
| ***lose time*** (+ *-ing*) | fall behind the planned schedule because of delays | *We **lost** a lot of valuable **time** waiting for the others to arrive.* |
| ***on time*** | at the planned time | *I drove quickly and arrived there right **on time**.*<br>*These buses are never **on time**.*<br>✗ ~~*They had to rush to get to work **in time**.*~~<br>✓ *They had to rush to get to work **on time**.* |
| ***pass the time*** | do sth to spend time when you are waiting or bored | *We played cards to **pass the time** till morning.*<br>✗ ~~*We went to the cinema to **spend the time** until the train arrived.*~~<br>✓ *We went to the cinema to **pass the time** until the train arrived.* |
| ***pass the time of day*** (***with*** sb) | say hello and talk informally (with sb) | *They sat at the bus stop **passing the time of day** until the bus came.* |
| ***the right/correct time*** | the correct time on a watch or clock | *Is that **the right time**? Oh dear, I'll be late.* |
| ***spend*** + time expression | stay for a stated period of time | *We'll have to **spend the night** in a hotel.* |
| ***spend*** + time expression + *-ing* | do sth for a stated period of time | *I **spent the weekend** cleaning the house.* |
| ***spend the time*** (+ *-ing*/ ***on*** or ***with*** sth) | use up time (doing sth) | *We **spent the** whole **time** lying on the beach.* |
| ***it takes*** + (sb) + period of time (+ *to*-infinitive) | the length of time needed for an action or a journey | ***It takes** five hours **to** fly to Copenhagen from here.* |
| ***take time*** (***for*** sth) | need a long period of time | *Learning a language **takes time**.* |
| ***take your time*** | do sth without hurrying | ***Take your time**. There's no rush.* |
| ***Time flies!*** | time passes very quickly | *Doesn't **time fly** when you're having fun!* |
| ***waste time/waste one's time*** (+ *-ing*/ ***on*** or ***with*** sth) | use time in a way which is not useful | *Stop **wasting time** watching TV and get on with your homework.*<br>*He **wastes his time** riding around on his motorbike.* |
| ***a waste of time*** | not likely to have a satisfactory result | *Arguing with her is a complete **waste of time**.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Fill in the spaces with an appropriate word.**

*Example:* Have a wonderful time in Crete!

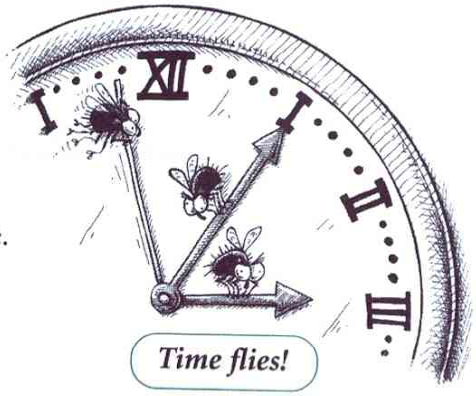
1 How on earth am I going to ..... the time in this boring place?
2 We were passing the time of ..... when her mobile phone rang.
3 I don't go out much. I ..... most evenings at home, reading.
4 The builders are certainly ..... their time with our roof!
5 Of course the report isn't ready yet – these things ..... time you know.
6 Don't think you can change her mind; you're ..... your time.
7 Patience! It ..... time for fruit trees to grow.
8 We ..... the whole weekend decorating the living room.
9 Do we ..... time for a quick game of basketball before lunch?
10 The two agents met each other exactly ..... time, as agreed.
11 You're just ..... time to catch the last few minutes of the game.
12 You can ..... your time handing in your homework, there's no rush.

**2 Match a first part (1–12) with a second part (a–l). Use all the parts.**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 How much time | a to pass the time until dinner? |
| 2 They spent more | b just in time. |
| 3 Are the trains always | c have a good time! |
| 4 Don't waste | d time in their hotel than on the beach. |
| 5 Don't spend too much time | e lose any more time. |
| 6 Maria ran and ran and got there | f the night in the car. |
| 7 Take your time. | g explain – just do it. |
| 8 Hurry! We can't afford to | h does it take to boil an egg? |
| 9 We'll have to spend | i on time in your country? |
| 10 What shall we do | j I promise we'll wait. |
| 11 There isn't time to | k on the first question. |
| 12 Enjoy your holiday. I hope you | l your time with computer games. |

**3 Which expression using *time* can you use in these sentences? Fill the gaps.**

1 When you are in a long queue, what do you do ..... ?
2 Yesterday, I ..... the whole time waiting for the electrician to come.
3 I expect she'll be late – she hardly ever turns up ..... .
4 It ..... to learn a foreign language.
5 I'm sorry but I can't chat now; I don't ..... .
6 Arrived safely. Gorgeous weather. We ..... .
7 Surely there ..... for one last dance.
8 Excuse me. Do you have ..... ? My watch is broken.
9 Our team arrived ..... but the other side were very late.
10 It's ..... trying to get Lily to change her mind.
11 ..... to load this software before you go?
12 I do no more than ..... with my neighbours.






PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Exam practice 3

## Part 1

For Questions **1–15**, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### THE BIG DAY

**Example: 0** **A** However **B** Whatever **C** Though **D** Since

..... (**0**) candidates may think about examiners, they are not in fact ..... (**1**) monsters, dripping red ink instead of blood, but ordinary people who will do their best to pass candidates as ..... (**2**) as candidates follow certain basic rules of the game. Many candidates are ..... (**3**) in the First Certificate not because their English is ..... (**4**) but because they are ..... (**5**) about the requirements of the examination. Before you ..... (**6**) for the examination, make sure you know what is expected of you; you are ..... (**7**) to do well unless you answer all the questions set, and don't include ..... (**8**) material. Don't start writing as ..... (**9**) as you get the paper – think first, write ..... (**10**)! If part of an answer is incorrect, you ..... (**11**) cross it out and write the preferred answer neatly above it. If your handwriting ..... (**12**) illegible, it will be difficult for the examiner to give you credit for it, ..... (**13**) it is right or ..... (**14**). You will also lose marks if your essay is written in an ..... (**15**) style for the type of writing and intended audience.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1** | **A** insensible | **B** unsensible | **C** unsensitive | **D** insensitive |
| **2** | **A** much | **B** far | **C** long | **D** soon |
| **3** | **A** unhappy | **B** inaccurate | **C** incorrect | **D** unsuccessful |
| **4** | **A** inadequate | **B** misguided | **C** illegible | **D** misunderstood |
| **5** | **A** ill-informed | **B** informed | **C** dissinformed | **D** mal-informed |
| **6** | **A** will sit | **B** would sit | **C** have sat | **D** sit |
| **7** | **A** improbably | **B** impossible | **C** unlikely | **D** unlucky |
| **8** | **A** irrelevant | **B** illiterate | **C** indirect | **D** illogical |
| **9** | **A** quickly | **B** immediately | **C** fast | **D** soon |
| **10** | **A** after | **B** afterwards | **C** later | **D** slower |
| **11** | **A** will | **B** would | **C** should | **D** have |
| **12** | **A** was | **B** were | **C** be | **D** is |
| **13** | **A** however | **B** whenever | **C** whether | **D** if |
| **14** | **A** no | **B** none | **C** false | **D** not |
| **15** | **A** unappropriate | **B** misappropriate | **C** inappropriate | **D** disappropriate |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Part 2

For Questions **16–30**, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only **one** word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### A RELAXING HOLIDAY

Martha looked at her watch in a panic. They should've been on their ....way.... (**0**) to the airport by now. 'George, it's time we ..... (**16**) going; if we don't get moving we going to ..... (**17**) the flight.' No sooner had she spoken the words than she wished she ..... (**18**) kept quiet. She knew George couldn't ..... (**19**) to be rushed. He had always liked to ..... (**20**) his time over everything. 'Patience is a virtue,' he was ..... (**21**) of saying and Martha had got used to ..... (**22**) around for George. 'Martha,' came the reply from the bathroom. 'I ..... (**23**) you'd stop saying that and get on with the packing.' She had been ..... (**24**) forward to this trip for months and now it ..... (**25**) time to set off for the airport and they were far from ready. ..... (**26**) only she had listened to Jenny's advice and chosen a holiday a bit nearer home. She couldn't ..... (**27**) flying anyway and if they had decided to ..... (**28**) a couple of weeks in the country they ..... (**29**) be nicely settled in their little cottage now. It would take ..... (**30**) half an hour to get to the airport and then they could expect to find long queues at the check-in counters. It was always the same hassle.

SCORE _____

## Part 3

For Questions **31–40**, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. **Do not change the word given**. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (**0**).

**Example:** **0** Let me know immediately she arrives.
**soon**
Let me know as soon as she arrives.

**31** My dad will be back when he has finished shopping.
**until**
My dad ..... he has finished the shopping.

**32** The taxi may be expensive so take plenty of money.
**case**
Take plenty of money ..... expensive.

**33** They are waiting for him to arrive at any minute.
**due**
He ..... at any minute.

**34** 'Did you remember to bring your homework?' the teacher asked the class.
**if**
The teacher asked the class ..... to bring their homework.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**35** 'Do you want to come out or not?' Jane asked Peter.
**whether**
Jane asked ..... to come out or not.

**36** Take my advice and stop smoking.
**were**
If ..... stop smoking.

**37** Without a key we won't be able to get into the house.
**unless**
We won't be able to get into the house ..... a key.

**38** Unless he phones immediately, he's going to miss us.
**if**
He's going to miss us ..... immediately.

**39** I can meet you if you arrive before seven.
**long**
I can meet you ..... before seven.

**40** The receipt is essential if you want a refund.
**provided**
They will give you a refund ..... the receipt.

SCORE

## Part 4

For Questions **41–55**, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning (**0**) and (**00**).

### NOTHING LIKE A GOOD STORY

**0** I find the way children spend hours just at watching TV ...at...
**00** quite depressing. It can't be good for their imagination. I'm not ...✓...
**41** very keen on watching myself. I'd rather to read a good .....
**42** book. I wish children would have switch off the TV and learn .....
**43** to enjoy the pleasures of reading. I have always been very .....
**44** fond of the reading – this comes from my mother who was .....
**45** a marvellous storyteller. When it was the time for us to go to .....
**46** bed she would say 'It's time we have had another story.' If .....
**47** she'd said 'Get into bed and switch the light off' it would .....
**48** have been not very different. As it was, we began to look .....
**49** forward go to bedtime because we were expecting yet .....
**50** another unforgettable tale. If only wish I had had more .....
**51** the time to tell my children more stories when they were .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**52** growing up. If they had been got into the habit of listening to .....
**53** stories at bedtime, they'd have grown to love literature more. .....
**54** They can't stand to reading books now because .....
**55** they'd sooner they play some computer games instead. .....

SCORE

## Part 5

For Questions **56–65**, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### IT'S NEVER TOO LATE TO LEARN?

My attempt to teach myself Spanish has been unsuccessful. (**0**) SUCCESS
so far and I am wondering whether I am simply ..... (**56**) ABLE
to learn foreign languages at my age. I am not ..... (**57**) PATIENCE
and neither am I ..... (**58**), so why have I found it almost INTELLIGENCE
..... (**59**) to learn more than just the basics of Spanish after POSSIBLE
nearly six months of study? My vocabulary is ..... (**60**) ADEQUATE
beyond very basic expressions and my grammar is ..... (**61**) SATISFY
to say the least. It is not only that my Spanish is ..... (**62**) CORRECT
but I suspect I sound very ..... (**63**), too. Recently, I met POLITE
a Cuban tourist in a café and ..... (**64**), I must have FORTUNE
said something ..... (**65**) because she looked very APPROPRIATE
offended and got up and sat at another table.

SCORE

TOTAL SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 7

## AGENDA

### Grammar

- 7a forming the passive
- 7b reasons for using the passive; the agent
- 7c causative *get* and *have*

### Vocabulary

- 7d *get* and *have got*
- 7e compound nouns

# Entry test

**Underline the correct tense in 1–5.**

1 At present, he *is being treated / has treated* for heart problems.
2 The date of the exams *was being announced / was announced* yesterday.
3 When they got home, the fence between the two houses *was removed / had been removed* but no one knew who was responsible.
4 Peace *will have been achieved / will being achieved* only when all troops have left the country.
5 An election *will have been held / will be held* in the autumn, the Government announced this morning.

**Now look at 7a on page 114.**

SCORE: _____

**Underline the correct form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.**

6 She ..... in a small village in the south of Spain.
**A** has been born **B** has born **C** born **D** was born

7 Scarves ..... in this church.
**A** must have worn **B** must be worn **C** have worn **D** must been worn

8 ..... that five people died in the explosion.
**A** They are reported **B** It has reported **C** It's reported **D** It's reporting

9 The road had been blocked ..... a tree.
**A** through **B** from **C** with **D** by

10 The message was written in the sand ..... a stick
**A** through **B** from **C** with **D** by

**Now look at 7b on page 117.**

SCORE: _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–20.**

11 Bill ..... before having his photo taken.
A cut his hair B got cut his hair C got his hair cut
D got hair cut

12 ..... my PA phone for a taxi?
A Shall I had B Shall I have C Has she
D Had I

13 ..... broken into while we were away on holiday.
A We had our house B Thieves had our house C It was our house
D They have

14 Surprisingly, he ..... as chairperson.
A got himself elected B get himself elected C getting elected
D has get himself

15 They ..... last week.
A get married B have married C get to marry
D got married

**Now look at 7c on page 120.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.**

16 You can ..... a second-hand mobile phone for under ten pounds.
A get B take C hold D pay

17 Could you ..... here a little sooner?
A get B go C bring D send

18 How much are you expecting to .....?
A sell for your car? B get for your old car? C sell your old car?
D buy for your old car?

19 I want you to ..... my shop right now!
A get out from B get out off C get off D get out of

20 Oh, ..... – I have to press this key first.
A I'm getting B I will get it C I get it D I get

**Now look at 7d on page 122.**

SCORE _____

**In questions 21–25, fill the spaces with an appropriate word to form a compound noun.**

21 They have bought a new .....washer but it doesn't work.
22 Working for the ..... brigade can be quite dangerous.
23 The house was so cold, we had a new central ..... system installed.
24 Our organisation fights for basic ..... rights such as free speech.
25 There was a .....-in last night at the National Bank and the thieves stole a million pounds.

**Now look at 7e on page 124.**

SCORE _____

TOTAL SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 7a forming the passive

The passive has a form of *be* + past participle. The form of *be* is the same as the tense in the active equivalent.

| tense | passive form | example: passive | example: active |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present Simple | *am / are / is* + past participle | *Important subjects **are discussed** every lunch time.* | *They discuss important subjects every lunch tim* |
| Past Simple | *was / were* + past participle | *The date for the talks **was announced**.*<br>✗ ~~*The school **has built** by the local government.*~~<br>✓ *The school **was built** by the local government.* | *They announced the date for the talks.* |
| Future Simple | *will be* + past participle | *You **will be examined** by a top consultant.* | *A top consultant will examine you.* |
| *be going to* (future) | *am / are / is going to be* + past participle | *The factory **is going to be closed**.* | *They are going to close the factory.* |
| modal passive | modal verb + *be* + past participle | *The house **must be cleaned**.* | *You must clean the house* |
| Present Continuous | *am / are / is being* + past participle | *This matter **is** still **being considered**.* | *They are still considering this matter.* |
| Past Continuous | *was / were being* + past participle | *Every effort **was being made** to end the strike.* | *They were making every effort to end the strike.* |
| Present Perfect | *has / have been* + past participle | *The new stadium **has been built** in London.* | *They have built a new stadium in London.* |
| Past Perfect | *had been* + past participle | *The work **had been finished** by the end of 1999.* | *They had finished the work by the end of 1999* |
| Future Perfect | *will have been* + past participle | *In the next ten years, full equality **will have been achieved**.* | *In the next ten years, women will have achieved full equality.* |

- Because of the need to combine *be / been* with *being*, e.g. *We will be being watched* or *We have been being watched*, we avoid using the passive in the Present Perfect Continuous, the Past Perfect Continuous, Future Continuous and the Future Perfect Continuous.
  Avoid: ~~*We **will be being** watched*~~.
  ✓ ***They will be** watching us.*

- We form passive questions and negatives in th same way as the active:
  *When **are** important subjects **discussed**?*
  *They **are** not **discussed** every lunch time.*

- In passive sentences we place adverbs of time or frequency, e.g. *always, sometimes*, etc. after the first auxiliary verb (*is, has, will*, etc.):
  *It is **usually** made of wood.*
  *They have **just** been found.*
  *She will **never** be asked.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space using the correct form of the verb in brackets.**

*Example:* The police report that the missing person ..... . (**find**)
The police report that the missing person has been found.

1 The news ..... every day from 6am to midnight. (**broadcast**)
2 At this very moment the suspect ..... by the police. (**interview**)
3 And now a newsflash. The President ..... with committing perjury. (**charge**)
4 A new security system ..... in all our offices in the next few weeks. (**install**)
5 By November 30 a new government ..... . (**elect**)
6 There must be a mistake: the hotel bill ..... by my wife. (**pay**)
7 When we got home, we realised the house ..... . (**burgle**)
8 The building ..... when a second bomb went off. (**evacuate**)
9 The Government says tax reforms ..... in the new year. (**introduce**)
10 Newspapers in some countries ..... in kiosks as well as shops. (**sell**)

**2 Rewrite these sentences in the passive.**

1 We do not add any preservatives to our products.
.....
2 The Government is now building a lot of new schools in the provinces.
.....
3 The police have just arrested him on suspicion of murder.
.....
4 Will they publish her new book next month?
.....
5 They will have completed the new motorway by Christmas.
.....
6 We haven't cleaned the house for weeks.
.....
7 The company cut the water off because Mr and Mrs Dixon hadn't paid their bill.
.....
8 They are going to open the new supermarket next week.
.....
9 They couldn't use the car because the garage was servicing it.
.....
10 They publish a lot of books on information technology.
.....

*The service in the hotel was so bad that when I asked for a hot towel, I **was told** to put a cold one on the radiator.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Fill in the spaces in this text. Use a verb in the list and an appropriate form of the passive. The first is given as an example.**

~~*produce*~~ *interview* (x2) *design* *renovate* *award* *base* *build* *consider* (x2) *show* *equip* *provide* *close* *visit*

# A REPORT

This report *has been produced* at the request of the Hotel and Catering Association. The survey on which the report ..... (1) was carried out between March 25 and March 30, 1999. Twenty hotel managers ..... (2) for the purposes of this report. The majority of the hotels which ..... (3) (all in the Brighton area) ..... (4) in the last twenty years and ..... (5) to meet the needs of the modern tourist. One hotel which ..... (6) unacceptable by the Association ..... (7) at the end of the tourist season. Some of the older ones ..... (8) recently and also meet the highest standards. This ..... (9) by the fact that all the hotels ..... (10) with modern facilities, from swimming pools to satellite TV. In addition, the usual services ..... (11) (room service, laundry service) and the restaurant and bar service ..... (12) satisfactory in most cases. Most of the hotel staff who ..... (13) were highly qualified or experienced. Seventy-five per cent of the hotels in this report ..... (14) a three or four star rating by the tourist board.

*Most of the staff* ***had been poorly trained.***



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 7b reasons for using the passive; the agent

We use the passive in the following situations:

| situation | example |
|---|---|
| when it is obvious or not important to say who, what, etc. is the subject | *He **was born** in 1991.*<br>*The meeting **has been changed** to Thursday.*<br>*A cure **hasn't been found** yet.* |
| avoiding using *I, we, they, one,* etc. | *The job **will be finished** by tonight.* |
| reports | *Food **must be found** for the refugees.* |
| describing a process | *The beans **are separated** from the shells and then they **are put** into sacks.* |
| official announcements | *Fees **must be paid** in advance.* |
| scientific texts | *The liquid **is heated** to a temperature of 60°C.* |

We often use report verbs such as *think, suggest, believe,* etc. in the passive, often with impersonal *it*:
***It was reported** that many people were killed.*
*She **is thought** to have been the finest cellist this century.*

- The structure *be supposed to* has a separate meaning from *is thought to*:
  *She's **supposed to** be your friend.* (= she isn't behaving like a friend)
- We use a group of verbs more often in the passive than in the active. These include:
  ***be born*** ***be jailed*** ***be fined***
  ***be horrified*** ***be wounded*** ***be overcome***
- When we use verbs with two objects (a person and something), either object can be the subject of the sentence in the passive sentence:
  *Jane gave him some money.* (= active form)
  ***He was given** some money by Jane.*
  ***Some money was given** to him by Jane.*
- It is more common, however, for the person to be made the subject of the passive verb:
  *Carmen taught him all the Spanish he knows.*
  ***He was taught** all the Spanish he knows by Carmen.*
  ***All the Spanish he knows was taught** to him by Carmen.* (= possible, but clumsy)
- We cannot use intransitive verbs in the passive because they cannot have an object:
  ✘ ~~*The job **will be seemed** easy at first.*~~
  ✔ *The job **will seem** easy at first.*

## mentioning the agent

When we form passives, we do not usually mention the person or thing responsible for the action (the agent). We are usually more interested in what happens. When we mention the agent, we generally use *by* when we mention who or what was responsible, and *with* when we mention the instrument used:
*The car had been driven **by** my younger brother.*
*The victim had been killed **with** a bread knife.*

- We can follow some verbs with *by* or *with*:
  *The airport was surrounded **by** soldiers.*
  *The airport was surrounded **with** soldiers.*
- We follow verbs such as *cover* with *by, in* or *with*:
  *Its body was covered **by / in / with** flies.*
- We mention the agent only when this information is important. If the agent is obvious, unknown, or is 'people in general', we omit it:
  *He **was fined** for driving without a licence.*
- In particular, we mention the agent when we add information about it in the next part of the sentence:
  *The car had been driven **by my younger brother** who didn't have a driving licence.*
- We do not mention the agent when we want to hide the information or we want to avoid taking responsibility for an action:
  ***I've been told** not to say anything.*
  *Taxes **will have to be raised** next year.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Rewrite the following active sentences using two passive forms, making the underlined words the subject. Omit the agent if it is not necessary.**

*Example:* The company sent him a letter. *He was sent a letter by the company.*
*A letter was sent to him by the company.*

1 They've just sent me a whole lot of junk mail. .....
.....

2 The Credit Bank lent me two thousand pounds in 1999. .....
.....

3 They gave each of the children a bottle of milk every day. .....
.....

4 They showed us the sights of the city. .....
.....

5 They will pay the workers £50 every Friday. .....
.....

6 Someone had promised the children more food. .....
.....

7 The magician told them the secret. .....
.....

8 They offered her the job. .....
.....

9 One of his uncles had taught him maths. .....
.....

10 Someone gave the animal charity a lot of money. .....
.....

**2 Match a first part** (1–10) **with a second part** (a–j)**. Use all the parts.**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 A decision to strike was taken | a with a penknife. |
| 2 This church was designed | b by beautiful grounds. |
| 3 I was shocked | c by a hunter with a rifle. |
| 4 He was shot | d by some of the workers. |
| 5 He had been stabbed | e by Christopher Wren. |
| 6 His trousers were completely covered | f with a stick. |
| 7 The house was surrounded | g by her rude behaviour. |
| 8 Her bedroom wall was covered | h by a priest in a tiny little church. |
| 9 They were married | i with posters of her favourite singers. |
| 10 He used to be beaten | j in oil. |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. This word must not be changed. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.**

*Example:* There was bitter opposition to the proposal.
**opposed**
The proposal *was bitterly opposed*.

1 They say the country is on the verge of civil war.
**said**
The country ..... on the verge of civil war.

2 People thought the President was ill.
**be**
The President ..... ill.

3 People have suggested that you could be on the committee.
**put**
Your name ..... for the committee.

4 People believe he escaped with the money.
**run**
He is ..... off with the money.

5 They thought he was the best actor for the part.
**considered**
He ..... the best actor for the part.

6 People always thought she was very good at maths, but she made some basic mistakes.
**supposed**
She ..... very good at maths, but she made some basic mistakes.

7 The directors decided to discuss the matter at the next meeting.
**agreed**
It ..... would discuss the matter at the next meeting.

8 Two of the men walking home accepted our offer of a lift.
**up**
Our offer of a lift ..... two of the men walking home.

9 Everything I know about art I learnt from Mrs Robinson.
**was**
I ..... about art by Mrs Robinson.

10 The court ordered him to pay a fine of £100.
**was**
He ..... a fine of £100 by the court.

*I **am informed** from many quarters that a rumour **has been put about** that I died this morning. This is quite untrue.*
WINSTON CHURCHILL



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 7c causative *get* and *have*

## form

### active

The active pattern is *get* + sb + *to*-infinitive or *have* + sb + bare infinitive:

*I'll **get** my assistant **to bring** you the other pair of shoes.*
*Shall I **have** my secretary **send** you the details?*

### passive

The passive pattern is *get/have* + object + past participle:

***I'm getting/having** my house **decorated** at the moment.*
*You ought to **get/have** your blood pressure **checked**.*

## use

Causative *get* and *have* mean 'ask or cause somebody to do something' in the active form, and 'arrange for somebody else to do something' in the passive. *Get* is more common in British English – *have* is now more formal except in some situations described opposite.

- Sometimes causative *get/have* suggests the need to deal with a difficulty:
  *I'm afraid you'll have to **get/have** the whole house rewired.*
- We use *have* in the passive when something unpleasant happens. *Get* is much less common than *have* in these situations:
  *I **had** my wallet stolen in the crowd.*
  *He **had** his car broken into last night.*
- Sometimes when we use *have*, meaning depends on context:
  *We'**ve had** the bricks removed.* (= either we arranged for somebody to take them, or somebody stole them)
- We use *get*, not *have*, when somebody else has to work on our behalf:
  *One of these days I'm going to **get myself elected** onto the committee.*

## *get* + past participle

We often use *get* + past participle meaning 'become':

*She **got dressed** and went downstairs.*
*My dog **got run over** by a removal van.*

## Practice

**1 Complete the second sentence in these exchanges using the verb in brackets and any other words given. Use the causative form with *have* or *get*.**

*Example:* A: 'Your hair looks nice.'
B: 'Thanks, I've just ..... .' (**cut**)
B: 'Thanks, I've just had it cut.'

1 A: 'I'm finding it difficult to read small print nowadays.'
B: 'Why don't you go and ..... ?' (**eyes; test**)

2 A: 'What a lovely dress – where did you buy it?'
B: 'I didn't. I ..... by the dressmaker down the road.' (**make**)

3 A: 'My car's been making some funny noises just lately.'
B: 'You should ..... .' (**service**)



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

4 A: 'Your hair looks different! What have you done to it?'
B: 'I ....., that's all.' (**just; cut**)
5 A: 'This house is freezing.'
B: 'Yes, we need ..... .' (**central heating; install**)
6 A: 'The living room looks lovely.'
B: 'I'm glad you like it. We've ..... .' (**just; redecorate**)
7 A: 'Why aren't you wearing your watch?'
B: 'I ..... at the moment.' (**repair**)
8 A: 'Oops! Sorry, I've spilt some wine on your trousers.'
B: 'Don't worry. I was going to ..... anyway.' (**clean**)
9 A: 'That tree is blocking the view from my front window.'
B: 'Well, you don't expect me ....., do you?' (**cut down**)
10 A: 'I've got a terrible toothache.'
B: 'Well, why don't you go and ..... ?' (**that cavity; fill**)

**2 Complete each space in this text with a suitable word. The first (0) is given as an example.**

## ONE OF THOSE DAYS

It's been one of those days and it isn't over yet. First of all, I had to take the car to the garage to have the brakes ..repaired.. (0). The car was in a bad enough state, but we ..... (1) had it damaged even more by some idiot as we were waiting at the traffic lights the other day. He bumped into the back of the car and we told him he would have to pay to ..... (2) the car ..... (3) and he said he would ..... (4) it paid for by his insurance company. I certainly hope he does. The mechanic told me I could've ..... (5) myself killed driving the car and that we should've ..... (6) the brakes checked months ago.

I left the car at the garage, then went straight to the hairdresser to have my hair ..... (7). I wanted to have ..... (8) cut really short, so it took ages. After that, I had to take Bill's suit to the dry-cleaner's to ..... (9) it cleaned after he had had wine ..... (10) over it at the party last night. Next, I had to go to the supermarket. When I had finished, my bags were so heavy I had to ..... (11) them delivered to my house – and that cost more money. And the day isn't half over yet. I've still got to have my photograph ..... (12) for a new passport – my old one ..... (13) stolen when we had our house ..... (14) a few months back. What a life! Things can't get worse, can they?

WAITER: *How would you like to* ***have your egg cooked*** *sir?*
CUSTOMER: *Is there any difference in the price?*
WAITER: *No, sir.*
CUSTOMER: *Then I'****ll have my egg cooked*** *with ham, potatoes and sausages.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 7d *get* and *have got*

### *get*

| meaning / use | example |
|---|---|
| receive, experience, etc. sth | *Sharon always seems to **get** loads of mail.*<br>*He'll **get** a shock when he sees the bill.* |
| obtain sth | *Where did you **get** that painting?*<br>*He's gone to **get** help.* |
| buy sth | *I **got** the plant from Columbia Road market.*<br>*I **got** a pullover for ten pounds.* |
| receive money | *I only **got** a fiver for my old bike.*<br>*She **gets** £100 a week.* |
| catch an illness | *It's fairly unusual for adults to **get** measles.*<br>*When I was five, I **got** the mumps.* |
| arrive | *What time will we **get** there?* |
| move | *I can't **get** the car out of the garage on my own.*<br>✗ ~~*Leave from my house!*~~<br>✓ *Get out of my house!* |
| ***get*** + adjective / past participle = 'become' (see page 120) | *When I tried to talk to him about it, he just **got** really **angry**.*<br>***Get dressed** and come downstairs immediately!* |
| ***get*** + sb + *to*-infinitive (see page 120) = make someone do something | *Why don't you **get** Chris **to wash** his jeans occasionally?* |
| ***get*** + sth + *to*-infinitive = make something do something | *I wonder if Frank can **get** this video **to work**.* |
| start doing sth more quickly | *Let's **get** moving – what are we waiting for?* |
| understand | *Oh, I **get** it. You put the paper in here and then press the button.* |
| bring | *Run upstairs and **get** a pillow.* |
| ***get to*** + noun phrase = reach | *We **got to** the end of the book.* |

### *have got*

For the meanings below, we often use *have got* instead of *have* in spoken English.

| meaning / use | example |
|---|---|
| possess | *What kind of car **has** she **got**?*<br>✗ ~~*I got two sisters.*~~<br>✓ *I'**ve got** two sisters.* |
| possess particular characteristics | *She's **got** an awful temper.* |

For *have (got) to*, see page 46.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Match a first part (1–10) with a second part (a–j) to make correct sentences.**

1 Why do I always get
2 I'm still in shock – I got
3 Is there anywhere I can get
4 My son's just popped out to get
5 In the sales, I got
6 He's in bed because he got
7 They finally got
8 How on earth are you going to get
9 Apart from a degree, he's got
10 Mr Jones is still handsome though now he's got

a a good haircut?
b me some groceries.
c socks for Christmas?
d a shiny bald head.
e a cold off one of the kids at school.
f to the camp tired and hungry.
g a Diploma in Business Studies.
h such a surprise when I opened the door this morning.
i that piano down the stairs?
j a great CD player for less than £200.

**2 Complete these sentences with an appropriate word or phrase from the list.**

*cold* *the idea* *the joke* *those wet clothes* ~~*silly*~~ *the kids* *to the end* *going* *the car*

*Example:* This game is getting silly – let's stop it.

1 It's getting ..... outside. Let's go in.
2 I can't get ..... to start.
3 Let's get ..... – we're already late as it is.
4 I still don't get ..... . Must be my sense of humour.
5 She's just gone to get ..... from school.
6 You'd better get ..... off or you'll catch a cold.
7 When you get ..... of the test, tell me.
8 I can use e-mail now but it took time to get ..... of how to use it.

**3 Fill each space with an appropriate word from the list. The first (0) is given as an example.**

~~*letter*~~ *one* *channels* *snowed* *hobbies* *chance* *warmer* *surprise* *stamps* *satellite* *cold*

Dear Charlotte,

Thanks for writing. I got your ...letter..... (0) a couple of days ago. It's nice having a new pen-friend. I got a real ..... (1) when I learnt that you have got almost the same ..... (2) as me. How many ..... (3) have you got, by the way? Yesterday, I got a really rare ..... (4) from a friend – it's a Penny Pink – I got it for £10. If you get the ..... (5), can you send me some old English stamps?

So you like TV as well? How many ..... (6) have you got? Do you get any ..... (7) TV stations?

It snowed a lot this year and we got ..... (8) in and just watched hours of TV. What's the weather like in London? Does it ever get really ..... (9)? It's been a long winter here, but the weather's getting a bit ..... (10) now.

Justine



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 7e compound nouns

## form

A compound noun consists of two or three words that function like one word. There are very many compound nouns in English.

| form | example |
|---|---|
| noun + noun: | *notebook, science fiction, timetable* |
| adjective + noun: | *fast lane, fast food, first aid* |
| verb + preposition: | *break-up, check-out, take-over,* |
| three words, with the first two words used adjectivally and usually joined with a hyphen | *back-seat driver, one-parent family, ready-made meal, three-piece suite* |

- We sometimes write compound nouns as two words, sometimes with a hyphen and sometimes as one word:
  *address book* *baby-sitter*
  *brother-in-law* *human being*
  *mother tongue* *pen-friend*
  *road-works* *sunglasses*
  *youth hostel*

There are no definite rules about this. If in doubt, consult a good modern dictionary.

## countable or uncountable?

- Compound nouns may be countable:
  *one alarm clock – two alarm clocks*
  *a car-park – several car-parks*
  *a compact disc – many compact discs*
- Compound nouns may be uncountable:
  *air-traffic control* *chewing gum*
  *mineral water* *table tennis*
- Some compound nouns have only a plural form:
  *armed forces* *baked beans*
  *human rights* *road-works*

For compound adjectives, see 9e.

Here is a list of common countable, uncountab and plural compound nouns:

| countable | uncountable | plural |
|---|---|---|
| *baggage hall* | *air-conditioning* | *bagpipes* |
| *bank account* | *blood pressure* | *bedclothes* |
| *break-in* | *cardboard* | *civil rights* |
| *break-out* | *central heating* | *current affai* |
| *burglar alarm* | *common sense* | *denim jeans* |
| *can-opener* | *cotton wool* | *easy pickings* |
| *car-park* | *dry-cleaning* | *French fries* |
| *clothes peg* | *e-mail* | *French wind* |
| *computer game* | *fancy dress* | *high heels* |
| *credit card* | *fast food* | *inverted com* |
| *cut-back* | *feedback* | *last orders* |
| *database* | *first aid* | *legal proceed* |
| *dining-room* | *food poisoning* | *luxury goods* |
| *dishwasher* | *higher education* | *marching or* |
| *drawing pin* | *iced tea* | *modern languages* |
| *driving licence* | *ill-treatment* | *nail scissors* |
| *fairy-tale* | *job-sharing* | *natural resources* |
| *film star* | *junk food* | *nutcrackers* |
| *frying pan* | *keyhole surgery* | *Olympic gan* |
| *letter box* | *lateral thinking* | *opening hou* |
| *life-support system* | *make-up* | *outskirts* |
| *minimum wage* | *metalwork* | *party politics* |
| *mirror image* | *mineral water* | *race relation* |
| *mobile phone* | *New Year's Day* | *reading glass* |
| *motorway* | *Oedipus complex* | *road-works* |
| *numberplate* | *orange squash* | *roller-skates* |
| *painkiller* | *ovenware* | *scare tactics* |
| *pay packet* | *peacetime* | *sunglasses* |
| *penalty shoot-out* | *power dressing* | *swimming trunks* |
| *pepper grinder* | *rain-water* | *taste-buds* |
| *question mark* | *real estate* | *traffic lights* |
| *road-map* | *software* | *underpants* |
| *skateboard* | *stomachache* | *varicose vein* |
| *television series* | *sunshine* | *walking boot* |
| *throwback* | *toilet-paper* | *winter sports* |
| *trial run* | *tomato ketchup* | *waterworks* |
| *washing-up* | *venture capital* | *worry beads* |
| *word processor* | *whooping cough* | |
| | *work experience* | |
| | *writing paper* | |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Decide whether the following compound nouns are countable or uncountable. Add them to the chart. Four examples are given.**

| countable | uncountable |
|---|---|
| heart attack<br>high school | old age<br>pocket money |

*letterbox*
*washing powder*
*parking meter*
*remote control*
*show business*
*social work*
*toilet-paper*
*police station*
*post office*
*sleeping bag*
*swimming pool*
*pen-friend*
*personal computer*
*soda water*
*news bulletin*
*package holiday*
*passer-by*
*washing-up liquid*
*water skiing*
*writing paper*
*human nature*
*washing machine*

**2 Match the following parts of compound nouns and then fill in the blanks in the sentences using the most appropriate compound.**

**noun and noun**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 suit | ..... | a | food |
| 2 pocket | ..... | b | card |
| 3 zebra | ..... | c | case |
| 4 fire | ..... | d | writer |
| 5 dish | ..... | e | alarm |
| 6 type | ..... | f | opener |
| 7 credit | ..... | g | brigade |
| 8 burglar | ..... | h | washer |
| 9 can | ..... | i | crossing |
| 10 junk | ..... | j | money |

**adjective and noun**

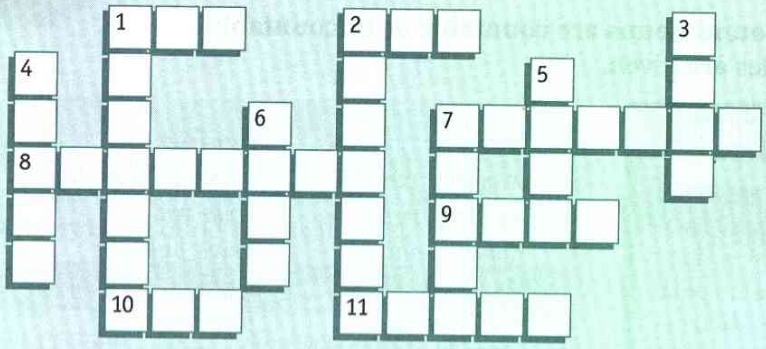
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 fast | ..... | a | heating |
| 2 remote | ..... | b | fries |
| 3 social | ..... | c | food |
| 4 high | ..... | d | control |
| 5 central | ..... | e | cleaner's |
| 6 common | ..... | f | rights |
| 7 French | ..... | g | worker |
| 8 dry | ..... | h | languages |
| 9 human | ..... | i | school |
| 10 modern | ..... | j | sense |

1 They should put a ..... outside the school so that children don't get run over.
2 It's freezing in here – why don't you get ..... installed?
3 When I don't have time to cook I send the kids out to get some ..... .
4 Is the ..... you get from your parents enough for your needs?
5 Can you send the ..... quickly – the house next door is on fire.
6 When you leave primary school and get to ....., lessons get much more difficult.
7 He'll never think of such a simple solution because he hasn't got any ..... .
8 Who's got the ..... for the TV? I'm bored with this programme.
9 Could you get my suit from the ..... for me on your way home?
10 After the last break-in, they decided to get a ..... installed.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## 3 Complete the crossword using the clues. Each one is part of a compound.



### Down

1 We could hire a van – do you have a valid ..... licence?
2 My brother read social ..... at university and he can't get a job with a decent salary.
3 As a student, ..... food suited me fine.
4 I'd like a cheeseburger and large French ....., please.
5 The multistorey car- ..... is going to be knocked down.
6 I stood at the bus ..... for over an hour, and then six buses came along at once.
7 It's about time the world paid more attention to ..... rights issues.

### Across

1 My .....-cleaning has to be picked up before six.
2 Eric thinks he's so cool – he even wears .....glasses when it's raining.
7 At our school the central ..... wouldn't be turned on until October.
8 We can omit ..... commas when we report what someone thinks.
9 Katy's .....-up looks like it was put on with a trowel.
10 Did you know that chewing ..... is illegal in Singapore?
11 It's just common ..... not to walk home on your own.

## 4 Complete the sentences below with one of the following compound nouns.

*print-out* *setback* *hold-up* *getaway* *check-outs* *break-out*
*break-in* *break-up* *take-over* *take-away* *take-off* *check-in*

1 Since the ..... we've had all our locks changed.
2 The recent crime figures are a major ..... for law and order.
3 There was a ..... on the motorway this morning.
4 The thieves made their ..... through a downstairs window.
5 Why can't they have more ..... open so customers don't have to wait?
6 There was a mass ..... last night from Winston prison.
7 The ..... will have serious consequence for the children.
8 Iraq's attempted ..... of Kuwait led to American intervention.
9 Let's have a ..... tonight – I can't be bothered to cook.
10 What time's .....? It says 19.10 on the ticket. I don't want to miss my flight.
11 I'd give you a ..... of John's e-mail message, but my printer's out of order.
12 Let's take these suitcases to the ..... and then we can go through passport control.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**5** **Fill in each space with an appropriate word from the list, forming a compound noun. The first (0) is given as an example.**

*word table ~~worker~~ washing piece meal time wife book up electrical washer computer sitter house*

# A house husband

My wife is a social .....*worker*..... (0) and she works for the local council and has a very busy time..... (1) every day. She obviously can't be in full-..... (2) work and be a house..... (3) at the same time. This means I've been a ..... (4) husband for many years now, because my job as a text..... (5) writer for students of English can be done from home working on a personal ..... (6). As we can't afford a baby-..... (7) I'm in charge of the baby as well as having to do all the cooking and washing-..... (8). My job is made much easier by the variety of ..... (9) goods available – I just put all the dirty plates in the dish..... (10) and the baby's clothes in the ..... (11) machine and away I go. I'm free to produce yet another master..... (12) for students on my ..... (13) processor. When my wife comes home at three she has a ready-made ..... (14) to look forward to. Not bad, eh?

*Grandma loved acting as **baby-sitter** for her **grandchildren**, but would always fall asleep in the **armchair** before they did. Once her five-year-old **grandson** woke her up, saying 'Wake up, Granny, it's past my **bedtime**'.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 8

**AGENDA**

**Grammar**

- 8a reported speech (1)
- 8b reported speech (2)
- 8c *-ing* forms and infinitives after verbs and prepositions

**Vocabulary**

- 8d *say, tell, talk, discuss, speak*, etc.
- 8e *-ed* and *-ing* adjectives

# Entry test

**Underline the correct answer in sentences 1–5.**

1 'Let's go to the cinema tonight,' Amy *suggested / announced.*
2 She *explained / told* that she had been feeling unwell.
3 Sue *begged / insisted* John to give her another chance.
4 They warned the children *not to go / do not go* near the river.
5 She said she *had been trying / was trying* to phone you all day.

**Now look at 8a on pages 130.**

SCORE

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 6–10.**

6 The judge asked the witness ..... give her more information.
**A** him that he **B** if he could **C** that he could **D** him whether to

7 They asked if ..... always wanted to be a doctor.
**A** did she **B** had she **C** did **D** she had

8 Did he say whether ..... lend you the money or not?
**A** could he **B** can he **C** he could **D** he

9 She couldn't tell us what ..... the money on.
**A** she did spend **B** did she spend **C** she had spent **D** had she spent

10 I showed them how ..... the computer.
**A** to use **B** is used **C** they use **D** must they use

**Now look at 8b on page 134.**

SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 11–15.**

11 The car swerved to avoid ..... the pedestrian.
A hitting B to hit C that it hit D not to hit

12 My teacher admitted ..... the answer to the question.
A to not know B that he not know C that he didn't know D that not knowing

13 Would you like ..... another piece of cake?
A have also B having C that you have D to have

14 I hope one day ..... my own house.
A own B to own C owning D that I own

15 I'd rather ..... the children decide for themselves.
A to let B allowing C to allow D let

**Now look at 8c on page 137.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 16–20.**

16 What did the newspaper ..... about the accident?
A tell B refer C say D speak

17 I was persuaded ..... on the trip at the last minute.
A that I go B going C me to go D to go

18 She convinced the court ..... innocent.
A to be B that she was C she was being D that was

19 The suspect ..... that he had been to the bank that day.
A told B refused C rejected D denied

20 We made her an excellent offer, but she ..... it.
A rejected B turned C accepted D denied

**Now look at 8d on page 140.**

SCORE _____

**For questions 21–25, use an appropriate form of the word given to fill the space.**

21 I'm sorry but I don't find her jokes at all ..... . **(amuse)**

22 We were so ..... when the singer failed to turn up. **(disappoint)**

23 He's got some ..... habits but people still like him. **(annoy)**

24 The lesson was so ..... I nearly fell asleep. **(bore)**

25 She has the most ..... little cottage I've ever seen. **(charm)**

**Now look at 8e on page 143.**

SCORE _____

TOTAL SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 8a reported speech (1)

### speech

When we quote someone's actual words, we can use reporting verbs such as *say, reply, suggest,* etc.:

*'I knew the answer,' he* ***said****.*
*'Do you take sugar?' she* ***asked****.*
*'Let's go swimming,' Peter* ***suggested****.*

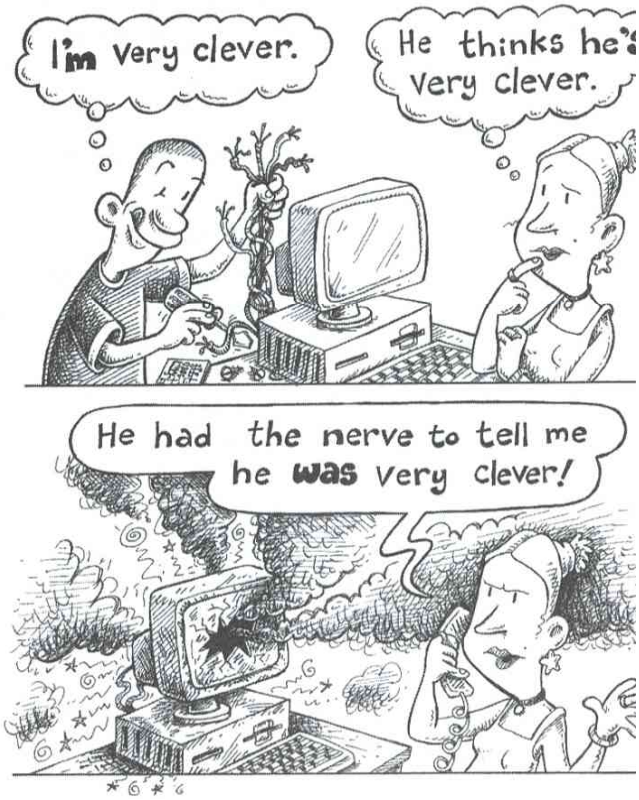
- We can report statements, questions, requests, thoughts, etc.
- Here is a list of common reporting verbs:
  ***add admit advise agree announce answer ask beg claim demand explain insist order persuade promise remind reply report say suggest tell think warn***
- Some report verbs need an indirect object:
  *'Bring some money,' she* ***reminded us****.*
  *The police* ***told us****, 'You won't be charged this time.'*
- We often use report verbs that tell us more about the way someone says something:
  *'Jump now!' the fireman* ***shouted****.*
  *'Get out of my house!' she* ***screamed****.*
- Here are more examples of these verbs:
  ***boast brag cry exclaim grumble insist moan mumble mutter stammer stutter whisper whine yell***
- The reporting clause can come before, in the middle of, or after the direct quotation:
  *He stood up and* ***announced****, 'The party is over.'*
  *'You see,' he* ***grumbled****, 'I can't really afford a holiday.'*
  *'You mustn't give up,' his mother* ***insisted****.*
- Notice the punctuation in the above examples: in the direct quotes, the comma or full stop comes inside the quotation marks.
- When a reporting verb comes after a quote, we can put the subject after the verb:
  *'I doubt if we'll win,'* ***said*** *John.* (= John said)
  *'Wait here – I'll take a look,'* ***whispered*** *Jake.*
  *'That's your girlfriend over there, isn't it?'* ***asked*** *Paula.*

### thoughts

We can quote people's thoughts in the same way as we can quote their speech. We can omit quotation marks:

*I must go and visit Linda, Martha* ***thought****.*

- Here are the common verbs we use for reporting thoughts:
  ***assume believe consider contemplate imagine infer reflect ponder presuppose suppose think wonder***






PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## statements

A common way of reporting someone's words is by using a noun clause beginning with *that*:

*'I can't help you.'* becomes: *He **admitted that** he can't help us.*

- However, we often omit *that*, especially when the reporting verb is *say* or *think*:

*'I'm very clever.'* (= a thought) becomes: *He **thinks** he's very clever.*

## questions

We use *ask*, *wonder* or *want to know* to report questions:

*He **asked me where** I went.*
*I **was wondering why** she's here.*
*He only **wanted to know** if we'd met each other before.*

See also 8b.

## suggestions

When we report suggestions, we can use *suggest* + noun clause with or without *that*. We can include a modal verb, usually *should* or *could*:

*'Why not get your hair cut?'* becomes: *He **suggested (that)** I **should** get my hair cut.*

*'Let's go for a swim.'* becomes: *John **suggested (that)** we **could** go for a swim.*

✗ ~~*Mary **suggested us to** postpone the meeting.*~~
✓ *Mary **suggested (that) we should** postpone the meeting.*

- We often omit the modal verbs:

*He **suggested** I get my hair cut.*
*John **suggested** we go for a swim.*

## commands

When we report requests, orders or commands, or other kinds of persuasion, we often use the pattern *ask*, etc. sb *to do* sth:

*'Wake me up early, Dad!' Michael said.* becomes: *Michael **told** his dad **to wake** him up early.*

*'Please let me watch the match, Mum,' Anne said.* becomes: *Anne **begged** her mum **to let** her watch the match.*

- Here are common verbs which use this pattern:

***advise** **ask** **beg** **command** **forbid** **instruct** **invite** **order** **persuade** **remind** **teach** **tell** **urge** **warn***

- Notice that when we are reporting negative orders, requests, etc., *not* goes before the *to*-infinitive:

*She **begged** him **not to do** it.*
*He **taught** us **not to tell** lies.*

## offers, etc.

When we report what a person said, we often use a verb which describes the speaker's intention, such as an offer or a refusal. The pattern is verb + *to*-infinitive:

*'Can I help you?'* becomes: *She **offered to help** me.*

*'I won't do it.'* becomes: *He **refused to do** it.*

- Similar verbs in this group include:

***agree** **promise** **swear** **threaten** **volunteer** **vow***

## changes to time words

We often make changes in reported speech to words related to time, e.g. *tomorrow*. These changes depend on each situation. Here are examples:

| direct speech | reported speech |
|---|---|
| *here* | *there* |
| *ago* | *before* |
| *before* | *earlier* |
| *last week* | *the week before* |
| *next week* | *the next week / the week after / the following week* |
| *now* | *then / that day / at the moment* |
| *this* | *that / the* |
| *these* | *those / the* |
| *that* | *that / the* |
| *this morning* | *that morning* |
| *today* | *that day* |
| *tomorrow* | *the next day / the following day* |
| *tonight* | *that night* |
| *yesterday* | *the day before / the previous day* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## reported statements – tense changes

When we report statements that were made in the past, we change the tense of the original (direct) speech:

| direct speech | reported speech | tense change |
|---|---|---|
| | *He **said (that)**...* | |
| *'I **want** to buy it.'* | *he **wanted** to buy it.* | Present Simple becomes: Past Simple |
| *'I'**m writing** a letter.'* | *he **was writing** a letter.* | Present Continuous becomes: Past Continuous |
| *'I'**ve come** to mend your car.'* | *he **had come** to mend my car.* | Present Perfect becomes: Past Perfect |
| *'I **saw** your brother.'* | *he **had seen** my brother.*<br>*he **saw** my brother.* | Past Simple becomes: Past Perfect (but, we need not change the tense if the order of events is clear) |
| *'I **was trying** to do it.'* | *he **had been trying** to do it.* | Past Continuous becomes: Past Perfect Continuous |
| *'I'**ll help** you.'* | *he **would help** me.* | *will* becomes: *would* |
| *'I **can** do it.'* | *he **could** do it.* | *can* becomes: *could* |
| *'I **may** do it.'* | *he **might** do it.* | *may* becomes: *might* |
| *'I **must** go.'* | *he **had to** go.* | *must* becomes: *had to* |

- We can keep the verb in a noun clause in the Present tense when we report things which are 'timeless', e.g. scientific theories:
  *Already in ancient times, some philosophers believed that matter **consists of** atoms.*

## Practice

**1 Complete each sentence in reported speech.**

*Example:* Let me help you.
My friend offered to help me.

1 'Why don't we go for a walk?'
She suggested ..... .

2 'I wasn't anywhere near the scene of the crime.'
The accused claimed ..... .

3 'This spot is the best place for a picnic.'
My father said ..... .

4 'The swallows return every spring and fly past my window.'
She explained ..... .

5 'Can you answer the phone? I'm having a shower!'
He asked his son ..... .

6 'I gave you my homework last week.'
The boy insisted ..... .

7 'Could you come and pick me up from school today, dad?'
Billy asked ..... .

8 'If I were you, I wouldn't drink so much.'
He advised his friend ..... .

9 'I won't help you because you didn't help me.'
a Joan said ..... .
b Joan refused ..... .

10 'I'll bring it back tomorrow.'
a He said ..... .
b He promised ..... .



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Match the first part (1–10) with an appropriate reporting verb (a–j).**

1 'If you do that again, I'll leave,'
2 'I'm now going to read out the results,'
3 'Could you bring me the wine list?'
4 'Of course, I'll bring it right away,'
5 'Our team will easily beat yours,'
6 'Please give me another chance,'
7 'Shhh! The baby's sleeping,'
8 'I'm innocent of all the charges,'
9 'First of all, you press the button,'
10 'Careful! The water's deep!'

a she whispered.
b he answered.
c she shouted.
d she threatened.
e she announced.
f he claimed.
g he asked.
h she begged.
i he boasted.
j he explained.

**3 Finish these sentences using the information above. Use reported speech.**

1 She threatened ..... .
2 She announced that she ..... .
3 He asked the waiter ..... .
4 The waiter answered ..... .
5 He boasted that ..... .
6 She begged them ..... .
7 She whispered that ..... .
8 He claimed ..... .
9 He explained that ..... .
10 She shouted to us ..... .

**4 Complete the following letter using the correct form of a verb from the list. The first (0) is given as an example.**

~~*be*~~ *buy* *make* *snow* *give* *miss* *send* *cost* *have* *live* *plan*
*go* *love* *think* *enjoy*

Dear Rose,
Thanks for your letter. I've got lots of news for you this time. We went to see 'Titanic'. Everyone had said it .....was..... (0) great and that nobody should ..... (1) it. There has been a lot of publicity on TV about it recently which told us how much it ..... (2) to make and all that, and Liz and Tony saw it and said they ..... (3) it. I was a bit disappointed – I didn't think it ..... (4) up to expectations. Anyway, I suggest you ..... (5) and see it and ..... (6) up your own mind.
Ah, yes, I got a call from your uncle in Canada who said he ..... (7) you a parcel – have you got it yet? He said it ..... (8) there, and everything was white but he added they always ..... (9) a heavy winter. He also told me they ..... (10) a new jeep and they ..... (11) to travel round the States in it in the summer. He said he ..... (12) us a ride in it if we popped over for a holiday. I replied that we ..... (13) to go over if he agreed to pay all our expenses! He laughed and said he ..... (14) about it and let us know!



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 8b reported speech (2)

## reported speech: questions

When we report questions, we do not follow the normal question order. Instead, we use the word order of a statement:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *'**Can** I leave the room?' I asked.* | becomes: | *I asked if I **could** leave the room.* |

✗ ~~*She asked me **where was I from**.*~~
✓ *She asked me **where I was from**.*

- In very informal English, we can invert the subject and *be* but this is unusual:
  *She asked where **was the man** going.*
- When we report questions, we do not use quotation marks or a question mark:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *'How is Johnny getting on at school?' she asked.* | becomes: | *She asked how Johnny was getting on at school.* |

### yes/no questions

When we report questions that can be answered by *yes* or *no* (for example *Are you happy here? Do you live in a flat?*), we use a noun clause beginning with *if* or *whether*:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *'Are you happy here?' she asked.* | becomes: | *She asked me **if/whether** I was happy there.* |
| *'Does he live in a large flat?' she wondered.* | becomes: | *She wondered **if/whether** he lived in a large flat.* |

- We can usually use either *if* or *whether*:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *'Are the summers very hot there?' he enquired.* | becomes: | *He enquired **if/whether** the summers were very hot there.* |
| *'Have you always lived in the old town?'* | becomes: | *They asked him **if/whether** he had always lived in the old town.* |

See also 8a.

- However, we must use *whether*, not *if*, when we are asking someone to make a choice:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *'Do you want coffee or tea?' they asked.* | becomes: | *They asked me **whether** I wanted coffee or tea.* |

- We must also use *whether* when we include the phrase *or not*. We use *whether…or not* to emphasise the necessity for an answer, often because we are irritated or angry:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *'Are you going to tell me the answer or not?' she said.* | becomes: | *She asked him **whether** he was going to tell her the answer **or not**.* |
| *'Is he coming or not?'* | becomes: | *Did he say **whether** he was coming **or not**?* |

- Here is a list of verbs and verb phrases we can use before *if* and *whether* clauses:
  ***ask*** ***want to know*** ***wonder*** ***(not) say*** ***cannot remember*** ***enquire***

### *wh*-questions

When we report a *wh*-question, we use the *wh*-word: *who, where, why, what*, etc. or *how, how far, how long*, etc:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *'Who built that castle?' she wanted to know.* | becomes: | *She wanted to know **who** had built that castle.* |
| *'Where did you go this summer?'* | becomes: | *He inquired **where** we had gone that summer.* |
| *'What time is it?'* | becomes: | *She asked us **what** the time was. / She wanted to know **what** the time was.* |

## tense changes

Tense changes for reported questions in the past are the same as for reported statements (see page 132).



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Change the following into indirect questions beginning with the words given.**

1 Can I have some more pocket money?
The boy asked .....

2 Where were you born?
She asked him .....

3 How far is the stadium?
He wanted to know .....

4 Are you still living in London?
She asked .....

5 Do you work in the central branch or in the provinces?
She asked him .....

6 Are you going to give me the money or not?
She wanted to know .....

7 Did he bring the book back?
I didn't know .....

8 Who bought the Picasso painting ?
He wondered .....

9 Where did you get such a lovely pullover?
She asked her sister .....

**2 Re-order these words to make *yes/no* and *wh*-questions which might be asked at a job interview.**

*Example:* trip/did/have/you/nice/a
Did you have a nice trip?

1 long/the/take/how/did/journey
..... ?

2 was/in/snowing/it/Manchester
..... ?

3 you/how/are/old
..... ?

4 were/where/born/you
..... ?

5 here/you/lived/long/how/have
..... ?

6 you/are/married
..... ?

7 you/a/do/family/have
..... ?

8 worked/how/as/editor/long/an/you/have
..... ?

9 can/work/you/when/start
..... ?

10 like/your/most/you/what/job/do/about
..... ?

11 us/you/told/who/about
..... ?

12 good/a/what/manager/are/qualities/the/of
..... ?

13 expect/be/much/you/do/how/to/paid
..... ?

14 paid/last/in/much/how/you/being/were/job/ your
..... ?



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Read the text below and add the word which best fits each space.**

I have just been through the annual humiliation of buying a swimming costume. When I was young, some were designed for the fuller figure and did a good job. I wondered ..... (1) I would find anything suitable. After all, today's stretch fabrics are styled for a flatter shape. I saw one floral costume and ..... (2) if I should try it on. I looked like a hippopotamus! The sales assistant tried to be kind. She wanted ..... (3) know where I ..... (4) going for my holidays and how long I ..... (5) be away. At last she gave up and suggested ..... (6) I looked for something in the maternity department to cover my 'mature hips'. I said that I would go there the ..... (7) day. I'll never have any luck, I ..... (8) as I walked home. The next day I did find a plain blue costume and the assistant invited me to enter the chamber of horrors known as the fitting room. As I pulled the costume on, I stared in disbelief – my whole bust had disappeared under my armpits! A young sales girl was standing at the exit. She asked me rather rudely ..... (9) I was going to buy the costume or ..... (10). I pushed it into her hands and fled.

**4 Read the following text carefully. Some of the lines are correct but in the others there is a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, tick (✓) it. If there is an incorrect word in the sentence, write it at the end in the space provided. The first two are given as examples.**

**A JOB INTERVIEW**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | I think the interview went well. He wanted to know whether a | whether |
| | number of things about me and what I had been doing | ✓ |
| 1 | in the last few years. First, he asked me if I have had had | ..... |
| 2 | a nice trip down from Manchester and how long it | ..... |
| 3 | had been taken me to get there. He also wanted to know | ..... |
| 4 | whether or it had been snowing in Manchester. The chitchat | ..... |
| 5 | over, he asked from me how old I was and where I was born | ..... |
| 6 | although I had sent him my CV by post. He then asked | ..... |
| 7 | how long I had I lived in Manchester and I told him. His | ..... |
| 8 | next question was the whether I was married and whether I had | ..... |
| 9 | a family or not. I explained him that I was separated and that | ..... |
| 10 | I had one daughter. He asked me how long did I had worked as an | ..... |
| 11 | editor and how much I was had being paid in my present job. He | ..... |
| 12 | asked me what was I liked most about my job and who had told me | ..... |
| 13 | about their company. The main questions he asked me were about the | ..... |
| 14 | qualities of a good manager. Finally, he asked how much have | ..... |
| 15 | I expected to be paid. I think the interview went very well. | ..... |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 8c -*ing* forms and infinitives after verbs and prepositions

After verbs, we can use an infinitive (with or without *to*), an *-ing* form of another verb, a noun, or a noun clause beginning with *that*:

*I **must go** now.*
*I **feel like dancing**.*
*I **fancy an ice-cream**.*
*I **admit that** I did it.*

## verb + noun, verb + *-ing* form

Here are examples of verbs that use these patterns:

*I **avoid noisy bars**. I **avoid going** to noisy bars.* (= I try not to go to them)
*The castle is **worth a visit**. The castle is **worth visiting**.* (= It is a good idea to visit it)

- Here are verbs that use these patterns:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***avoid*** | ***be*** | ***worth*** |
| ***delay*** | ***dislike*** | ***enjoy*** |
| ***fancy*** | ***feel like*** | ***finish*** |
| ***give up*** | ***involve*** | ***keep / keep on*** |
| ***mind*** | ***miss*** | ***postpone / put off*** |
| ***practise*** | ***risk*** | |

- Verbs + prepositions are followed by the *-ing* form of the verb. We often follow prepositions with the *-ing* form of a verb. Here are examples:

| verb + prepositions | example |
|---|---|
| ***be good at*** | *She's **good at getting** people to do things.* |
| ***be keen on*** | *Why **are** you so **keen on travelling**?* |
| ***look forward to*** | *They **were looking forward to going** on holiday.* |
| ***insist on*** | *She **insisted on coming** with me to the lawyer.* |
| ***succeed in*** | *He **succeeded in breaking** the world speed record.* |
| ***apologise for*** | *I **apologise for letting** you down.* |

## verb + *-ing* form/noun/noun clause with *that*

Here are examples of these patterns:

*He **admitted lying** to the police.*
*He **admitted his crimes**.*
*He **admitted that** he had lied to the police.*

- Here are more verbs in this group:
  ***admit consider deny imagine report suggest***
- An infinitive is not possible with these verbs:
  ✗ ~~*He denied to do it.*~~
  ✓ *He **denied doing** it.*
- We can omit *that*.

## verb + *-ing* form/*to*-infinitive/noun

Here are examples of these patterns:

*I **began training** as soon as I heard about the match.*
*I **began to train** as soon as I heard about the match.*
*I **began French** when I was twelve.*

- Here there are more verbs in this group:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***begin*** | ***continue*** | ***can't bear*** |
| ***hate*** | ***like*** | ***love*** |
| ***prefer*** | ***can't stand*** | ***start*** |

***can't bear* or *can't stand*?**

- *Can't bear* means 'to dislike something very much' and is common in both written and spoken English:
  *He **can't bear smoking**.*
  *I **can't bear to hear** that music – turn it down.*
  *I **can't bear that** music – turn it down.*
- *Can't stand* also means 'to dislike something very much' but is more common in spoken English:
  *Lily **can't stand working** in an office.*
  *I **can't stand TV commercials**.*
  *I **can't stand that** singer.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## verb + *to*-infinitive

Here are examples of verbs that use this pattern:

*I **agreed to go** with her.*
*He **appears to be** dead.*
*We **can't afford to go** on holiday this year.*

- Here are more verbs in this group:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***expect*** | ***choose*** | ***wish*** |
| ***intend*** | ***fail*** | ***decide*** |
| ***manage*** | ***hope*** | ***hesitate*** |
| ***plan*** | ***mean*** (= intend) | ***learn*** |
| ***promise*** | ***prepare*** | ***offer*** |
| ***threaten*** | ***refuse*** | ***pretend*** |
| ***like*** | ***want*** | ***seem*** |

- We can also follow many of these verbs with a *that*-clause, a noun, an adjective or a prepositional phrase:
  *I **agree that** it is difficult.* (verb + *that*-clause)
  *She **failed the exam.*** (verb + noun)
  *She **seems frightened**. They **appear happy**.* (verb + adjective)
  *They **agreed on a course of action**.* (verb + prepositional phrase)

## verb + bare infinitive

This is a small group. Here are examples of verbs that use this pattern:

***Let** me **give** you some advice.* (= allow me to...)
*I'**d** rather **go** to Italy.* (= I prefer to...)
*I'**d** sooner **die** than tell the secret.* (= I would very much prefer to...)
*You'**d** better **watch** what you're saying.* (= I advise you to...)
*They **made** us **get up** early.* (= forced us to...)

- The biggest set of verbs in this group are modal verbs except *ought to* (see 3a, 3b). Other examples are:
  ***see feel hear watch***
- We do not use *let* in the passive. Instead we use *allow*:
  *The children **were allowed** to leave early.*
- We use a *to*-infinitive after *make* in the passive:
  *I **was made to** wait two hours for an appointment.*
- Notice the structure *feel/hear/see/watch* + pronoun/noun + bare infinitive:
  *I **saw them cross** the road.*
  *I **heard someone enter** the house.*
  *I **felt something run** down my back.*
- We see each action above as a completed action. When we use *-ing*, the focus is on the action as it is happening:
  *I **saw them crossing** the road.*
  *I **heard someone entering** the house.*

## infinitive or *-ing* form?

We can use some verbs with both the *to*-infinitive and *-ing* form but with a change of meaning. The most common of these are:

| verb | meaning | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***remember*** | not forget to do it | *I **remembered to turn off** the oven.* |
| | have a memory of it | *I **remember turnin off** the oven.* |
| ***try*** | make an effort | *They **tried to help** but it was no use.* |
| | do it to see what happens | ***Try jogging** a bit every day.* |
| ***stop*** | stop in order to... | *I **stopped to tie** up my shoelace.* |
| | no longer do this | *He **stopped wearin** ties years ago.* |
| ***go on*** | continue by... | *The teacher took the register and **went on to discus** the homework.* |
| | not stop working | *She **went on** althou she could've retire* |
| ***regret*** | be sorry to have to inform sb that... | *We **regret to inforn** you that we canno offer you the post.* |
| | be sorry that... | *She **regretted accepting** the job after the first day.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Underline the correct word or phrase in the following.**

1 He denied *telling/to tell* lies.
2 He *denied/refused* that he had told lies.
3 They suggested *to postpone/postponing* the match to the following week.
4 The weather delayed *that they arrived/their arrival.*
5 I can't bear *to see/see* children suffer.
6 We really can't afford *buying/to buy* a new washing machine.
7 I look forward *to seeing/to see* you at the party.
8 Before *going/that I went* to the interview, I bought a new tie.
9 I'd rather *stay/to stay* at home tonight, if that's all right.
10 I saw someone *to climb/climbing* through the window.

**2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change this word.**

1 I'm sorry but we have decided not to accept your application.
**regret**
I ..... we have decided to reject your application.
2 Funnily enough I'd prefer a pizza for a change.
**rather**
Funnily enough ..... .
3 We were not allowed to drink too much Coke when we were children.
**let**
Our parents ..... .
4 I think it would be a good idea to take the train.
**suggest**
I ..... .
5 She succeeded in persuading her parents to let her go.
**managed**
She ..... .
6 It looks as if this door's locked after all.
**appears**
This ..... .
7 One of the things I hate is people eating popcorn in the cinema.
**stand**
One of the things I ..... .
8 The singer arrived two hours late but I'm glad I waited for him.
**worth**
The singer ..... .
9 Jack said he had to catch the early flight.
**insisted**
Jack ..... .
10 I can't wait to get your next letter.
**forward**
I ..... .

**3 Write the correct form of the verbs given in brackets. Sometimes more than one answer may be possible.**

### Einstein: an ordinary child

Einstein was not a remarkable child. He began (1 **take**) ..... piano lessons at the age of six. He didn't seem (2 **be**) ..... particularly talented. He liked (3 **day-dream**) ..... and (4 **play**) ..... . He didn't enjoy (5 **talk**) ..... very much; in fact, he waited till he was three before (6 **start**) ..... to talk. In spite of not (7 **have**) ..... a very exciting childhood, Einstein later appeared (8 **have**) ..... a vivid memory of it. He remembered (9 **be**) ..... impressed by how a compass works and by the mysterious force which made the compass needle (10 **point**) ..... in a given direction.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 8d say, tell, talk, discuss, speak, etc.

### say

*Say* comes before or after direct speech:
*Tom **said**, 'This is great!'*
*'I'm so tired,' she **said**.*

***say* (*that*)**
We use *say* (*that*) before reported speech:
*She **said** (**that**) she might be late.*

**collocations with *say***
Here are some common phrases with *say*:

| | |
|---|---|
| ***say*** | *your prayers*<br>*yes / no*<br>*a few words*<br>*something* |

- Certain objects can 'say' things:
  ***The clock says** it's five past ten.*
  ***The letter says** we've won first prize.*
  ***The newspaper says** there's been a hijacking.*
  ***The label says** it was produced in Argentina.*

**grammar of *say***
*Say* cannot have a person as a direct object. We must use the preposition *to* followed by the person:
*She **said** goodbye **to her parents**.*

**common phrases with *say***

| phrase | example |
|---|---|
| ***People say...*** | ***People say** he's a bit mad.* |
| ***Let's just say (that)...*** | ***Let's just say** he doesn't always tell the truth.* |
| ***Have** sth **to say*** | *If you have **something to say**, say it now.*<br>***Have** you **anything to say** in your defence?* |
| ***Say...*** (= suppose) | ***Say** we do this, what would happen?* |

### tell

We *tell* somebody facts, opinions and information:
*He **told** us the answer.*

### the main structures with *tell*

***tell* sb *about* sth**
Compare the different meanings of *tell* sb *about sth* and *say sth to sb*:
*She **told us about her travels** around North America.* (= reported)
*I'm going to **say something to the neighbours about the noise**.* (= complain)

- *Tell sb about sth* can be a request:
  ***Tell** us **about** Africa.*
- Compare this with *say sth about*:
  *I'm going to **say something about** my trip to Africa.* (= I will report the facts about…)

***tell* sb *to do* sth**
We use *tell* (not *say*) with a *to*-infinitive when we report commands:
✗ ~~*The policeman **said me to go** with him.*~~
✓ *The policeman **told me to go** with him.*
*'Close the door,' he **said**.* becomes: *He **told** me to close the door.*

***tell* sb (*that*)**
*She **told them** (**that**) she might be late.*

***tell* sb + *what / how / where*, etc. + noun phrase**
Here is an example of this pattern:
***Tell me what** you need.*

- We can also use this pattern with a *to*-infinitive:

| | |
|---|---|
| ***tell** her* | ***what** to do*<br>***where** to go*<br>***how** to do it* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**phrases with *tell***

Here are examples of *tell* in common phrases:

*It's impossible* ***to tell*** *the twins* ***apart.***
*You could* ***tell a mile off*** *that she was lying.*
*I didn't do it – somebody's been* ***telling tales.***
*If you're quiet, I'll* ***tell you a story*** *about a big bad wolf.*
*I* ***told you the reason*** *why I was out late.*
*You've never* ***told the truth*** *in your life.*
*I've never* ***told a lie*** *in my whole life.*

- Notice we also use *give* meaning 'express' in common phrases:

| | |
|---|---|
| ***give*** | *orders*<br>*some advice*<br>*an opinion*<br>*the details*<br>*information*<br>*directions* |

## talk about or speak about?

To *talk about* something means the same as to discuss something:

*Let's* ***talk about*** *the problem.* (= Let's discuss it)

- We use *speak about* in more formal contexts:
  *The lecturer is going to* ***speak about*** *the modern novel.* (= give a talk on)
- We can also use *talk about* meaning 'tell stories' in less formal contexts:
  *She often* ***talked about*** *her days as a student.*

## persuade or convince?

*Persuade* means 'make someone decide to do something, especially by asking them repeatedly or telling them reasons why they should do it'. Here are the main patterns in examples:

*I finally* ***persuaded her to go out*** *for a drink with me.* (= I got her to agree to do it)
*He refused to come in spite of our efforts to* ***persuade him.*** (= to make him decide to do it)

- *Convince* means 'make somebody feel certain that something is true'. Here are the main patterns in examples:
  *Her evidence* ***convinced the court.***
  *Her arguments* ***convinced me.***
  *I managed to* ***convince them that*** *the story was true.*
  *We finally* ***convinced them of*** *our innocence.*

## deny, refuse, reject and turn down

Here is a table showing the forms and meanings of these verbs:

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***deny*** + noun | say sth is not true | *He* ***denied*** *the claims.* |
| ***deny that*** | | *She* ***denied that*** *she had stolen the money.* |
| ***refuse*** + *to*-infinite | say you will not do sth | *He* ***refused to*** *apologise.* |
| ***refuse*** + noun | not accept sth | *They* ***refused*** *our help.* |
| ***reject*** + noun | refuse to accept | *They* ***rejected*** *her ideas.* |
| ***turn down*** | refuse an offer | *I* ***turned down*** *the offer.* |

- To *deny* something means 'say it is not true':
  *He was accused of stealing a car but he* ***denies it.***
  *He* ***denied rumours / the accusations.***
  *He* ***denied any knowledge*** *of the crime.*
  *He* ***denied that*** *he stole it.*
- To *refuse* + *to*-infinitive or *refuse* + noun means to 'say you will not do something that someone asks you to do':
  *She* ***refused to help*** *us.*
  *She* ***refused our help / a second piece of cake.***
  *She* ***refused the children permission*** *to play in the garden.* (= she said they were not allowed)
- *Reject* is stronger than *refuse.* It means to 'refuse to accept, consider or use something'. We can only use it with a noun:
  *They* ***rejected her application.***
  *Sarah* ***rejected her brother's offer*** *of help.*
  *The council* ***rejected the proposals*** *for the new road.*

**turn sb / sth *down***

We can also use the phrasal verb *turn down* instead of *refuse* and *reject*:

*She* ***turned down her brother's offer*** *of help.*
*She* ***turned him down.*** (= refused to accept his offer)



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space with a suitable form of a verb from the list. You can use some verbs more than once.**

*say tell speak talk discuss persuade give convince deny turn down*

1 A: People ..... that he's been all round the world.
B: Yes, he's always ..... about his travels.

2 A: He was ..... us another one of his stories.
B: Does he ever ..... the truth?

3 A: Rose is brilliant at ..... jokes.
B: I hope we can ..... her to tell us some tonight.

4 A: Why don't you ask the doctor to ..... you a second opinion?
B: Yes, I ought to ..... to someone else about it.

5 A: Doctor, they ..... it's urgent.
B: Very well, ..... them I'm on my way.

6 A: They ..... the Prime Minister will be ..... about the new law in Parliament today.
B: I wonder what he's going to ..... this time.

7 A: You ..... me you were at the pub last night.
B: What are you ..... about?

8 A: I believe what he ..... .
B: I don't. I am ..... he's been ..... lies.

9 A: You ..... him some good advice about his interview.
B: But he didn't get the job. I wonder why he was .....?

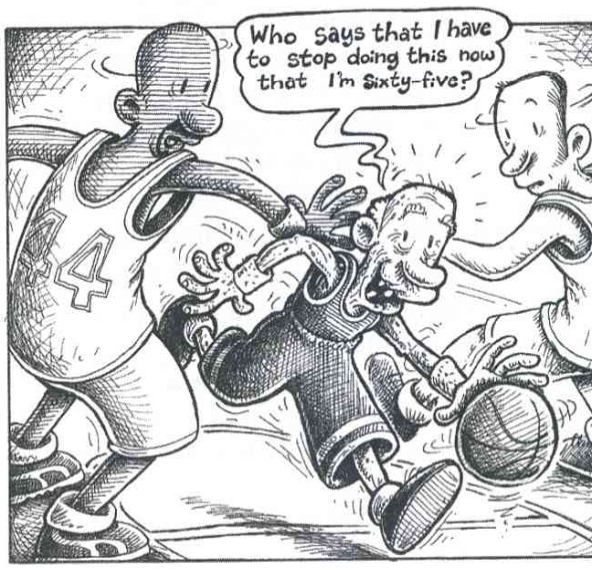
10 A: You can't ..... that you ..... Kate my secret.
B: No, I didn't. But it seems I can't ..... you. Maybe we can ..... this later.

**2 Read the text below and add the word which best fits each space. The first (0) is given as an example.**

### A FRIEND IN NEED

I can't ....say..... (0) when I first realised that Billy was in trouble with the police. He had often ..... (1) to me about his problems and, as his friend, I had ..... (2) him the best advice I could. I also ..... (3) I'd let him come and stay with me but he ..... (4) my offer. I tried to ..... (5) him to stop spending so much money at the club and to sit down and ..... (6) his problems with me but he ..... (7) me to mind my own business.

It was difficult to ..... (8) to him after this but I was ..... (9) he was getting into deeper trouble all the time. He had often ..... (10) having anything to do with the local gangs. But then the police came round and asked me to ..... (11) them information about Billy and I couldn't ..... (12), though I avoided ..... (13) them anything that might do him harm. They asked me to ..... (14) them more details but I managed to convince them that I had told the truth.






PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 8e -ed and -ing adjectives

## -ed adjectives

Adjectives ending *-ed* have the same form as past participles. The *-ed* adjective tells us how a person feels:

*The **worried** parents waited anxiously for news.*
*It's difficult to teach a classroom of **bored** students.*

- These adjectives do not end in *-ed* if the past participle is irregular:
  *She died of a **broken** heart.*

## -ing adjectives

Adjectives ending *-ing* have the same form as the present participle. The *-ing* adjective tells us about the effect that something or someone has on our feelings:

*It was a **disappointing** film.*
*That was a **satisfying** meal.*
*You're a **boring** teacher.*
*The journey was **exciting**.*
*My job is **exhausting**.*

- Here are some common *-ed / -ing* adjectives. Look up those you are not sure of in a dictionary:

***amused/amusing***
***annoyed/annoying***
***bored/boring***
***confused/confusing***
***disappointed/ disappointing***
***disgusted/disgusting***
***embarrassed/ embarrassing***
***encouraged/ encouraging***
***excited/exciting***
***fascinated/ fascinating***
***frightened/ frightening***
***interested/interesting***
***irritated/irritating***
***satisfied/satisfying***
***surprised/surprising***
***terrified/terrifying***
***tired/tiring***

- There are many *-ed / -ing* adjectives which are not connected with feelings. These can usually replace a clause meaning 'noun which is ...' Here are some examples:

*a **sliding** door* *a **melting** ice* *a **sunken** ship*
*a **moving** part* *a **soaring** bird* *a **burning** heat*
*a **broken** vase* *a **locked** door* *a **fallen** tree*

## Practice

**1 Underline the correct *-ed* or *-ing* adjectives in the following text.**

### SCHOOL REPORT SHOCKS PARENTS

Teachers are finding it increasingly difficult to control classes of young pupils, says a report published yesterday. The evidence from the 100 schools which were involved in the study is not *encouraged / encouraging* (1). The report paints a *depressing / depressed* (2) picture of schools up and down the country, with teachers feeling *disappointed / disappointing* (3) not only by students' results in tests but by the *worrying / worried* (4) increase in violent behaviour in class and in the playground.

'I am worn out at the end of the day; my job is *exhausted / exhausting* (5), I can tell you,' complained one teacher. One of the most *disturbed / disturbing* (6) revelations is the use of drugs by youngsters. Although teachers were not totally *surprised / surprising* (7) by the findings, parents are *worried / worrying* (8); some even described the report as *shocked / shocking* (9) and demanded immediate action. Pupils who were asked to comment on the report said they found school *uninterested / uninteresting* (10); they blamed teachers for teaching *boring / bored* (11) lessons. The report is particularly *embarrassed / embarrassing* (12) for the Minister of Education who claimed recently that British education is 'the best in the world'.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Complete the following sentences with the correct *-ed* or *-ing* adjective, using the verbs in the list.**

*interest relax surprise confuse bore annoy embarrass frighten depress irritate*

1 The instructions in the exam were very complicated and left the students feeling totally ..... .
2 I don't find horror films at all ..... – in fact, I find them quite funny.
3 Would you be ..... in coming to the theatre this evening? I have a spare ticket.
4 Can't you fix that dripping tap? It's getting on my nerves – it's really ..... .
5 I didn't expect to see Peter at the party. I was really ..... to see him there.
6 He's had a lot of bad news recently and is feeling a bit ..... . Let's go and cheer him up.
7 I find it ..... to lie on the sofa and listen to music after a hard day's work.
8 I was told the film was really good but I felt utterly ..... by it.
9 I get really ..... when people throw rubbish down in the streets. It makes me furious.
10 If I said anything as stupid as he did in front of a thousand people, I'd feel really ..... .

**3 Answer the following questions using *-ed* or *-ing* adjectives. Write about your own ideas.**

1 What do you think about the destruction of the rain forests?
.....
2 How would you feel if you climbed Mount Everest?
.....
3 If you failed the exam, how would you feel?
.....
4 What do you think of people who drop litter?
.....
5 What do your parents think of your friends?
.....
6 If you were flying to New York tomorrow, how would you feel?
.....
7 Whenever you see a beggar, how do you feel?
.....
8 What do you think of sport on television?
.....
9 When the bus or train is late, how do you feel?
.....
10 How would you feel if someone found you cheating?
.....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

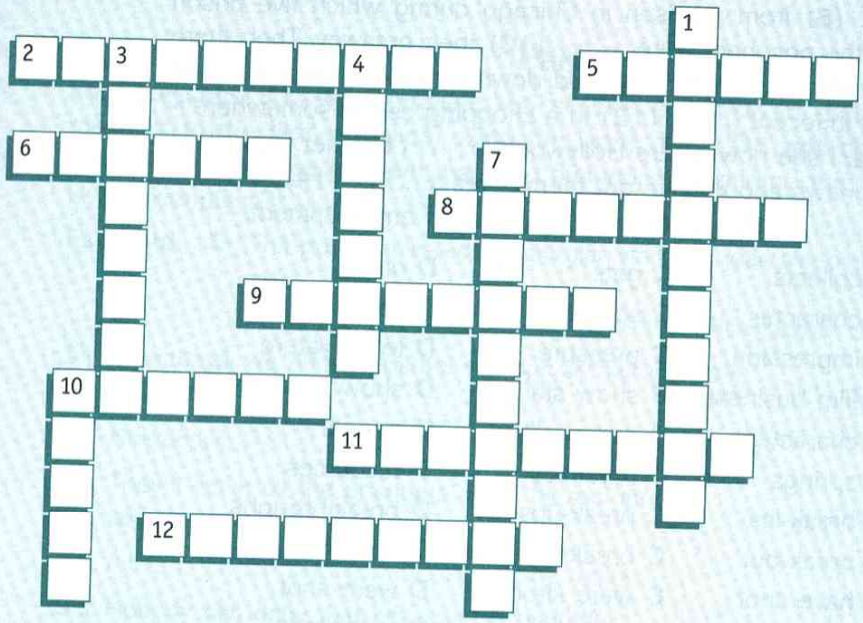
**4 Complete the following sentences using an appropriate *-ed* or *-ing* adjective. Write about your own feelings.**

*Example:* I find science fiction stories very interesting.

1 I find computers such ..... machines.
2 People who like computer games are really ..... .
3 The thought of going to the moon is ..... .
4 It's easier to teach ..... students.
5 I wouldn't be ..... if the economy collapsed.
6 I find lying on the beach on a hot summer's day ..... .
7 I agree that television is ..... .
8 Football couldn't be more ..... .

**5 Complete the crossword using an *-ed* or *-ing* adjective. Use the verbs in the list to help you.**

*arm heat build interest humiliate amuse collect touch age captivate freeze reward trust*



**Across**

2 I hear you want to buy a car. Would you be ..... in a second-hand Honda?
5 What began as a friendly discussion, soon became a ..... argument.
6 Would you keep the baby ..... while I hang out the washing?
8 His truck was loaded up with bricks, sand and other ..... materials.
9 Take a thick coat – the weather can be ..... in Britain, even in spring.
10 Are ..... aircraft, say those older than ten years, safe to fly in?
11 Nursing can be a very ..... career, can't it?
12 It's important to stay cool, calm and ..... during your interview.

**Down**

1 The Countess of Wessex won over the nation with her ..... smile.
3 You shouldn't have believed him – you're far too ..... .
4 My family were deeply ..... by your offers of help and sympathy.
7 I felt utterly ..... when you criticised me in front of my friends.
10 The army, navy and air force are known as the ..... forces.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Exam practice 4

## Part 1

For Questions **1–15**, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

**Example: 0** **A** information means **B** mass media **C** news means **D** methods of information

### BAD NEWS

The ..... (**0**) nowadays are our main source of information about what's happening in the world and the impression one ..... (**1**) from them about human ..... (**2**) is pretty depressing. My blood ..... (**3**) rises every time I switch the television on. Apart from gossip about ..... (**4**) personalities, the picture they paint of human ..... (**5**) is that they are violent and bloodthirsty. They just report crimes, violations of human rights and the way we are destroying our natural ..... (**6**). They rarely report ..... (**7**) in science or medicine; it's a bleak picture. Last night, there was a report about a mass ..... (**8**) from a prison in Chicago during which five prison guards ..... (**9**) dead as the prisoners were ..... (**10**) their getaway. Then there was the story of someone who ..... (**11**) gunned down by police when he went berserk and massacred ten innocent ..... (**12**) in a shopping centre somewhere – again – in the United States. I see now where Hollywood ..... (**13**) get their ideas from. They just turn on the news and they've got themselves a ..... (**14**) scenario. It seems to me that news ..... (**15**) have become a form of entertainment.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1** | **A** takes | **B** collects | **C** gets | **D** draws |
| **2** | **A** nature | **B** character | **C** species | **D** persons |
| **3** | **A** level | **B** impression | **C** pressure | **D** temperature |
| **4** | **A** film affairs | **B** film business | **C** show star | **D** show business |
| **5** | **A** beings | **B** characters | **C** personalities | **D** people |
| **6** | **A** wealth | **B** springs | **C** materials | **D** resources |
| **7** | **A** breakaways | **B** break-ins | **C** break-ups | **D** breakthroughs |
| **8** | **A** break-in | **B** break-out | **C** breakthrough | **D** break-up |
| **9** | **A** have been shot | **B** have shot | **C** were shooting | **D** were shot |
| **10** | **A** taking | **B** making | **C** trying | **D** escaping |
| **11** | **A** had | **B** has been | **C** got | **D** was got |
| **12** | **A** by-passers | **B** passers-by | **C** pedestrians | **D** onlookers |
| **13** | **A** screenplayers | **B** scriptplayers | **C** scenewriters | **D** screenwriters |
| **14** | **A** ready-made | **B** take-away | **C** give-away | **D** high-class |
| **15** | **A** bulletins | **B** broadcasters | **C** forecasts | **D** reporters |

SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Part 2

For Questions **16–30**, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only **one** word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### LETTER FROM BRITAIN

I received another letter from my daughter, Rose, today in which she tells (**0**) us all about her first impressions of ..... (**16**) and studying in Britain. The first thing she ..... (**17**) in the letter is that she is settling down quite nicely. After the first day she had complained that the weather ..... (**18**) cold and the people ..... (**19**) unfriendly. Indeed, she wondered ..... (**20**) it always seemed to be dark and ..... (**21**) the British ever saw the sunshine. In her letter she says she is enjoying ..... (**22**) drama at the university but still finds the social life a bit boring. I ..... (**23**) her before she left ..... (**24**) to expect life to be as exciting as it is here. I explained that most pubs ..... (**25**) at about eleven and people ..... (**26**) home, usually a bit drunk. Rosie had told ..... (**27**) in her first letter that she had ..... (**28**) friends with someone from Spain. We were pleased to hear this and in fact I had advised her ..... (**29**) make as many friends as she could because I believed it ..... (**30**) the best way of not feeling lonely and overcoming culture shock.

SCORE _____

## Part 3

For Questions **31–40**, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. **Do not change the word given**. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (**0**).

**Example: 0** The police arrested the burglar while he was sleeping.
**was**
The burglar was arrested by police while he was sleeping.

**31** Nowadays, we refer to barber's shops as hairdresser's.
**known**
Nowadays, ..... hairdresser's.

**32** They'll catch all the prisoners again by tonight.
**will**
All ..... by tonight.

**33** Nobody can deny that her voice is beautiful.
**denied**
It ..... has a beautiful voice.

**34** Somebody has mended her car for 500 pounds.
**repaired**
She ..... for 500 pounds.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**35** They're going to demolish that old school building.
**pulled**
That old school building ..... down.

**36** People say that Rome is a marvellous city.
**supposed**
Rome ..... a marvellous city.

**37** Somebody has to pick up the guest speaker from the railway station.
**up**
The guest speaker ..... from the railway station.

**38** You are not allowed to bring coffee into the classrooms.
**must**
Coffee ..... into the classrooms.

**39** My car really needs to be serviced soon.
**get**
I really ..... soon.

**40** He didn't renovate the house because he couldn't afford it.
**have**
He didn't ..... because he couldn't afford it.

SCORE _____

## Part 4

For Questions **41–55**, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning (**0**) and (**00**).

### TROUBLE AT WORK

**0** George came round to see me yesterday because he said he ...✓...
**00** wanted to discuss about the problems he was having at work. He ...about...
**41** explained that because he had been only recently started to work .....
**42** in the office everybody was taking advantage of him. He .....
**43** complained that they kept up asking him to do things which he .....
**44** says are not his job to do it. Senior members of staff .....
**45** asked him to make a coffee and one of them even told him .....
**46** to buy him a newspaper. The assistant director asked of him .....
**47** whether he would mind to getting him some cigarettes. .....
**48** I asked George how long had this had been going on and he said .....
**49** it had started on his first day in the office. I advised him to go and .....
**50** talk to his boss. He replied that he has had already had a .....
**51** word with the manager but he refused to get involved and even .....
**52** suggested whether it was George's fault if there was tension at .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**53** work. I wondered whether we should to persuade George to apply .....
**54** for a job with us but I don't know about whether he would agree .....
**55** to work on a much lower salary than he's getting at the moment. ..... SCORE

## Part 5

For Questions **56–65**, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### A WRITING REVOLUTION

| | |
|---|---|
| I've been a professional (**0**) writer for most of my adult life and I've | PROFESSION |
| been writing ..... (**56**) fiction for at least twenty years now. My real | SCIENTIST |
| name is Herbert Smith but I use the ..... (**57**) 'Al Macintyre' because | PEN |
| I think a ..... (**58**) should have a more exciting name than 'Smith'. | NOVEL |
| I used to have enormous problems writing manuscripts for ..... (**59**). | PUBLISH |
| First, I would start scribbling on a huge wad of ordinary ..... (**60**) | WRITE |
| paper. Then I would jot down a few ideas in a ..... (**61**) before I | NOTE |
| started to write my first draft on the ..... (**62**). This went on till a | TYPE |
| couple of years ago when I bought my first ..... (**63**) computer. | PERSON |
| I was only interested in the word ..... (**64**), actually, and when | PROCESS |
| I saw the first neat ..... (**65**) of my efforts on the computer, | PRINT |
| knew it would change the way I wrote novels forever. | |

SCORE

TOTAL SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 9

## AGENDA

### Grammar

- 9a comparative and superlative adjectives
- 9b adjectives followed by prepositions
- 9c order of adjectives

### Vocabulary

- 9d adjectives of size, quantity and power
- 9e compound adjectives

# Entry test

**Underline the correct answer in sentences 1–5.**

1 Cats are sometimes *as / more* intelligent than humans.
2 This is the *lovelier / loveliest* dress I've ever seen.
3 It was the *worst / worse* film I've seen all year.
4 E-mail is *a lot / a much* more efficient than sending a fax.
5 Don't you think the last hotel was *slightly less / more least* modern than this one?

**Now look at 9a on pages 152.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 6–10.**

6 She was grateful ..... the help he had given her.
A of B with C to D for
7 The bath is full ..... water.
A with B from C up D of
8 I will not be responsible ..... what happens.
A for B with C of D by
9 I didn't know he was married ..... Barbara.
A with B to C in D of
10 They're very proud ..... their daughter's success.
A from B of C for D in

**Now look at 9b on page 155.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 11–15.**

11 There's nothing tastier than ..... tomato.
A nice red B a nice red C a nice and a red
D nice and red
12 John bought Maria a pair of ..... gloves.
A leather black B black and leather C black leather
D leather and black



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

13 A ..... factory will be opened in the north.
A new Japanese car B Japanese new car C Japanese car new
D new car Japanese

14 She was wearing a ..... dress
A red lovely B red and lovely C lovely and red
D lovely red

15 He's bought a ..... car.
A German sports posh B posh German sports C posh sports German
D German posh sports

**Now look at 9c on pages 157.** SCORE

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 16–20.**

16 As chairperson, she's the ..... person on the committee.
A strongest B biggest C most powerful D most strong

17 Are you ..... enough to lift that box?
A large B great C power D strong

18 The boys are ..... – they need new beds.
A greater B higher C taller D stronger

19 She's so ..... that she finds it hard to say no.
A thin B fragile C weak D slender

20 I think it's perfectly ..... to want to be with friends on holiday.
A strange B foreign C odd D natural

**Now look at 9d on pages 158.** SCORE

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 21–25.**

21 She's so .....-minded and often forgets her keys.
A loose B absent C distant D strong

22 You're .....-sighted and need glasses, I'm afraid.
A old B little C low D short

23 He's very .....going and gets on with everyone.
A happy B open C friendly D easy

24 It's cheaper to travel by air in ..... .
A second hand B style C economy class D savings account

25 Winning the Nobel prize has made her .....known throughout the world.
A un B highly C well D generally

**Now look at 9e on page 164.** SCORE

TOTAL SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 9a comparative and superlative adjectives

We use comparative adjectives to show how the qualities of two people or things can be compared. We use superlative adjectives to show how three or more can be compared.

- Comparatives add *-er* to the adjective. We can also add *than*:
  *Bill is **richer** (**than** John).*
- Superlatives add *the ...-est*, and a preposition such as *of* or *in* with any noun phrase:
  *Jane is **the youngest** (**of** the three sisters).*
  *Bill is **the tallest** (**in** the class).*
- We can omit *the*:
  *Jane is (**the**) **youngest**.*
- Usually, we do not state what is compared because it is obvious:
  *A lot of people have become **richer** in the last few years.* (= richer than before)
  *Their **youngest** child is Jane.* (= the parents have at least three children)

### one-syllable adjectives

Most one-syllable adjectives form the comparative by adding *-er* and the superlative by adding *-est*:

| adjective | comparative | superlative |
|---|---|---|
| *cheap* | *cheaper* | *(the) cheapest* |
| *fast* | *faster* | *(the) fastest* |
| *young* | *younger* | *(the) youngest* |
| *shy* | *shyer* | *(the) shyest* |
| *tall* | *taller* | *(the) tallest* |

- One-syllable adjectives ending *-ed* cannot take *-er*, *-est*. We use *more / most*:
  ***more bored**, (**the**) **most bored***
  ***more worried**, (**the**) **most worried***

**one-syllable and two-syllable adjectives ending in *-e***

These adjectives form the comparative and superlative by adding *-r* and *-st*:

| adjective | comparative | superlative |
|---|---|---|
| *safe* | *safer* | *(the) safest* |
| *able* | *abler* | *(the) ablest* |
| *close* | *closer* | *(the) closest* |
| *gentle* | *gentler* | *(the) gentlest* |
| *polite* | *politer* | *(the) politest* |

- Two-syllable adjectives ending in *-e* also form the comparative and superlative using *more* and *most*:
  ***more gentle**, (**the**) **most polite***

**one-syllable adjectives ending in one vowel and a consonant**

Most one-syllable adjectives ending in a short vowel and a consonant form the comparative and superlative by doubling the consonant and then adding *-er* and *-est*:

| adjective | comparative | superlative |
|---|---|---|
| *big* | *bigger* | *(the) biggest* |
| *fat* | *fatter* | *(the) fattest* |
| *dim* | *dimmer* | *(the) dimmest* |

- One-syllable words ending with a long vowel before the consonant do not double the consonant:

| adjective | comparative | superlative |
|---|---|---|
| *great* | *greater* | *greatest* |
| *late* | *later* | *latest* |
| *cheap* | *cheaper* | *cheapest* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## two-syllables adjectives

Two-syllable adjectives can form the comparative and superlative with either *-er* and *-est* or *more* and *most*. (For adjectives ending in *-e*, see p. 152.) Here are examples of two-syllable adjectives:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***clever*** | ***common*** | ***handsome*** |
| ***hollow*** | ***narrow*** | ***pleasant*** |
| ***shallow*** | ***stupid*** | ***tired*** |

**two-syllables adjectives ending in *-y***

These form the comparative and superlative by changing the *-y* into *-i* and adding *-er* and *-est*:

| adjective | comparative | superlative |
|---|---|---|
| *angry* | *angrier* | *(the) angriest* |
| *busy* | *busier* | *(the) busiest* |
| *happy* | *happier* | *(the) happiest* |

- The comparative of *dry* can take two forms:
  ***dry*** ***drier*** ***driest*** (more usual)
  ***dry*** ***dryer*** ***driest***

**other two-syllable adjectives, and adjectives with more than two syllables**

Most of these form the comparative and superlative with *more* and *most*:

| adjective | comparative | superlative |
|---|---|---|
| *careless* | *more careless* | *the most careless* |
| *expensive* | *more expensive* | *the most expensive* |
| *intelligent* | *more intelligent* | *the most intelligent* |

## irregular adjectives

Here are examples:

| adjective | comparative | superlative |
|---|---|---|
| *good* | *better* | *(the) best* |
| *bad* | *worse* | *(the) worst* |
| *little* | *less* | *(the) least* |
| *much* | *more* | *(the) most* |
| *many* | *more* | *(the) most* |
| *far* | *farther* | *(the) furthest* |
| *old* | *older*<br>*elder* | *(the) oldest*<br>*(the) eldest* |

## further / furthest, farther / farthest

We use *further / furthest* and *farther / farthest* to talk about distances:

*We'd better not go any **further / farther** today.*
*Australia is the **furthest / farthest** I've ever been.*
*Our new house is **further / farther** from the school than our old one.*

- *Further* can also mean 'more' or 'extra'. We cannot use *farther* in these expressions:
  *Stop playing inside before you do any **further** damage.* (= additional damage)
  *For **further** information, please write to the above address.* (= more information)
  *She went on to **further** education.* (= education after secondary school)
- We use *elder / eldest* for members of our family:
  *I get on well with my **elder** sister.*
- We do not use *than* with *elder*:
  ✗ ~~*He is **elder than** me.*~~
  ✓ *He is **older than** me.*

## less (than); the least (of)

We can show negative comparisons using *less (than)* and *the least (of)*:

*The film was **less** successful (**than** his previous one).*
*It was **the least** successful (**of** all his films).*

## far; much; a lot

To add emphasis to a comparison, we can use *far, much* or *a lot* with the comparative adjective. There is very little difference in meaning, although *far* is often stronger:

*Bill is **much richer than** Tom.*
*Bill is **a lot richer than** Tom.*
*Bill is **far richer than** Tom.*

## The (more) ... the (more) ...

This structure shows that two comparisons change at the same time:

***The older** I get, **the more forgetful** I become.*
***The less interesting** the subject is, **the more bored** the students become.*

## as ... as ...

See page 168.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space with a word from the list. You may use the words more than once. The first (0) has been given as an example.**

*lot youngest eldest livelier expensive more most (much) than the as better less older*

# Woof or Miaow?

Cats, as we all know, are ....much.... (0) quieter than dogs and a ..... (1) smaller, so when my wife and I were debating whether to buy our ..... (2) son a pet it seemed ..... (3) sensible to choose a kitten ..... (4) a puppy. Our ..... (5) son, who is now sixteen, had a tortoise when he was little but found it the ..... (6) boring pet on earth. At least a kitten would do ..... (7) interesting things ..... (8) a tortoise.

However, the little spaniel we saw in one shop was, my wife said, ..... (9) cutest thing she had ever seen. I didn't argue because, although cats are not ..... (10) noisy as dogs, they are much ..... (11) entertaining. Dogs, they say, are also ..... (12) intelligent. Cats, like tortoises, don't do much: they tend to just sit around all day, looking as enigmatic ..... (13) a sphinx – and just as dull. Dogs are much ..... (14) and we both felt young Edward would learn more from that frisky little spaniel ..... (15) he would from any cat. The ..... (16) Edward grew ..... (17) more difficult it became to keep him occupied and we both felt a dog would be a ..... (18) companion for him from that point of view. Admittedly, cats are ..... (19) demanding and also less ..... (20) to look after but we thought that such a beautiful spaniel was worth it.

*Actions speak **louder than** words.*
***The best** things in life are free.*
***The higher** you climb, **the further** you fall.*

**2 Complete the sentences with a comparative or superlative form, adding any words that are needed. You may use some words twice.**

*boring warm simple good wonderful lucky intelligent comfortable hot old far difficult cheap bad interesting*

1 This exercise is too easy – can't we try a ..... one?
2 England's too cold in the spring – let's go to Spain where it's ..... .
3 She comes top in all the exams – she must be ..... girl in the class.
4 The temperature in July reaches forty-four degrees – it's ..... month of the year.
5 Let's buy this video – it doesn't cost *that* much – it's ..... the other one.
6 This pen's not very good – I'd like a ..... one, please.
7 When I passed my driving test, it was the ..... day of my life.
8 Lying down in bed is ..... sitting on a hard chair.
9 Our youngest son doesn't want to be a teacher unlike his ..... brother.
10 Australia is much ..... from Europe than I thought.
11 I could hardly keep awake – it was ..... film I've ever seen.
12 The rules of this game are too complicated. Can we play something .....?
13 She's ..... person I know – she is always winning prizes in lotteries.
14 A couple of miles is ..... I can walk. Then we'll have to catch the bus.
15 I have a ..... headache today than I did yesterday.
16 This is ..... restaurant in town; I'm never coming here again.
17 I can't do this test – can you give me a ..... one?
18 She was the ..... person at the party and I sat next to her all evening. It was awful!



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 9b adjectives followed by prepositions

The following are common adjective + preposition combinations:

| examples of adjectives | + preposition |
|---|---|
| *angry, annoyed, anxious, certain, confident, excited, happy, pleased, right, sorry, upset, nervous* | ***about*** |
| *amazed, angry, annoyed, bad, excellent, good, hopeless, lucky, skilled, skilful, surprised, useless*<br>✗ ~~*I am **surprised for** his behaviour.*~~<br>✓ *I am **surprised at** his behaviour.* | ***at*** |
| *amused, bored, impressed, shocked, surprised* | ***by*** |
| *famous, late, ready, sorry, responsible, suitable* | ***for*** |
| *absent, different, safe, tired* | ***from*** |
| *interested, involved*<br>✗ ~~*I am **interested for** buying a new computer.*~~<br>✓ *I am **interested in** buying a new computer.* | ***in*** |
| *keen, reliant* | ***on*** |
| *afraid, ashamed, aware, capable, certain, confident, critical, envious, fond, full, guilty, incapable, jealous, kind, nice, proud, scared, short, stupid, sure, suspicious, terrified, tired, typical*<br>✗ ~~*I am **proud for** my son.*~~<br>✓ *I am **proud of** my son.*<br>✗ ~~*I am **tired from** my job.*~~<br>✓ *I am **tired of** my job.* | ***of*** |
| *accustomed, engaged, generous, inferior, kind, married, polite, possible, rude, superior, similar*<br>✗ ~~*She is **married with** him.*~~<br>✓ *She is **married to** him.* | ***to*** |
| *friendly, patronising* | ***towards*** |
| *angry, annoyed, bored, busy, content, crowded, delighted, disappointed, familiar, friendly, furious, happy, occupied, pleased, satisfied* | ***with*** |

Some adjectives can combine with more than preposition, for example:

*angry* ***about*** = angry because of a situation or action
*angry* ***at*** = angry with someone
*angry* ***towards*** = angry with someone

*tired* ***from*** = physically tired as a result of
*tired* ***of*** = bored or irritated by

*friendly* ***towards*** = behaving in a friendly way towards
*friendly* ***with*** = having a friendly relationship with

*sorry* ***for*** = feeling pity or sympathy for
*sorry* ***about*** = feeling ashamed or unhappy about

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space in the following sentences with an appropriate adjective. Add a preposition to each adjective. The first one has been done for you.**

*Example:* The jury found him guilty of murdering the old lady.

~~*guilty*~~ *involved* *disappointed* *engaged* *typical* *interested* *amused* *good* *right* *shocked* *absent* *proud* *ashamed* *different* *famous* *crowded*

1 Stop hitting that little boy – you should be ..... yourself!
2 I used to love watching football but I'm just not ..... it anymore.
3 You've been ..... so many classes that you'll have to repeat the year.
4 It's ..... him to arrive late – he's always doing it.
5 I'm afraid I'm not ..... his jokes – I find them in bad taste.
6 We were ..... this restaurant – the service was so slow.
7 He got ..... many clubs and societies and had no time to study.
8 He used such bad language I was really ..... what I heard.
9 Life in the south countries is very ..... life in the north countries. I prefer it.
10 He's very ..... maths and physics but hopeless at languages.
11 Greece is ..... the Parthenon and its beautiful islands.
12 The streets were ..... shoppers and you could hardly move.
13 You were ..... the party – you said it would be great fun.
14 She was ..... John for a long time but then she married someone else!
15 Well done for passing the exam! We're so ..... you.

**2 Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 1–5.**

1 I'm so sorry ..... your bereavement.
**A** about **B** by **C** at **D** with
2 Jackie was furious ..... Gary for being late again.
**A** towards **B** at **C** for **D** with
3 Don't ask me to play – I'm useless ..... computer games.
**A** with **B** at **C** in **D** about
4 This new washing machine is completely different ..... the other one.
**A** from **B** to **C** on **D** with
5 I'm afraid I'm not very keen ..... boiled cabbage.
**A** towards **B** to **C** on **D** for

*When a man is **tired of** London, he is **tired of** life.*
SAMUEL JOHNSON



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 9c order of adjectives

Here is the most common order of adjectives in English, though the order of adjectives of size, shape, age and colour can change:

| opinion | size | shape | age | colour | origin | material | purpose or type | noun |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *nice* | *big* | *round* | *old* | *blue* | *French* | *glass* | *fruit* | *bowl* |

- Variation is possible when we focus on a particular feature, for example we can say:
  *a round black shape* (= normal order) or:
  *a black round shape* (= focus on colour)
- We use a comma when there are two or more adjectives of equal importance before a noun:
  *The room was full of cold, hungry children.*
- We link the adjectives with *and* when they come after verbs like *be* and *feel*:
  ✗ ~~*He was **tall, dark, handsome**.*~~
  ✓ *He was **tall, dark and handsome.***
  *The children felt **cold and hungry**.*
  *The house was **large and impressive**.*
- We can put a comma or *and* between two adjectives that describe someone's character:
  *We had a clever **and** imaginative teacher.*
  *We had a clever, imaginative teacher.*
- When we use two or more colour adjectives before a noun, we put *and* between them:
  *They own a **red and white** car.*
  ✗ ~~*They were waving a **blue, white, red** flag.*~~
  ✓ *They were waving a **blue, white and red** flag.*

## Practice

**1** **Some of the following are in the wrong order. Tick those which are correct and rewrite the others in the correct order.**

1 a young black man .....
2 a dark tall man .....
3 a wooden big spoon .....
4 a long wooden spoon .....
5 a birthday big delicious cake .....
6 a big fat Italian opera singer .....
7 a frying large old pan .....
8 a pair of black leather riding boots .....
9 a pink silk beautiful blouse .....
10 a round large ball .....
11 an old big brick factory .....
12 an old wooden ugly desk .....

*Life is **nasty, brutish** and **short**.* HOBBES



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 9d adjectives of size, quantity and power

Here are some adjectives we frequently confuse:

### *strong* or *powerful*?

| word | meaning / use | example | collocations |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***strong*** | of physical strength: great | *He was a very **strong** man who could carry a heavy bag of cement.* | *strong hands; a strong back* |
| | of things: not easily broken or destroyed | *For this job you need a **strong** metal ladder.* | *a strong branch / pair of scissors* |
| | of a person: important, effective or determined | *We need a **strong** leader.* | *a strong member of of the team / candidate* |
| | of feelings and opinions: great | *She received **strong** support from her colleagues.* | *strong emotions / beliefs* |
| | of level or intensity: great | *The street lights are not **strong** enough.* | *a strong / friendship / influence / connection* |
| | of food or smell: having a great amount | *This coffee is a bit **strong** – could I have some milk in it?* | *a strong curry / taste / flavour* |
| ***powerful*** | important and able to control and influence | *The President is the most **powerful** man in America.* | *a powerful person / politician / organisation / country* |
| | physically strong | *Joe was a very **powerful**, well-built man.* | *powerful jaws / shoulders* |
| | of actions: having a great physical effect | *Ali had a **powerful** punch.* | *a powerful kick / blow / explosion* |
| | of actions: having a great effect on feelings or thoughts | *The lawyer outlined a **powerful** defence.* | *a powerful speech / argument / film* |
| | of a machine / weapon: very effective | *This Jaguar has a very **powerful** engine.* | *a powerful bomb / computer / weapon* |
| | of medicine: having a very strong effect | *The drug is more **powerful** than heroin.* | *a powerful medicine / remedy* |
| | sound or light: very easy to hear or see | *This musical instrument produces a **powerful** sound.* | *a powerful light / lamp* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## big, large or great?

| word | meaning / use | example | collocations |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***big*** | large in size | *They've got a **big** car.* | *a big house / grin / crowd* |
| | important | *Deciding on a new house is a **big** decision.* | *a big day / occasion / star* |
| | old or older | *You're a **big** girl now.* | *a big boy / brother / sister* |
| | successful | *Rap music was **big** in the 1980s.* | *big in Hollywood / in business / in show business / in the city* |
| | a lot | *He's a **big** gambler.* | *a big eater / drinker* |
| ***large*** | big in size | *Los Angeles is the second **largest** city in the United States.* | *a large shirt / family / amount / number / area / population* |
| | tall and wide | *He's a **large** friendly man.* | *a large person / woman / tree* |
| ***great*** | very large in amount | *I bought it at **great** cost.* | *a great deal / number / amount* |
| | very large in size | *A **great** storm blew up.* | *a great mountain / estate / wall* |
| | very important and influential | *Einstein was a **great** scientist.* | *a great painter / statesman / achievement / woman* |
| | a lot of | *She has **great** courage.* | *a great talent / great fun / danger* |
| | very serious | *The result was a **great** disappointment to me.* | *a great mistake / problem* |
| | very pleasant and enjoyable | *Isn't Max a **great** person?* | *a great film / time / view* |

## little, small or short?

| word | meaning / use | example | collocations |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***little*** | of an amount: or effect: not much | *We have only a **little** food left.* | *little money / attention / effect / reason / benefit* |
| | of a distance: not long | *It's a **little** way down the road.* | *a little walk / taxi-ride / distance* |
| | young, younger or youngest | *Come and meet my **little** sister.* | *a little brother / niece* |
| ***small*** | not large in size | *Oxford is a **small** city.* | *a small family / amount / size / area / man* |
| | minor | *It's only a **small** scratch.* | *a small wound / error / mistake / problem* |
| | of organisations or workers: not important or large | ***Small** industry has been most affected.* | *a small business / farmer / corner shop* |
| ***short*** | not long | *You look nice with **short** hair.* | *a short skirt / novel* |
| | of a person: not tall | *She's a **short** fat woman.* | *a short man / child* |
| | of time: not much | *Our holiday seemed so **short**.* | *a short time ago / short working hours* |
| | of a distance: not long | *It's a **short** distance away.* | *a short drive / journey / walk* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## high or tall?

| word | meaning / use | example | collocations |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***high*** | measuring a long distance from bottom to top | *The **highest** mountain in Scotland is Ben Nevis.* | *a high wall / fence / tower / heel* |
| | a long way from the ground | *The living room had a **high** ceiling.* | *a high shelf / the high jump* |
| | a large amount | *Many cities suffer from **high** levels of pollution.* | *a high salary / rent / price / tax* |
| | above the normal level | *The work must be done to a **high** standard.* | *a high temperature / speed / blood pressure; high hopes* |
| | having an important or powerful position | *What is the **highest** rank in the army?* | *a high honour; high society / office* |
| ***tall*** | of people, animals and some things: high and narrow | *Your son's getting **tall**, isn't he?* | *a tall giraffe / man / building / tower / tree / pillar / bottle* |

## weak, thin, slim or skinny?

| word | meaning / use | example | collocations |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***weak*** | not physically strong | *The illness had left her feeling tired and **weak**.* | *a weak man / woman / bridge* |
| | not working properly | *He has a **weak** heart.* | *weak eyes; a weak pulse* |
| | easily influenced | *She has such a **weak** personality.* | *a weak character* |
| | not very good at something | *He is **weak** at physics.* | *a weak subject / team* |
| | not strong or effective | *The plot of the film was **weak**.* | *a weak economy / currency / excuse / argument* |
| | of liquids having a little amount of taste | *This tea is rather **weak**, isn't it?* | *weak coffee / soup / juice* |
| ***thin*** | of things: not thick | *We need a **thin** nylon rope.* | *a thin jacket / slice / thin cloth* |
| | of people: not fat | *Quixote is tall and **thin**.* | *a thin person / arm / neck* |
| | of liquids: not thick | *You must put a **thin** coat of paint / varnish.* | *a thin soup; thin milk* |
| | not very difficult to see through | *The earlier morning landscape was covered with a **thin** mist.* | *a thin fog; thin smoke / clouds* |
| ***slim*** | very small | *He has only a **slim** chance of getting into university.* | *slim hopes / prospects / evidence* |
| | thin in a pleasant way | *I wish I were as **slim** as you.* | *a slim girl / model / figure / waistline* |
| ***skinny*** | too thin | *He was so **skinny** I wondered whether he ate anything at all.* | *a skinny person / arm / leg* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## last or latest?

| word | meaning / use | example | collocations |
|---|---|---|---|
| *last* | most recent in time | *I saw her **last** night.* | *last week / year / time* |
| | at the end | *I'm reading the **last** chapter.* | *the last train / bus / flight / dance* |
| | the only one remaining | *This is the very **last** bird of its kind.* | *the last chance / opportunity* |
| *latest* | most recent | *She was dressed in the **latest** fashion.* | *the latest gossip / film / news / discovery* |

## natural or physical?

| word | meaning / use | example | collocations |
|---|---|---|---|
| *natural* | not artificial or man-made | *Is that the **natural** colour of your hair?* | *a natural flavour; natural ingredients* |
| | being a quality sb is born with and not learned | *She shows a **natural** ability in the swimming pool.* | *a natural skill / tendancy / charm* |
| | normal, to be expected | *It was **natural** for her to be concerned about her children's education.* | *a natural reaction / response* |
| | of plants and animals | *I'm amazed at such a variety of species in our **natural** world.* | *natural history / natural sciences* |
| *physical* | (usually) concerning the body | *It will need a great **physical** effort to lift those boxes.* | *physical strength / energy / exercise; in good physical shape; a physical examination* |
| | that can be touched, real | *We must care for our **physical** environment.* | *the physical world; physical conditions* |

## strange or foreign?

| word | meaning / use | example | collocation |
|---|---|---|---|
| *strange* | unusual or surprising in a way that is difficult to explain | *We heard a **strange** noise.* | *strange behaviour / events / smells* |
| | not known or familiar | *There I was, alone in a **strange** city.* | *strange people; a strange country* |
| *foreign* | not from your country | *I thought she sounded **foreign**.* | *foreign tourists / visitors / students / languages* |
| | connected with other countries | *He's the Minister for **Foreign** Affairs.* | *foreign policy / trade* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Underline the best word in the following sentences.**

1 How *high / tall* is Athens above sea level?
2 He looks *slim / skinny* and handsome since he lost weight.
3 Some supermodels are far too *slim / skinny*. They look as if they haven't eaten for weeks.
4 The *last / latest* time I saw Rob was in Manchester.
5 Have you got the Nice Girls' *latest / last* album yet?
6 Don't worry – your feelings of depression are perfectly *natural / physical.*
7 These trousers are made of *strong / powerful* material so they won't tear easily.
8 He took the stick and broke it in two with his *powerful / strong* hands.
9 Come and look! There's a *large / great* view from this window.
10 How *great / big* is your house in the country?
11 Have you met my *small / little* sister?
12 The boys are getting *taller / higher* all the time.
13 I wish my legs were *thinner / skinnier.*
14 Does your country import a lot of *foreign / strange* goods?
15 I felt a bit *strange / foreign* when I took the pills for the first time.

**2 Fill each space in these sentences with an appropriate adjective from the list.**

*high* *last* *great* *large* *thin* *latest* *greatest* *largest* *weak* *natural*

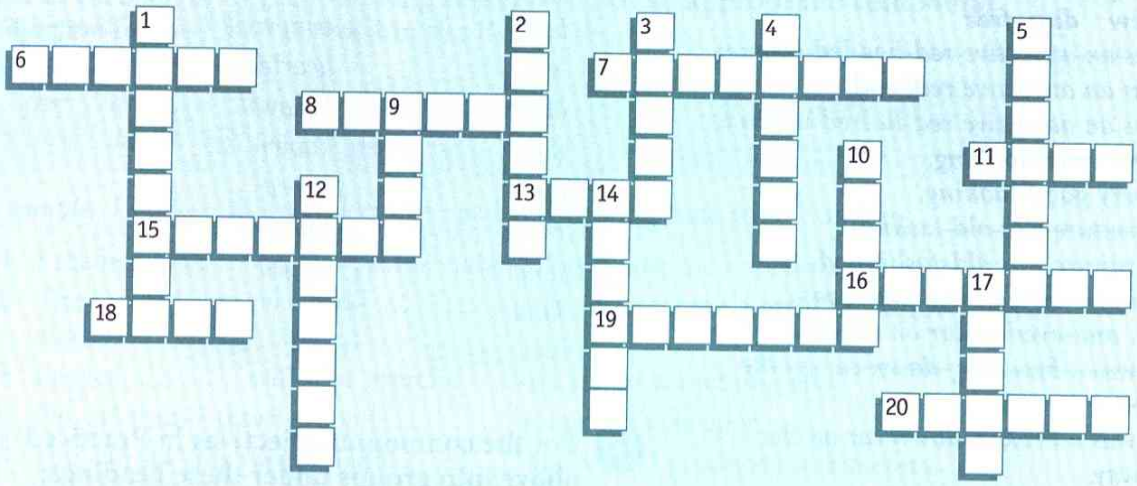
1 There were some ..... cliffs beside the sea.
2 The road was covered with a ..... layer of ice.
3 Who was the ..... person to see the man alive?
4 This car is the ..... model and much better than the previous one.
5 The bridge is much too ..... for all those trucks.
6 It's ..... for a child of his age to want his mother.
7 I'd love to visit the ..... Wall of China.
8 The T-shirt comes in small, medium and ..... .
9 Glasgow is the ..... city in Scotland but I prefer Edinburgh.
10 Rembrandt was one of the ..... painters who ever lived.

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Underline the word in each set which does NOT collocate with the word in capitals.**

1 BIG grin crowd power occasion sister filmstar business
2 STRONG faith tree friendship tool bomb tea muscles
3 GREAT leader discovery part area danger deal university
4 TALL child temperature tree giraffe skyscraper bottle house
5 HIGH speed hopes wall rent man heels flyer
6 LARGE amount collection occasion area tree family bottom
7 THIN layer chance soup paper neck person figure
8 SLIM girl hope waist cloth man chance evidence
9 LAST night time gossip bus chance animal dance
10 LATEST fashion film discovery year trend chapter news
11 SHORT man money dress story journey hair holiday
12 PHYSICAL strength world exercise energy plants effort conditions
13 SMALL distance town business mistake food problem cut
14 WEAK bridge clothes pulse heart argument character excuse

**4 Complete the crossword. The words are from 9d.**



**Across**

6 Most onions have a ..... flavour.
7 Take plenty of ..... exercise and eat more fruit.
8 The 'most recent' CD is the ..... release.
11 We can say buildings, people and trees are ..... .
13 We met on holiday ..... year.
15 For Poles, English is a ..... language.
16 The ..... area of the world is covered with sea water.
18 They have only a ..... chance of winning.
19 Is fair hair your ..... colour?
20 Is the dollar now ..... than the euro?

**Down**

1 Ferrari produces cars with very ..... engines.
2 I have very ..... reason to doubt that you are honest.
3 Doris Lessing has written excellent ..... stories.
4 Who is a ..... pop star than Madonna?
5 It can be lonely on your own in a ..... town.
9 She is much too ..... and should stop dieting.
10 He fell over but had only a ..... bruise on his arm.
12 Name the ..... mountain in the world.
14 Days without proper food left them so ..... .
17 Shakespeare wrote such ..... plays.

*A chain is no stronger than its **weakest** link.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 9e compound adjectives

## form

A compound adjective has two parts. We usually write it with a hyphen:
***red-haired*** ***green-eyed***

The second part of the compound adjective is often:

- a present participle:
  ***tight-fitting*** ***good-looking***
- a past participle:
  ***old-fashioned*** ***well-built*** ***badly maintained***
- a preposition:
  ***broken-down*** ***well-off***
- another adjective:
  ***brand-new*** ***duty-free***

✗ ~~*She was an attractive* ***red-headed*** *woman*~~.
✓ *She was an attractive* ***redhead***.
✓ *She was an attractive* ***red-haired*** *woman.*
✗ ~~*He is very* ***well-looking***~~.
✓ *He is very* ***good-looking***.
✗ ~~*The furniture was* ***old fashion***~~.
✓ *The furniture was* ***old-fashioned***.
✗ ~~*I saw a* ***one eye sailor*** *on the boat*~~.
✓ *I saw a* ***one-eyed sailor*** *on the boat.*
✗ ~~*There was a* ***breaking-down*** *car on the motorway*~~.
✓ *There was a* ***broken-down*** *car on the motorway.*

## use

We can use compound adjectives to describe

- physical appearance:
  ***broad-shouldered*** ***dark-haired*** ***good-looking***
- personality:
  ***good-tempered*** ***open-minded***
- places:
  ***built-up*** ***run-down*** ***wide-open***
- everyday objects:
  ***worn-out*** ***hand-made*** ***man-made***

For compound nouns, see 7e.

## Practice

**1 Match items from the two lists to make 20 compound adjectives. You need to use some words more than once.**

| | |
|---|---|
| *broad* | *minded* |
| *narrow* | *built* |
| *well* | *dressed* |
| *one* | *eyed* |
| *blond* | *haired* |
| *red* | *looking* |
| *good* | *handed* |
| *bad* | *tempered* |
| *left* | *hearted* |
| *absent* | *behaved* |
| *light* | *known* |
| *open* | *lipped* |
| *thin* | *fingered* |
| *long* | *legged* |
| *kind* | |

**2 Put the compound adjectives in Practice 1 above into groups under these headings:**

| physical appearance | personality |
|---|---|
| | |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Fill in each space with an appropriate compound adjective formed from the words in Practice 1 opposite.**

1 Although my grandmother is eighty, she's not at all ..... . She even thinks our modern habits are better than those in her youth.
2 Change those awful clothes you're wearing. You must be ..... for your interview.
3 You may think he's ugly but I find him quite ..... .
4 When he doesn't like something he starts shouting; he's very ..... .
5 Our children are very ..... at school. The teacher never has to tell them off.
6 He never remembers anything – he's very ..... .
7 She's such a ..... television personality that almost everybody recognises her in the street.
8 I was forced to write with my right hand even though I was ..... .
9 He's very ..... – perhaps it comes from doing all that weightlifting in the gym.
10 He's not blond at all. In fact, I would say he's almost ..... .

**4 Fill in each space in the following sentences with an appropriate compound adjective formed from a word in the list.**

*~~free~~ distance up built made going up off conditioned class badly sighted headed*

*Example:* I bought this CD duty-free as I was coming back from London.

1 I made a long-..... call to England and it cost me a fortune.
2 They seem to be very well-..... – at least they have a great big house and two expensive cars.
3 I'm fed..... with this exercise – can't we do something else?
4 On the train I travel second-..... because it's cheaper.
5 You can see this vase is hand-..... and wasn't produced in a factory.
6 He's a really relaxed guy – so easy-..... .
7 I live in a built-..... area of the city which is very noisy and full of traffic.
8 The office is air-..... so it's very cool, even in the summer.
9 He's so proud – I've rarely met anyone so big-..... . He has a really high opinion of himself.
10 I want to get my eyes tested – I've become really short-..... lately.
11 A ..... maintained car won't have a reliable engine.
12 There isn't much grass in the .....-up areas of the city.

*There are three golden rules if you want to be a **first-class** public speaker: stand up, speak up, shut up.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 10

## AGENDA

### Grammar

10a comparisons
10b *so* and *such*; *too*, *very*, *enough*
10c *quite*, *rather*, etc; linking verbs

### Vocabulary

10d adjectives which are similar
10e suffixes (4)

# Entry test

**Underline the correct answer in 1–5.**

1 She's not as intelligent *as / than* her sister.
2 The film was not *such / so* good as I had expected.
3 The twins don't wear the *same / like* clothes as each other.
4 She works *as / like* an accountant in a local bank.
5 She is getting richer and *richer / more rich* every year.

**Now look at 10a on page 168.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.**

6 We hadn't expected the trip to be ..... exhausting.
**A** such **B** so **C** such a **D** like this
7 ..... behaviour will get you into trouble with the director.
**A** Such **B** Such a **C** So **D** Like
8 There were ..... people at the party there was no room to move.
**A** so much **B** that much **C** so many **D** such many
9 The bill was much ..... expensive for me to pay on my own.
**A** very **B** too **C** high **D** quite
10 I don't have ..... to speak now.
**A** enough of time **B** plenty time **C** enough time **D** a time

**Now look at 10b on page 170.**

SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.**

11 She's ..... sensitive to other people's problems.
A a quite B quite a C quite D the quite

12 It was ..... good result but you could've done better.
A rather B a bit C a little D a fairly

13 We had ..... nice meal last night.
A very B too C rather a D quite

14 She's ..... too thin for her part in the play.
A lot B a bit C little too D little

15 She ..... rather moody at the moment.
A behaves B likes C grows D seems

**Now look at 10c on page 173.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct adjective A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.**

16 I felt so ..... when my parents turned up at John's party!
A shy of B shameful C shamed D embarrassed

17 I felt so ..... as I sat outside the dentist's, thinking it would be really painful.
A bad-tempered B embarrassed C nervous D frightening

18 I would never cheat – I would be ..... of being caught.
A worried B anxious C afraid D nervous

19 We watched a very ..... programme on television last night which made us laugh a lot.
A amusing B enjoying C tiring D sympathetic

20 Don't be so ..... – you can call me Pete.
A formal B typical C tiresome D afraid

**Now look at 10d on page 176.**

SCORE _____

**For questions 21–25, use the word given in capitals at the end of the line to form a word that fits in the space.**

21 Your handwriting is completely illegible – you shouldn't be so ..... when you write. CARE

22 Do you have any books ..... for young children? SUIT

23 Although she was told the operation would be ..... , she still felt very nervous about it. PAIN

24 I didn't mean to upset you – perhaps you're just a little too ..... . SENSE

25 She ought to write things down if she's so ..... . FORGET

**Now look at 10e on page 179.**

SCORE _____

TOTAL SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 10a comparisons

### as ... as ...

We use *as ... as ...* to say two things are similar or equal in some way. The pattern is:
*as* + adjective + *as*, or *as* + adverb + *as*.

- We can omit the second part, *as ...* , if the comparison is clear:
  *Mary is **as** tall **as** Jane but she's not **as** tall **as** Andrew.*
  *She's not **as** tall (**as** him / **as** he is).*
  *John didn't do **as** well **as** Helen in the exam.*
  *John didn't do **as** well (**as** her* / **as** she did).*
  * This is considered informal.
- We use *as ... as*, but not *as ... so*, in comparisons:
  ✗ ~~*Tea isn't as strong so coffee.*~~
  ✓ *Tea isn't **as** strong **as** coffee.*

### as + many / much / little / few + as

We use *as* + *many / much / little / few* + *as* in comparisons without *a*. We cannot use *more / less / several* etc:
*Bill doesn't have **as much** money **as** Anne.*
*If she had **as little** money **as** he did, she would think differently.*
*Bill doesn't eat **as many** meals **as** she does.*
*If she had **as few** meals **as** Bill, she would be thinner.*

### the same (as)

We always use *the* in comparisons with *same*:
*Their car is **the same** (**as** ours).*
*Peter is **the same** age (**as** George).*

- We can emphasise *the same* using *exactly*:
  *Their car is **exactly the same** (**as** yours).*
  *Peter is **exactly the same** age (**as** George).*

### so ... as ...

In negative statements we can use *so ... as* instead of *as ... as*:
*Computers are not quite **as / so** expensive **as** they were.*

- In positive sentences and in questions we cannot use *so ... as*:
  ✗ ~~*She worked **so hard as** she could to finish early.*~~
  ✓ *She worked **as hard as** she could to finish early.*
  ✗ ~~*Could you try and get here **so quickly as** you can, please?*~~
  ✓ *Could you try and get here **as quickly as** you can, please?*

### like and as

We use *like* and *as* to say things are similar. We use *like* to make a comparison, and *as* to describe a position or function:

| form | example |
|---|---|
| ***like*** + noun | *He runs **like** the wind.* |
| ***like*** + pronoun | *My brother is just **like** me.* |
| ***like*** + noun | ***Like** the Greeks, Italians use a lot of olive oil.* |
| ***as*** + noun (phrase) | *She works **as** a doctor.* |
| ***as*** + noun (phrase) | ***As** your teacher, I advise you to work harder.* |
| ***as*** + noun (phrase) | *Don't use your shirt **as** a towel!* |

- *As* + verb phrase means 'as thoroughly as':
  *No one knows these islands **as** I do.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## repeating comparatives

We can repeat the comparative adjective to say that something is changing (increasing or decreasing) all the time, usually with the Present Continuous:

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| comparative adj + *and* + comparative adj | changing all the time | *She was getting* ***more and more*** *irritated.* |
| *the* + comparative adj + verb + *the* + comparative adj + verb | two things change at the same time | ***The older*** *I get,* ***the wiser*** *I become.*<br>***The less*** *intelligent they are,* ***the more*** *difficult they will find the test.* (See page 153.) |
| *the* + comparative adj + *the* + comparative adj | used in common phrases | ***the bigger the better***<br>***the sooner the better*** |

## Practice

**1 Look at the information in the table and complete the sentences about Bob and Tony using the prompts given.**

| The twins: | Bob | Tony |
|---|---|---|
| date of birth | 22 August | 22 August |
| time of birth | 11.10 am | 11.20 am |
| weight at birth | 3 kilos | 3.5 kilos |
| hair | fair | fair |
| resembles | mum | dad |
| height now | 1.90 | 1.93 |
| school | Central College | Central College |
| geography | A | B |
| maths | C+ | B |
| English | D | D |
| history | A | A |
| occupation | unemployed | businessman (coal miner) |

1 Date of birth: Bob was born on the same day ..... .

2 Birthday: Tony's birthday is ..... Bob's.

3 Time of birth: Tony was not born at ..... .

4 Weight: At birth, Bob was not ..... Tony.

5 Hair: Bob has the same ..... Tony.

6 School: Tony went to ..... Bob.

7 Geography: Tony was not as good at ..... .

8 Maths: Bob was not as ..... .

9 English: Bob was just as bad ..... Tony was.

10 History: Bob was ..... Tony was.

11 Height: Bob is not ..... Tony is.

12 Money: Bob doesn't have as much ..... has.

13 Appearance: Bob looks like ..... but Tony looks ..... .

14 Occupation: Tony works ..... .

15 Success: Bob has not been ..... Tony has.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 10b so and *such*; too, very, enough

## so and *such*

We use *so* and *such* to say something is similar to something we have already mentioned. We use these words in the following patterns:

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***so*** + adjective | very | *It's **so** hot in here – can't we open a window?* |
| ***so*** + adj + (***that***) | of that kind causing ... | *My car is **so** old (**that**) I can't get any spare parts for it.* |
| ***so*** + adverb | to that extent | *I wish you wouldn't talk **so** much.* |
| ***so*** + adverb + (***that***) | of that kind causing ... | *She drives **so** fast (**that**) nobody can keep up with her.* |
| ***so*** + ***many / much / little / few*** | emphasis on quantity | *How did you make **so much** money?* |
| ***so*** + ***many / much / little / few*** + noun (phrase) + (***that***) | emphasis on quantity causing ... | *They were **so many** people waiting in the queue **that** we went home again.* |
| ***such*** + noun (phrase) | of that kind | ✗ ~~*We were not prepared for so weather.*~~<br>✓ *We were not prepared for **such** weather.*<br>*She hadn't expected **such** a welcome.* |
| ***such*** + adj + countable / uncountable noun | very | *She's got **such** lovely hair.*<br>*We ate **such** delicious food.* |
| ***such*** + adj + plural noun | of that kind | *We've never paid **such** high taxes before.* |
| ***such*** (***a/an***) + adj + noun + (***that***) | of that kind causing ... | *It was **such a** hot day (**that**) we took off our T-shirts.* |

## too, very, enough

*Too* means 'more than is reasonable or bearable'.
*Very* means 'a lot'. Compare:

*I was **too** tired.* (= so I didn't do any work)
*I was **very** tired!* (= but I could still do some work)
✗ ~~*I was too happy when I received your letter.*~~
✓ *I was **very** happy when I received your letter.*

- We do not use *very* with adjectives that already have a strong meaning:
  ✗ ~~*Meno Park in Tokyo is very huge.*~~
  ✓ *Meno Park in Tokyo is **huge**.*
  ✓ *Meno Park in Tokyo is **absolutely huge**.*

See also 10c.

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

We use *enough* and *too* in the following patterns:

| form | example |
|---|---|
| ***enough*** + noun | *Do we have **enough** cheese for a pizza?* |
| ***enough*** + noun + *to*-infinitive | *Do you have **enough** money to buy the book?* |
| ***not*** + adj + ***enough*** + *to*-infinitive | *I'm **not** clever **enough** to study medicine.* |
| ***not*** + adverb + ***enough*** | *You are**n't** driving quickly **enough** – we'll be late.* |
| ***too*** + adj / adverb | *I can't drink this – it's **too** hot.*<br>*I can't keep up with you – you walk **too** quickly.* |
| ***too*** + adj + *to*-infinitive | *The coffee was **too** hot to drink.* |
| ***too*** + adj + ***for*** + sb + *to*-infinitive | *The coffee was **too** hot **for** me to drink.* |
| ***too*** + adverb + ***for*** + sb + *to*-infinitive. | *He walked **too** quickly **for** the children to keep up with him.* |

## Practice

**1 Match the two halves to make correct sentences.**

*Example:* The pianist played so badly that ...g.....

(The pianist played so badly that .....)
1 She was so clever that .....
2 The food was so bad (that) .....
3 She's got so many clothes .....
4 It's such a tiny kitchen that .....
5 He eats so much sugar that .....
6 He talks so much rubbish .....

a I don't know how you can stand him.
b I don't have to do much to keep it clean.
c nobody could eat it.
d his teeth will rot.
e all the universities wanted her.
f she never wears the same thing twice.
(g the audience walked out.)

**2 Underline the correct phrase in the following sentences.**

1 We had to pay *a high such price / such a high price* for coffee in London.
2 Passing my driving test was *such a / a so* good feeling!
3 He had *such / such a* bad breath no woman would go near him.
4 We had *a such / such an* awful day that we wouldn't do it again.
5 She loved him *such / so* deeply she couldn't bear it when he was away.
6 There were *so few / such a few* people there, they nearly cancelled the performance.
7 The film was *such a / so* scary I nearly left the cinema.
8 I had *so many / so much* things to do I didn't know where to start.
9 It was *a so / such a* lovely day we took a picnic to the park.
10 There was *so much / such* noise I could hardly hear myself think.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Complete the following sentences with *too, enough, very, so* or *such*.**

1 It's much ..... hot in here – turn the heating down.
2 If you've had ..... food, I'll take the plates away.
3 She doesn't speak Spanish well ..... to order a meal on her own.
4 The food was much ..... salty to eat.
5 That's a ..... beautiful piece of music. What is it?
6 I don't understand native speakers because they speak ..... quickly.
7 You're not writing quickly ..... – the test is nearly over.
8 I don't have ..... room in the house to put you up.
9 The film was ..... good. I wouldn't mind seeing it again.
10 We're ..... different characters I don't know how we'll manage to get on.

**4 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence using the word given. Do not change the word given. Use between two and five words, including the word given.**

1 We were caught by surprise by the cold weather.
**such**
We ..... weather.

2 I didn't have the strength to carry the case on my own.
**heavy**
The case was ..... carry on my own.

3 The shelf was too high for me to reach.
**tall**
I ..... reach the shelf.

4 I cried because the film was very sad.
**so**
The film was ..... cry.

5 We can't hear her because her voice is very soft.
**softly**
She ..... can't hear her.

6 John's marks were too low for the university.
**high**
John's marks ..... for the university.

7 If there had been fewer people in the queue we would have waited.
**so**
There ..... in the queue that we decided not to wait.

8 He got drunk because the wine in the restaurant was very strong.
**strong**
The wine ..... he got drunk.

9 If this soup was not so hot I could drink it now.
**for**
This soup is too ..... drink now.

10 The ticket was too expensive for us.
**enough**
We didn't ..... a ticket.

*An acquaintance is someone you know* ***well enough*** *to borrow from but not* ***well enough*** *to lend to.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 10c quite, rather, etc; linking verbs

## a bit / a little, fairly, quite, rather, very

These have meanings which range from 'slightly' (marked (-) below) to very strong (marked +++):

| *She's **a bit /a little** tall.* | *She's **fairly** tall.* | *She's **quite** tall.* | *She's **rather** tall.* | *She's **very** tall.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| (-) | + | + | ++ | +++ |

They can be followed by a number of structures:

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***a bit*** + adj | slightly | *She's **a bit** short for the team.* |
| ***a little*** + adj | slightly | *She's **a little** short for the team.* |
| ***fairly*** + adj / + *-ing* | = quite | *She's **fairly** tall.* |
| ***a fairly*** + adj + noun | = quite | *It's **a fairly** good road.* |
| ***quite*** + adj / *-ing* | not very but more than slightly | *She's **quite** clever.* |
| ***quite a*** + adj + noun | to some extent | *She's **quite a** clever person.*<br>✗ ~~*It was **a quite** rude answer.*~~<br>✓ *It was **quite a** rude answer.* |
| ***quite a*** + noun | a big (used for emphasis) | *It was **quite a** surprise.* |
| ***quite*** + verb | to some extent | *I **quite** like coffee.* |
| ***rather*** + adj / adv | to some extent by not as much as very | *She's **rather** clever.*<br>*He did **rather** badly in the test.* |
| ***rather a*** (+ adj) + noun (phrase) | a fairly big | *It came as **rather a** (big) surprise.* |
| ***rather*** + verb | quite a lot (= formal) | *I **rather** like her.* |
| ***very*** + adj / adv | a lot (used for emphasis) (See 10b.) | *I'm **very** sorry.*<br>*You did **very** badly in the test.* |

- *Quite* is much less strong than *very*. Compare:
  *She's **very** clever. She's **quite** clever.*
- *Quite* is stronger than *a little*:
  *She's **a little** greedy. She's **quite** greedy.*
- *Quite* + adjective / adverb can also mean 'completely':
  *No, thanks, I won't have any more to eat. I'm **quite full**.* (= completely full)
  *Yes, I'm **quite certain** he is the same man.* (= absolutely certain)
- Here are some common combinations with *quite* meaning 'completely':
  ***quite amazing*** ***quite clear*** ***quite right***
  ***quite safe*** ***quite true*** ***quite wrong***
- We can use *rather / a bit / a little* before comparative forms:
  *The new house is **rather / a bit / a little** smaller than the old one.*
- We use *quite as... (as...)* or *not quite as / so... (as...)* to make comparisons:
  *Tea is **not quite as** enjoyable as coffee.*
  *Maria **isn't quite as / so** tall.*
- We use *very* with adjectives ending in *ful*, but not *less* (see 10e).



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## linking verbs

A linking verb joins a subject to an adjective or a noun phrase. The following are linking verbs:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***appear*** | ***feel*** | ***keep*** | ***sound*** |
| ***be*** | ***get*** | ***look*** | ***stay*** |
| ***become*** | ***go*** | ***seem*** | ***taste*** |
| ***come*** | ***grow*** | ***smell*** | ***turn*** |

- We can use many adjectives after linking verbs:
  *They didn't want to* ***look suspicious.***
  *I* ***feel sick.***
  *He* ***seems happy.***
  *This* ***tastes awful.***
- We can use *to be* + adjective after some linking verbs:
  *The house* ***seems to be empty.***
  *The children* ***appeared to be hungry.***
- We can also use a past participle after some of them:
  *She* ***looks depressed.***
  *Their row* ***seemed forgotten.***
- Here is a summary of the patterns:

| form | example |
|---|---|
| linking verb + adj | *I* ***feel sick.***<br>*This* ***smells good.*** |
| linking verb + *to be* + adj | *The fridge* ***seems to be empty.***<br>*He* ***appears to be French.*** |
| linking verb + past participle | *I* ***feel depressed.***<br>*The mattress* ***looks so worn.*** |

(See also 13c.)

## Practice

**1 Rewrite the following sentences correctly.**

1 It was fairly good day so we went for a walk.
.....
2 Wembley Stadium is very enormous.
.....
3 He's rather a noisy in class.
.....
4 She's always been a quite hard-working.
.....
5 I fairly like the theatre but I prefer films.
.....
6 John is quite more talkative than his brother.
.....
7 Yes, I fairly agree with everything you say.
.....
8 It came as quite shock to get home and find the house burgled.
.....
9 I'm afraid I found the film bit boring.
.....
10 The test seems be quite easy.
.....

**2 Fill in each space in these sentences, using an appropriate adjective from the list.**

*long harder sour experienced young certain healthy worried interesting safe disappointed unpleasant strong careless nice awful grey pleased*

1 The film was quite ..... but a bit too ..... .
2 We had quite a .....time at the party.
3 She's an ..... driver but a bit ..... .
4 I'm quite ..... you will pass the test if you work a little ..... .
5 Don't look so ..... – I promise you I'm quite a ..... driver.
6 It came as rather an ..... surprise to get a bill for £100.
7 I was very ..... indeed to get such a nice present but I felt ..... that you couldn't come to the party.
8 This milk has gone ..... – it smells ..... .
9 If you water the plants, they will grow ..... and ..... in a month or so.
10 Though his hair has turned ..... he seems to be quite ..... in other ways.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 1–5.**

1 She can be ..... bad-tempered first thing in the morning.
**A** quite **B** a quite **C** quite a **D** quite the

2 In fact she's ..... unpleasant much of the time.
**A** a rather **B** rather a **C** rather **D** rather to

3 That was ..... attempt but you still failed.
**A** fairly good **B** fairly **C** fairly a good **D** a fairly good

4 Forgive her – she can be ..... shy with strangers.
**A** little bit **B** a little **C** little a **D** a bit little

5 The film was ..... and my grandson screamed at one point.
**A** quite frightened **B** quite a fright **C** quite frighten **D** quite frightening

**4 Choose a correct form of one of the verbs in brackets to complete the sentences.**

1 Jana ..... so pleased to have won the competition. (**look, see**)
2 Finding a cure for breast cancer still ..... impossible. (**stay, seem**)
3 Avoiding illness is one thing, ..... healthy is another. (**sound, stay**)
4 I ..... quite exhausted after the race. (**keep, feel**)
5 He ..... to be completely innocent of all charges. (**look, appear**)

**5 Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.**

# A REPORT

Athens is becoming more and ..... (1) attractive to tourists. Although the city may seem to ..... (2) big and noisy, tourists can still find ..... (3) a lot of quiet places with a romantic atmosphere to enjoy a tasty Greek meal and listen ..... (4) traditional music. We found that the prices in the restaurants were ..... (5) reasonable, not ..... (6) expensive for the average tourist. The standards of hygiene appeared ..... (7) be fairly high and they seem to be getting ..... (8) rather than worse. The service was ..... (9) bit slow at times but the waiters were usually ..... (10) friendly. Indeed, sometimes they were a ..... (11) too friendly compared with what we were used to in other countries!

As for transport, the number of taxis in Athens is ..... (12) amazing and apart from the rush hour it is quite ..... (13) to get hold of one when you need it. We found the cost of getting around by taxi ..... (14) cheaper than in most European capitals but taxi-drivers can ..... (15) a bit rude at times.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 10d adjectives which are similar

### ashamed, shameful, shy or embarrassed?

- *Ashamed* means 'guilty and disgusted with yourself because of something bad that you have done':
  *People who steal from the poor should be **ashamed** of themselves.*
- *Shameful* describes behaviour which people think should make you feel ashamed:
  *The cruel way some people treat their pets is **shameful**.*
- *Shy* means 'anxious about talking to people, especially people you don't know':
  *Jimmy is very **shy** with adults but he's fine with other children.*
- *Embarrassed* means 'feeling socially uncomfortable and nervous':
  *You can imagine how **embarrassed** I felt when I couldn't pay the bill.*

### anxious, nervous, worried or bad-tempered?

- *Anxious* means 'very worried because you fear something bad may happen or may have happened':
  *Their daughter hadn't come home from school and they were **anxious** about her safety.*
- *Nervous* means 'worried because you are in, or about to enter, a stressful situation':
  *I was so **nervous** about the exam that I couldn't sleep.*
- *Worried* means 'unhappy because you have, or expect to have, a problem':
  *She was **worried** that the hotel bill was going to be too high.*
- *Bad-tempered* means 'easily annoyed and angry':
  *The farmer was a **bad-tempered** old man who wouldn't let anyone cross his land.*

### afraid, scared or frightened?

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***afraid*** + *to*-infinitive | unwilling to do something because you are anxious about what may happen | *She was **afraid** to eat it in case it was poisonous.* |
| ***afraid of*** + noun / *-ing* | anxious about something which might happen | *Most criminals are **afraid of** being caught.* |
| ***scared of*** + noun | very nervous or afraid of something or somebody | *I've always been **scared of** dogs.* |
| ***scared of*** + *-ing* | very nervous or afraid of doing something | *He's **scared of** going home alone.* |
| ***scared*** + *to*-infinitive | very anxious or afraid to do something | *She lay on the floor trembling, too **scared** to move.* |
| ***frightened*** (***of***) + noun | nervous or afraid (of something) | *He had a **frightened** look on his face.* |
| ***frightened of*** + *-ing* | nervous or afraid of doing something | *I was **frightened of** being left by myself.* |
| ***frightened*** + *to*-infinitive | very anxious or afraid to do something | *She was too **frightened** to look out of the plane.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## amusing or enjoyable?

- *Amusing* means 'causing you to smile or laugh':
  *The speaker was embarrassed when the microphone stopped working but the audience found it **amusing**.*
- *Enjoyable* means 'pleasant and causing you to feel happy':
  *It was one of the most **enjoyable** holidays we've ever had.*

## sympathetic or likeable?

- *Sympathetic* means 'showing you understand the problems of others':
  *He expected people to be **sympathetic** because his mother had died.*
- *Likeable* means 'easy to like':
  *He's a selfish, greedy little man and not at all **likeable**.*

## tiring or tiresome?

- *Tiring* means 'causing tiredness':
  *Staring at a computer screen all day can be very **tiring**, can't it Helen?*
- *Tiresome* means 'annoying or irritating':
  *I find these so-called jokes extremely **tiresome**.*

## typical, usual or ordinary?

- *Typical* means 'having the main characteristics of a group or thing; behaving in the usual way':
  *It was a **typical** English summer – rain every second day!*
  *It was **typical** of him to get angry.*
- *Usual* means 'the same as what happens most of the time':
  *Is it **usual** for lectures to start so early?*
  *I'll meet you at the **usual** time.*
- *Ordinary* means 'without any special qualities or features':
  *It was just an **ordinary** house in an **ordinary** street.*

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space in the following sentences with an appropriate form of a word in the list. Some words do not need to change.**

*enjoy shy embarrass tire worry bad temper ordinary shame* (x 2) *amuse like afraid*

1 You may laugh, but I don't find anything ..... about finding a snake in your tent in the middle of the night.
2 Gardening may be hard work but it can also be ..... . I think it's a wonderful way to spend one's time.
3 I needed a lift home but I was too ..... to ask the other guests because they were almost strangers.
4 I was ..... of having lied to my mother. I shouldn't have done it.
5 When I speak English I sometimes feel a bit ....., especially when I make mistakes.
6 The violent way he treated his children in public was .....
7 'I am not ..... about money,' he said. 'I've got plenty.'
8 She gets very ..... when the house is a mess, and starts shouting at the kids.
9 He says that he is ..... of losing his job if the company decides to get rid of staff.
10 If Philip weren't so arrogant he'd be quite .....; as it is, few people like him.
11 We've all had a very ..... day – let's go to bed.
12 Although he's a famous millionaire, he behaves like an ..... man.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Underline the correct phrase in the following sentences.**

1 I have always been *afraid of / afraid to* spiders.
2 If you were threatened, would you be *too afraid / too afraid to* scream?
3 Ben hates hospitals – he's so *afraid / afraid of* and always faints.
4 I can't watch the match – I'm *afraid of losing / afraid to lose.*
5 It was pitch dark and we were too *scared to / scared of* move.
6 Leave the light on, the baby's *scared of / scared to* the dark.
7 I won't go near the fruit trees because I'm *frightened by / frightened of* bees.
8 The teacher was always late but we were too *frightened to / frightened of* complain.
9 I'll apply even though I'm *frightened to be / frightened of being* rejected.
10 I refused to jump off the edge because I was so *frightened / frightened to.*

**3 Fill in each space with an appropriate word from the list.**

*nervous embarrassed enjoyable bad-tempered usual ordinary anxious formal amusing typical shy afraid tiresome ashamed sympathetic*

# Culture shock

Penny, a friend of mine, has just got back from a trip to Japan. She had a very ..... (1) time but there were occasions, she says, when the rather ..... (2) behaviour of her hosts led to moments of cultural confusion, and at times she even felt ..... (3) by some of the mistakes she made. For example, it is ..... (4) for Europeans to call each other by their first names, but this is not the ..... (5) way of addressing people in Japan. Now, because Penny was ..... (6) to show everyone how friendly she was, she called everyone by their first name. Most people were ..... (7) because she was obviously a foreigner but some became quite ..... (8) and showed little sympathy.

At first, Penny found bowing to people quite ..... (9) – she is, after all, an actress – but after a while it became a bit ..... (10) having to bow to everyone you met.

Penny is not at all ..... (11) – she loves meeting new people – but after the first few misunderstandings she was ..... (12) to open her mouth in case she offended someone. I myself am quite an experienced traveller, but I would feel ..... (13) about putting my foot in it in Japan because there even ..... (14 ) people observe the most elaborate rules of social behaviour – silence for example is nothing to be ..... (15) of in Japanese culture, but in the West we get very worried if there are even short periods of silence at social gatherings.

*It's not that I'm **afraid of death** – I just don't want to be there when it happens.*
WOODY ALLEN



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 10e suffixes (4)

Remember that we use most suffixes to change the part of speech of a word (see 1e, 3e, 4e, 12e, 13e):
*season* (noun) + ***al*** = *seasonal* (adjective)
*act* (noun) + ***ive*** = *active* (adjective)
*danger* (noun) + ***ous*** = *dangerous* (adjective)
Here, we examine other suffixes that form adjectives.

## *ful, less*

- We add *ful* to a noun to show that the quality exists:
  *She's very **careful** about what she eats.*
- We add *less* to a noun to show that the quality is lacking:
  *You shouldn't be so **careless** when you write.*

Here are common pairs of words which use *ful* and *less*:

| word | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***careful*** | paying attention | *She's very **careful** about what she eats.* |
| ***careless*** | not paying enough attention | *You shouldn't be so **careless** when you drive.* |
| ***harmful*** | dangerous | *All this traffic pollution is **harmful** to our health.* |
| ***harmless*** | not dangerous | *Don't be afraid – the dog is **harmless**, it won't bite.* |
| ***hopeful*** | full of hope | *The situation is difficult but I'm still **hopeful**.* |
| ***hopeless*** | without hope | *The situation is pretty **hopeless** – there's nothing we can do.* |
| ***painful*** | full of pain | *It will be a **painful** operation so they'll give her an anaesthetic.* |
| ***painless*** | without pain | *It will be a **painless** operation – she has nothing to worry about.* |
| ***thoughtful*** | being kind to others | *It was very **thoughtful** of you to make coffee for everybody else.* |
| ***thoughtless*** | unkind | *It was **thoughtless** of you to mention his illness. You know he doesn't like to think about it.* |
| ***useful*** | helping you to do or get something | *The tourist office gave us some **useful** advice about where to stay in Budapest.* |
| ***useless*** | not of any use | *The guide to the city was **useless** because it was years out of date.* |

- We can use *very* with adjectives ending in *ful*, but not *less*. We use *completely*, *utterly*, etc:
  *The injection was **very painful**.*
  *Did you think your dog was **completely harmless?***

- In the following, only one form, either *ful* or *less*, exists:
  ***dreadful*** ***forgetful*** ***grateful***
  ***skilful*** ***stressful*** ***successful***
  ***cloudless*** ***homeless*** ***ruthless***

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## able, ible

We add *able* or *ible* to a verb to form an adjective which shows that something can be done. Here are some examples:

| word | meaning/use | example |
|---|---|---|
| *drink* + ***able*** | safe to drink | *Is the water **drinkable** here?* |
| *wash* + ***able*** | able to be washed | *This shirt is machine **washable**.* |
| *rely* + ***able*** | able to be relied on | *She's a very **reliable** colleague.* |
| *suit* + ***able*** | appropriate | *This book is not **suitable** for children.* |
| *profit* + ***able*** | making a profit | *The business is not very **profitable**.* |
| *sense* + ***ible*** | reasonable | *I think that's a very **sensible** suggestion.* |

- Some adjectives ending in *able / ible* have a first part which does not exist by itself, especially those with *un*, for example:
  *unworkable palpable edible*

## ive

We can also form adjectives by adding *ive* to verbs or nouns (see page 240):

| word | meaning/use | example |
|---|---|---|
| *act* + ***ive*** | doing things | *It was an **active** holiday in the mountains.* |
| *expense* + ***ive*** | costing a lot of money | *Who bought you that **expensive** watch?* |

- Again, some of these adjectives have a first part which does not exist by itself, for example *pensive.*
- Some of these adjectives need *itive*, for example *sensitive* from *sense.*
- We often add the prefix *in* to form the negative of these adjectives:
  *inactive inexpensive insensitive*

## ous

We add *ous* to some nouns to form adjectives (see 13e):

| word | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| *fame* + ***ous*** | well known | *She's a **famous** singer.* |
| *courage* + ***ous*** | full of courage | *That was a **courageous** decision.* |

- *Famous* means 'very well-known':
  *She became **famous** after winning a gold medal in the Olympics.*
- *Infamous* means 'having a bad reputation':
  *This is a photograph of the **infamous** gangster, Al Capone.*
- Again, sometimes the first part cannot exist by itself, for example *conscientious.*

## other suffixes

Other suffixes we use to form adjectives include (see also 13e):

| noun + *ic* | noun + *y* | noun + *ish* |
|---|---|---|
| *apologetic* | *guilty* | *babyish* |
| *chaotic* | *healthy* | *childish* |
| *economic* | *hungry* | *foolish* |
| *enthusiastic* | *salty* | *selfish* |
| *heroic* | *scary* | *sheepish* |
| *historic* | *sloppy* | |
| *optimistic* | *speedy* | |
| *pessimistic* | *thirsty* | |
| *realistic* | *wealthy* | |
| *scientific* | | |
| *sympathetic* | | |
| *tragic* | | |

| noun + *al* | noun + *ist* |
|---|---|
| *national* | *elitist* |
| *racial* | *sexist* |

| *ant* | *ent* |
|---|---|
| *arrogant* | *affluent* |
| *distant* | *dependent* |
| *hesitant* | *efficient* |
| *ignorant* | *violent* |
| *important* | |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Complete the second sentence, using an appropriate form of the underlined words.**

1 It was an evening I will always remember. It was a ..... evening.
2 We had a marvellous time. I will never forget it. It was .....
3 She's always forgetting things. She's very ..... .
4 That water is not good enough to drink. It is ..... .
5 I find her novels easy to read. Her novels are .....
6 His ideas are practical and they make sense. His ideas are ..... .
7 This injection will cause you a little pain. This injection will be a little ..... .
8 We haven't given up hope of finding survivors. We are still ..... that survivors will be found.
9 I can understand her reaction. Her reaction was ..... .
10 The villagers greeted us with hostility. The villagers gave us a ..... reception.
11 He does not easily tolerate other people's opinions. He is ..... .
12 She showed such courage, didn't she? She was ....., wasn't she?

**2 Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.**

**Earthquake rocks Afghanistan**

Half a million people have been left ..... (1) after HOME
a ..... (2) earthquake destroyed thousands of homes and caused POWER
..... (3) damage to hundreds of others in northern Afghanistan EXTEND
yesterday. It was the most ..... (4) earthquake in DESTROY
living memory, leaving ..... (5) damage in its wake. BELIEVE

**Reports slams TV for young**

A new report describes the ..... (6) effects of TV on HARM
children's educational and ..... (7) development. EMOTION
After ..... (8) periods of watching TV, children tend to become LONG
absent-minded and ..... (9). The report also says many TV programmes FORGET
are ..... (10) for children and it is the responsibility of parents to ... SUIT

**3 Add a word which best fits each space. The first (0) is given as an example.**

### OUR NEIGHBOURS

Although Britain is becoming more... (0) and more multicultural, it is often said that ..... (1) British are not as friendly towards foreigners ..... (2) other nations. However, in our neighbourhood, we all get on very well. Our neighbours, Mr and Mrs Patel, work ..... (3) doctors in a local hospital. Mr Patel is as nice a man ..... (4) you could ever hope to meet – he looks a bit ..... (5) Omar Sharif – and his English is almost ..... (6) good as mine – on the phone he sounds just ..... (7) Prince Charles. His wife, Shiva, is about the same age ..... (8) my mum and they have become good friends – they behave ..... (9) if they've known each other for years.

*He's such a **careful** driver that he always looks both ways before hitting something.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Exam practice 5

## Part 1

For questions **1–15**, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

**Example:**

**0** **A** gone **B** brought **C** taken **D** come

### E-MAIL OR SNAIL MAIL?

Modern technology has ..... (**0**) about enormous improvements in communications and yet many people are still very worried ..... (**1**) using the latest computer technology. I am often ..... (**2**) to meet colleagues who still don't know what the 'e' in e-mail stands for and they are too ..... (**3**) to ask. They assume you have to be skilled ..... (**4**) computers to send a message via e-mail but in fact it is ..... (**5**) thing in the world. It is also ..... (**6**) to send an e-mail message ..... (**7**) to send an ordinary letter or a 'snail' message which also takes ..... (**8**) longer. An e-mail message is only ..... (**9**) more expensive than a local telephone call to send; on top of the call itself you also have to pay a fee to your 'server'. If you send a letter by ..... (**10**) mail it will take a couple of days to get there whereas an e-mail will not take ..... (**11**) than a few seconds. Once you become ..... (**12**) to using the system you will be ..... (**13**) at how much more ..... (**14**) it is than other means of communication. Of course, before you have access to e-mail, you will need a fairly ..... (**15**) computer, which can be quite expensive.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1** | **A** for | **B** about | **C** at | **D** with as |
| **2** | **A** surprising | **B** irritating | **C** surprised | **D** irritated |
| **3** | **A** embarrassing | **B** embarrassed | **C** tired | **D** tiring |
| **4** | **A** about | **B** into | **C** to | **D** in |
| **5** | **A** simplest | **B** the more simple | **C** simpler | **D** the simplest |
| **6** | **A** cheaper | **B** more cheaper | **C** cheapest | **D** the cheaper |
| **7** | **A** as | **B** than | **C** that | **D** from |
| **8** | **A** much | **B** more | **C** as | **D** lot |
| **9** | **A** little | **B** slightly | **C** less | **D** least |
| **10** | **A** second-hand | **B** low-paid | **C** part-time | **D** first-class |
| **11** | **A** more long | **B** longest | **C** as long | **D** longer |
| **12** | **A** capable | **B** accustomed | **C** clever | **D** good |
| **13** | **A** amazed | **B** puzzled | **C** experienced | **D** pleased |
| **14** | **A** confident | **B** certain | **C** efficient | **D** skilful |
| **15** | **A** strong | **B** great | **C** powerful | **D** large |

SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Part 2

For questions **16–30**, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only **one** word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### THE MYSTERY OF STONEHENGE

Stonehenge is a group of very large, tall stones arranged ...in... (**0**) circles which stand on Salisbury plain in the south of England. They look ..... (**16**) they've been put there by a race of giants. The stones originally came from south Wales, 240 miles away. They are ..... (**17**) big and heavy that the transportation of these stones over ..... (**18**) a distance is incredible. The question is why did they use ..... (**19**) huge stones and why are there such a .....(**20**) of them? It must have been quite ..... (**21**) nightmare transporting them. Stonehenge is such ..... (**22**) mystery ..... (**23**) all kinds of theories have been put ..... (**24**) to explain it. The stones ..... (**25**) to have been put there in about 2500 BC and one fairly plausible theory is that they are a religious sign. It is just ..... (**26**) likely, however, that they were a way ..... (**27**) studying the sun. It is also believed that the stones may have ..... (**28**) used in religious ceremonies by druids, but this theory is not ..... (**29**) popular with scientists as the first two, but it all happened ..... (**30**) long ago that it is impossible to be sure what Stonehenge means.

SCORE

## Part 3

For Questions **31–40**, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. **Do not change the word given**. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (**0**).

**Example: 0** Do you regret what you did?
**sorry**
Are you sorry for what you did?

**31** I think his wife is a journalist.
**married**
I think ..... a journalist.

**32** A teacher should like children.
**fond**
It is important for a teacher ..... children.

**33** The parents felt great pride in their children's success.
**proud**
The parents ..... their children's success.

**34** The postman isn't usually so late.
**unusual**
It ..... the postman to be so late.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**35** I lost interest in the subject and stopped going to classes.
**bored**
When I ..... the subject I stopped going to classes.

**36** Spanish and Greek are not at all similar.
**different**
Spanish and Greek ..... each other.

**37** Basil's behaviour towards the guests was very impolite.
**rude**
Basil ..... the guests.

**38** The enemy were not prepared for the attack.
**surprised**
The enemy ..... the attack.

**39** The athlete was sure he would win the race.
**confident**
The athlete ..... winning the race.

**40** It won't be my fault if the project fails.
**responsible**
I will ..... the failure of the project.

SCORE _____

## Part 4

For questions **41–55**, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning, (**0**) and (**00**).

### WHY AM I LEARNING ENGLISH?

**0** English is the most widely spoken language in the world ...✓...
**00** today. It is a quite amazing how the use of English has ...a...
**41** become so widespread. The English is not as easy as Esperanto, .....
**42** which was especially written for to be as easy as possible .....
**43** for people to learn, and yet the Esperanto is spoken by very .....
**44** few people around the world. For many people English is not as .....
**45** more beautiful a language as French but it seems too late for .....
**46** French to catch up with English as an international language. .....
**47** German is the quite a useful language if you are in business .....
**48** in Europe but it is not half as easy to learn so as English, .....
**49** and people say it doesn't sound as if pleasant as English. .....
**50** English has become so important that it is becoming the more .....
**51** and more essential to know it if you want to get a good job. .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**52** There are also so many of films and so many songs which are .....
**53** in English. It is too much early to say whether English will remain .....
**54** as influential as it is today but it seems like difficult to stop its .....
**55** growth. It looks like it will be a world language for a long time. .....

SCORE

## Part 5

For questions **56–65**, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### ON THE BOX

| | |
|---|---|
| What do you need to become a successful (**0**) TV personality? | SUCCESS |
| The people who are ..... (**56**) chosen to host TV quiz | USUAL |
| shows and chat shows seem to have few ..... (**57**) for the | QUALIFY |
| job apart from having an ..... (**58**) appearance; in the case | ATTRACT |
| of women, this often means being blonde and ..... (**59**). | BEAUTY |
| A certain level of intelligence and education is ..... (**60**) | ESSENCE |
| but most people who work in the media do not seem to be very | |
| ..... (**61**) in any other respects. The sad thing is that TV | TALENT |
| personalities have a ..... (**62**) influence on viewers and it | POWER |
| is ..... (**63**) for younger viewers to admire these charming | NATURE |
| people, wearing the ..... (**64**) fashions and always smiling. | LATE |
| However, today's youth deserve ..... (**65**) role models | GOOD |
| than these. | |

SCORE

TOTAL SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 11

## AGENDA

### Grammar

- 11a adverbs: use and form
- 11b adverbs: word order
- 11c adverbs: comparison

### Vocabulary

- 11d seeing and hearing
- 11e adverbs: different forms and meanings

# Entry test

**For questions 1–5, fill in each space with the correct form of a word in the list.**

*quiet day beauty probable happy*

1 Bessie plays the cello ..... .
2 Mary closed the door ..... so that she wouldn't wake the baby up.
3 The children were playing ..... on the beach.
4 I wonder why our friends haven't arrived? They've ..... been delayed by the traffic.
5 There's a plane from London that arrives ..... at 10.00.

**Now look at 11a on page 188.**

SCORE _____

**For questions 6–10, put the words in the correct order.**

6 She opened slowly the door.
.....
7 He always is laughing in class.
.....
8 She doesn't probably speak French.
.....
9 He dangerously drove on Sunday along the motorway.
.....
10 I have very much always liked music.
.....

**Now look at 11b on page 191.**

SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.**

11 You must try and get to the lesson ..... .
A more early B more earlier C the earlier D earlier

12 She works ..... than me.
A more hard than B more hardly C much harder D much hard

13 I use the car ..... often than I used to.
A less B the less C least D lesser

14 She ran to the station as ..... as she could.
A quicker B most quick C more quick D quickly

15 Try to get here ..... you can.
A the soon B soon as C as soon as D soonest

**Now look at 11c on page 194.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.**

16 I don't ..... what you mean at all. Can you explain?
A realise B see C take D make out

17 Could you let me have a ..... at your newspaper for a minute?
A look B read C borrow D minute

18 Have you heard ..... John? He's had an accident on his motorbike.
A for B of C around D about

19 Are you ..... the radio or shall I switch it off?
A listening to B listening C hearing D hearing about

20 Will you ..... after the cat for us while we're on holiday?
A take B watch C mind D look

**Now look at 11d on page 196.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 21–25.**

21 Her parents often complain because she comes home ..... .
A lately B latest C late D later

22 Read the letter ..... – I want to know what Mary says.
A loud B loudly C aloud D more loud

23 His English is not very ..... but his French is excellent.
A well B fluently C high D good

24 The dentist told him to open his mouth ..... .
A wide B widely C deep D deeply

25 They sat ..... to each other so they could share the newspaper.
A closely B close C closed D closest

**Now look at 11e on page 200.**

SCORE _____

TOTAL SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 11a adverbs: use and form

### use

We use adverbs to modify verbs, adjectives, other adverbs and sometimes whole sentences. Their most common use is to describe how someone does something (called 'adverbs of manner'):

*She read the book **quickly**.*
*They behaved **foolishly**.*
✗ ~~*She played **beautiful**.*~~
✓ *She played **beautifully**.*
✗ ~~*You must drive more **careful**.*~~
✓ *You must drive more **carefully**.*

- Adverbs can also describe *where* or *when* something happens (adverbs of place and time), *how often* (adverbs of frequency), or *how much* or *how strongly* (adverbs of degree):
  *Let's go **tomorrow**.* (adverb of time)
  *I'll wait **here**.* (adverb of place)
  *I come **every week**.* (adverb of frequency)
  *It's **very** cold in winter.* (adverb of degree)
- We can use *by far, frankly, easily,* etc. to modify a superlative:
  *This is **quite frankly the worst** essay I've read.*
  *It was **easily the best** party I've been to.*
- There are other types of adverb, for example 'linking adverbs' such as *also* and 'comment adverbs' such as *sadly*:
  *This car is silver but we have it in blue, bronze or black **as well**.* (linking adverb)
  ***To tell the truth**, I don't like any of those colours.* (comment adverb)
- When a phrase acts as an adverb, we call it an 'adverbial phrase'. A phrase can be:
  *You're driving **far too fast**.* (adverbial phrase)
  *There's a huge truck **behind you**.* (prepositional phrase)
  *Let's go **tomorrow afternoon**.* (noun phrase)

### form

We form most adverbs by adding *-ly* to the adjective:

| adjective | adverb | example |
|---|---|---|
| *beautiful* | ***beautifully*** | *She plays the violin **beautifully**.* |
| *brilliant* | ***brilliantly*** | *Sampras played **brilliantly** and won the championship.* |
| *careful* | ***carefully*** | *I wish you would drive more **carefully**.* |
| *effective* | ***effectively*** | *With e-mail I can communicate **effectively**.* |
| *efficient* | ***efficiently*** | *We must work more **efficiently**.* |
| *excited* | ***excitedly*** | *'We've won,' she announced **excitedly**.* |
| *hurried* | ***hurriedly*** | *They left the room **hurriedly**.* |
| *occasional* | ***occasionally*** | *I **occasionally** eat meat although I don't enjoy it.* |
| *shy* | ***shyly*** | *She walked **shyly** into the room.* |
| *truthful* | ***truthfully*** | *Answer me **truthfully** – did you do it?* |
| *undoubted* | ***undoubtedly*** | ***Undoubtedly** there will be problems.* |
| *unexpected* | ***unexpectedly*** | *Peter turned up **unexpectedly**.* |
| *wholehearted* | ***wholeheartedly*** | *I **wholeheartedly** agree with everything you say.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

Adjectives ending in *-le* form adverbs by changing *-le* to *-ly*:

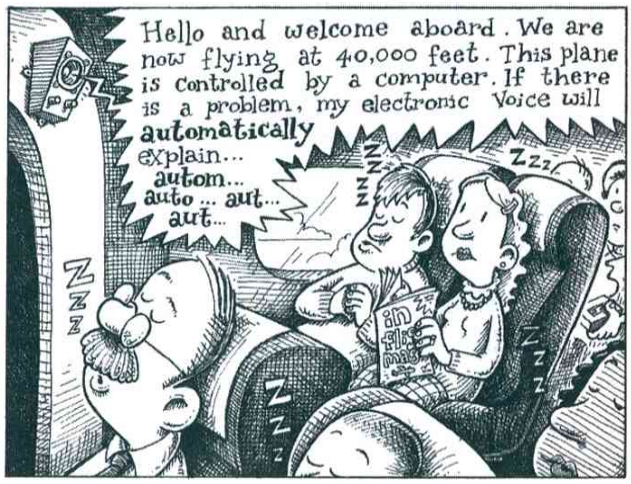
| adjective | adverb | example |
|---|---|---|
| *gentle* | ***gently*** | *They broke the news* ***gently****.* |
| *probable* | ***probably*** | *They are* ***probably*** *on their way now.* |
| *simple* | ***simply*** | *I* ***simply*** *don't believe you.* |
| *suitable* | ***suitably*** | *Bob wasn't* ***suitably*** *dressed.* |
| *terrible* | ***terribly*** | *Bessie played* ***terribly*** *that night.* |

Adjectives ending in *-y* form adverbs by changing *-y* to *-ily*:

| adjective | adverb | example |
|---|---|---|
| *easy* | ***easily*** | *Our team is* ***easily*** *the best.* |
| *noisy* | ***noisily*** | *The pupils came into the room* ***noisily****.* |

Adjectives ending in *-ic* form adverbs by adding *-ally*:

| adjective | adverb | example |
|---|---|---|
| *automatic* | ***automatically*** | *The machine gives you your money back* ***automatically****.* |
| *heroic* | ***heroically*** | *The soldiers fought* ***heroically****.* |
| *tragic* | ***tragically*** | *He died* ***tragically****.* |




Some adverbs which end in *-ly* come from nouns:

| noun | adverb | example |
|---|---|---|
| *day* | ***daily*** | *Newspapers are delivered* ***daily****.* (= every day) |
| *fortnight* | ***fortnightly*** | *The magazine is published* ***fortnightly****.* (= every two weeks) |
| *hour* | ***hourly*** | *The database is updated* ***hourly****.* |
| *month* | ***monthly*** | *They meet* ***monthly*** *to discuss progress.* |
| *week* | ***weekly*** | *The magazine is published* ***weekly****.* |
| *year* | ***yearly*** | *We pay fees* ***yearly****.* |

- We cannot add *-ly* to adjectives which end in *-ly*. We use *in a ... way/ manner/ fashion*:
  *I've never met a policeman who behaves* ***in a friendly way****.*
  *She spoke* ***in a silly manner****.*
  *He lived his life* ***in a lonely fashion****.*
- Some adverbs have the same form as adjectives (see page 200):
  *drive* ***fast*** *a* ***fast*** *driver*
  *sit* ***still*** ***still*** *water*
- Some words ending in *-ly* are not adverbs but adjectives:
  *a* ***friendly*** *policeman*
  *a* ***silly*** *story*
  *a* ***lonely*** *life*
  ***lovely*** *weather*
  *an* ***ugly*** *painting*
- The adverb from *public* is *publicly*:
  *He* ***publicly*** *confessed to his crimes.*
  ✗ ~~*He was* ***publically*** *humiliated.*~~
  ✓ *He was* ***publicly*** *humiliated.*
- With *full* we simply add *-y*:
  *I* ***fully*** *agree with you.*
- With *true* we change *-e* to *-ly*:
  *He was a* ***truly*** *great President.*
- The adverb from *good* is *well*:
  *'How did she do in the race?' 'She did very* ***well*** *– she came first.'*
  ✗ ~~*Did I do* ***good*** *in the test?*~~
  ✓ *Did I do* ***well*** *in the test?*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Complete the chart using the words in the list. Where possible, choose either an adverb or a correct prepositional phrase. There are two examples.**

| | |
|---|---|
| *suitable* | *beautiful* |
| *unlucky* | *tragic* |
| *lovely* | *month* |
| *fourth* | *day* |
| *possible* | *true* |
| *ugly* | *fast* |
| *awful* | *undoubted* |
| *full* | *efficient* |
| *simple* | *public* |
| *lonely* | *still* |

| adjective | adverb | prepositional phrase |
|---|---|---|
| quiet | quietly | |
| silly | | in a silly way / manner |

**2 Fill in each space in the following sentences with an appropriate adverb using the words in the list.**

*day soft well occasion early beauty month easy careful noise*

1 The orchestra played the symphony ..... , I thought.
2 John spoke so ..... I could hardly hear him.
3 Hold the baby ..... , please.
4 The children played ..... in their bedroom and kept their father awake.
5 In Britain, some people have their newspaper delivered ..... .
6 The magazine is published ..... so we get twelve issues a year.
7 I go to the theatre ..... – I just don't have the time to go more often.
8 You could ..... pass the test with a bit more work.
9 Come ..... if you want to find a good seat.
10 I hope you do ..... in your driving test.

**3 Complete the sentences using the correct adverb form of the adjective or noun in brackets.**

1 He treats his dog ..... . (**terrible**)
2 If the phone doesn't work, you get your money back ..... . (**automatic**)
3 She touched him on the arm ..... . (**gentle**)
4 She turned up at the party ..... . (**unexpected**)
5 It is ..... too late to catch the plane now. (**probable**)
6 The exam was ..... easy and everyone passed. (**surprising**)
7 'I have a question,' she said, raising her hand ..... . (**shy**)
8 She has to take the medicine ..... . (**hour**)
9 There was a ..... beautiful view from the bedroom. (**true**)
10 The firemen fought ..... to put the fire out. (**heroic**)



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 11b adverbs: word order

## group 1: initial, middle or end position

Most adverbs of manner (e.g. *slowly*) and some adverbs of time (e.g. *once*) and frequency (e.g. *occasionally*) can come at the beginning, in the middle (before the main verb) or at the end of a sentence. They modify verbs or clauses. The choice of position is a matter of emphasis:

| beginning of sentence | middle of sentence | end of sentence |
|---|---|---|
| ***Slowly**, she opened the door.* | *She **slowly** opened the door.* | *She opened the door **slowly**.* |
| ***Once** I had a motorbike.* | *I **once** had a motorbike.* | *I had a motorbike **once**.* |
| ***Occasionally**, he loses his temper.* | *He **occasionally** loses his temper.* | *He loses his temper **occasionally**.* |

## group 2: initial or end position

Many adverbs of time (e.g. *yesterday*) and place (e.g. *outside*) usually come at the end of a sentence but can also come at the beginning:

✗ ~~*I'll be **in a moment** with you.*~~
✓ *I'll be with you **in a moment**.*

| beginning of sentence | end of sentence |
|---|---|
| ***Yesterday** I had a difficult day.* | *I had a difficult day **yesterday**.* |
| ***Outside** it was raining.* | *It was raining **outside**.* |

- Prepositional phrases usually come at the end:
  *There's a sports car **in the fast lane**.*
  However, there are exceptions:
  ***In January** he expects to get a pay rise.*
  *He expects to get a pay rise **in January**.*

## group 3: middle position

Some adverbs of frequency (e.g. *always*), time (e.g. *already*), degree (e.g. *almost*) and most adverbs of degrees of certainty and probability (e.g. *definitely, probably*) usually come in the middle of the sentence, before the main verb:

*I **always** get up early.*
*I **never** drink milk.*
*I **definitely** saw him.*
*She **probably** thinks everything is all right.*
✗ ~~*Never she apologises.*~~
✓ *She **never** apologises.*

- Here are more examples of adverbs in group 3:

| frequency | degree | degree of certainty |
|---|---|---|
| *always* | *almost* | *certainly* |
| *ever* | *hardly* | *definitely* |
| *frequently* | *nearly* | *probably* |
| *hardly* | | *really* |
| *never* | | |
| *normally* | | |
| *often* | | |
| *rarely* | | |
| *seldom* | | |
| *sometimes* | | |
| *usually* | | |

| time | other meanings |
|---|---|
| *already* | *also* |
| *soon* | *even* |
| *still* | *just* |
| | *merely* |
| | *only* |
| | *suddenly* |

- Adverbs in group 3 go immediately after auxiliary verbs (*be, have, do*) and modal verbs (*can, may, should*, etc.):
  *He is **always** first to arrive.*
  *I have **never** drunk iced tea.*
  *You should **definitely** accept the offer.*
  *She'll **probably** come to the wedding.*
- However, when the verb is negative, adverbs of degree or certainty come before the auxiliary:
  *He **probably** won't come to the party.*
  *He **certainly** can't accept this situation.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## group 4: end position

(See also group 1 on page 191.)
Adverbs of manner (e.g. *well, badly*) and adverbs of place and time usually come at the end of a sentence. Adverbial phrases (e.g. *in the playground, at home, on Sunday morning*) are almost always placed at the end of a sentence.

*He comes home* ***late.***
*She sings* ***well.***
*He plays* ***badly.***
✗ ~~*I like* ***very much*** *music.*~~
✓ *I like music* ***very much.***
✗ ~~*She* ***very well*** *speaks English.*~~
✓ *She speaks English* ***very well.***
*He woke up with a headache* ***on Sunday morning.***
*They were standing* ***in the playground.***

- When we use two clauses, the position of adverbs can change meaning:
  *He promised* ***without complaining*** *that he would pay for the damage.* (= a promise without complaining)
  *He promised that he would pay for the damage* ***without complaining.*** (= payment without complaining)

- Here are more examples of adverbs in group 4

| manner | place | time |
|---|---|---|
| *as well* | *in London* | *daily* |
| *badly* | *in the stadium* | *late* |
| *cheerfully* | *at the cinema* | *monthly* |
| *happily* | *on the dance floor* | *once* |
| *mildly* | *by the television* | *at once* |
| *politely* | | *at six o'clock* |
| *quickly* | | *on the hour* |
| *regularly* | | *on Tuesday* |
| *sweetly* | | |
| *tenderly* | | |
| *very much* | | |
| *well* | | |

- We often use more than one adverb in end position. They follow this order:
  manner + place + time
  *quietly* *at home* *in the evening*

| manner | place | time |
|---|---|---|
| *They played* ***badly*** | ***at Wembley*** | ***on Saturday*** |
| *She ran* ***quickly*** | ***to the bus stop*** | ***this morning*** |

- We often change the order of place and time:
  *They played* ***badly at Wembley on Saturday.***
  *They played* ***badly on Saturday at Wembley.***

## Practice

**1 Tick (✓) the correct sentences or write the correct sentence if the adverb is in the wrong position.**

1 I went yesterday to the post office.
.....

2 The magazine comes out monthly.
.....

3 I've become recently interested in skiing.
.....

4 We play football in the playground after school often.
.....

5 Very carefully he drives on the motorway.
.....

6 He got up and walked suddenly away.
.....

7 I have never visited the United States.
.....

8 Outside he is waiting.
.....

9 Only I like ice-cream not chocolate.
.....

10 I cooked and as well I washed the dishes.
.....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Rewrite the following sentences, adding the adverb or adverbs in brackets in the correct positions.**

1 You'll finish your homework if you don't hurry up. (**never, in time**)
.....

2 I have lived in this neighbourhood for a year. (**probably**)
.....

3 I love travelling by plane. (**very much**)
.....

4 Doesn't she play the piano! (**well**)
.....

5 We arrived. (**on Sunday morning, at nine o'clock, at the station**)
.....

6 She won't be coming to work. (**today, probably**)
.....

7 He performed the part. (**on Saturday, superbly, at the National Theatre**)
.....

8 She visits her mother. (**usually, in hospital, at the weekend**)
.....

9 Our party won't raise taxes. (**definitely**)
.....

10 Can you come? (**at six o'clock, to my office, in town**)
.....

**3 Fill in each space in the following text with an appropriate adverb or adverbial phrase from the list.**

*the night before probably usually occasionally after midnight always never rarely quickly a few minutes later hardly outside yesterday immediately often*

## One of those days

Bill wasn't feeling very well ..... (1) – he had a headache and was feeling dizzy so he ..... (2) decided to go and see the doctor. He didn't ..... (3) have to go to the doctor – in fact he very ..... (4) had a health problem. ..... (5), say once every two years, he would go and have a check-up and the doctor had ..... (6) found him to be in good shape. He had ..... (7) had any serious health problem. There ..... (8) wasn't anything seriously wrong with him this time, either, but he ..... (9) arranged an appointment, finished his coffee and ..... (10) he was ready to go. ..... (11), it was raining lightly but Bill ..... (12) noticed, so surprised was he to find his car missing. ..... (13), he had been to a party at a friend's house and he had had a great time. He had got back ..... (14) and parked his car where he ..... (15) parked it, but now it was gone.

*I **never** travel without my diary – one should **always** have something sensational to read in the train.*
OSCAR WILDE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 11c adverbs: comparison

## one-syllable adverbs

These take *-er* in the comparative and *(the)* + *-est* in the superlative:

*Bill ran **fast**. John ran **faster** than Bill. Gary ran **(the) fastest** of all.*
*They work **hard**. The girls work **harder**. The girls in the first group work **(the) hardest**.*

- We can omit *the* in the superlative of adverbs ending in *-est*:
  *Bill ran **the fastest** of all the competitors.*
  *Bill ran **fastest** of all the competitors.*

| adverb | comparative | superlative |
|---|---|---|
| ***early*** | *earlier* | *(the) earliest* |
| ***fast*** | *faster* | *(the) fastest* |
| ***hard*** | *harder* | *(the) hardest* |
| ***high*** | *higher* | *(the) highest* |
| ***late*** | *later* | *(the) latest* |
| ***long*** | *longer* | *(the) longest* |
| ***loud*** | *louder* | *(the) loudest* |
| ***low*** | *lower* | *(the) lowest* |
| ***near*** | *nearer* | *(the) nearest* |
| ***quick*** | *quicker* | *(the) quickest* |
| ***slow*** | *slower* | *(the) slowest* |
| ***soon*** | *sooner* | *(the) soonest* |

- *Early* forms the comparative and superlative by changing *-y* to *-i* and adding *-er* and *-est*:
  *She arrived **early**. She arrived **earlier** than expected She arrived **(the) earliest** of them all.*
  ✗ ~~*You must come **more early**.*~~
  ✓ *You must come **earlier**.*

## adverbs of two or more syllables

Nearly all adverbs of two syllables or more use *more/less...* and *(the) most/(the) least...* to form the comparative and superlative:

*Work **quietly**. Can you work **more quietly**?*
*I **often** used to travel. I used to travel **more often** in my previous job. In my new job I travel **most often** in the winter.*
✗ ~~*Could you drive **slowlier**?*~~
✓ *Could you drive **more slowly**?*

| adverb | comparative | superlative |
|---|---|---|
| ***quietly*** | *more/less quietly* | *(the) most/least quietly* |
| ***slowly*** | *more/less slowly* | *(the) most/least slowly* |
| ***quickly*** | *more/less quickly* | *(the) most/least quickly* |
| ***often*** | *more/less often* | *(the) most/least often* |
| ***carefully*** | *more/less carefully* | *(the) most/least carefully* |
| ***seriously*** | *more/less seriously* | *(the) most/least seriously* |
| ***dangerously*** | *more/less dangerously* | *(the) most/least dangerously* |
| ***beautifully*** | *more/less beautifully* | *(the) most beautifully* |

- We use superlative adverbs with *-est* in a few common phrases. Examples are:
  ***The soonest** I can send it is Friday.*
  ***The earliest** I can come is three o'clock.*
  *Bill ran **(the) slowest of all** and came last.*

*He couldn't take his job **more seriously** if he tried.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## irregular adverbs

Some adverbs have irregular forms of comparison:

*Bessie plays the piano **well**. Bessie plays the piano **better** than Mary. Bessie played the piano **best** of all and won first prize.*
*Terry did **badly** in the test. Terry did **worse** in the test than Tom.*

- We rarely use *worst* as an adverb but it would be possible to say:
  *Terry performed **the worst** in the class.*

| adverb | comparative | superlative |
|---|---|---|
| ***well*** | *better* | *best* |
| ***badly*** | *worse* | *worst* |
| ***much*** | *more* | *most* |
| ***little*** | *less* | *least* |
| ***a lot*** | *more* | *most* |
| ***far*** | *further/farther* | *furthest/farthest* |

- We can use either *farther* or *further* to talk about distances:
  *We'd better not go any **farther/further** tonight.*
  For *further/farther* as adjectives, see page 153.
- We can use *as* + adverb + *as* to show how something is done in comparison with some other way of doing it (see also page 168):
  *I ate breakfast **as quickly as** I could and left.*
  *Bessie didn't play **as well as** she usually does.*

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space with the appropriate adverb phrase using the word given.**

*Example:* My wife drives more carefully than I do. (**careful**)

1 She works ..... than everyone else in the office. (**efficient**)
2 I play chess ..... my son does. (**bad**)
3 He got up ..... anyone else. (**early**)
4 If you don't eat ..... , you'll be sick. (**slow**)
5 She doesn't drive ..... as her husband does. (**dangerous**)
6 I play football ..... than before, now that I'm employed. (**often**)
7 She didn't do ..... in the test as she expected. (**good**)
8 The person who runs ..... will win first prize. (**quick**)
9 You ate ..... than anybody else at the party. (**much**)
10 You'll have to work ..... if you want to get your degree. (**hard**)

**2 Complete the sentences below with appropriate adverbs based on the words in the list.**

*hard loud long efficient early bad often careful near quick*

1 You'll have an accident if you don't drive ..... .
2 She should work ..... if she wants to pass her maths test.
3 You should have got there ..... if you wanted a good seat.
4 Can you speak ..... , please? We can't hear you at the back.
5 There's been an accident. Come as ..... as you can, please.
6 I caught a taxi because if I had come by bus, it would have taken me much ..... .
7 We need to save time and money – so can we all try and work .....?
8 'I'm fed up with staying in all the time.' 'Well, go out ..... .'
9 The ..... I got to getting a job was being short-listed.
10 His parents are worried about him because his marks are getting ..... .

*He who laughs last laughs **longest**.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 11d seeing and hearing

### seeing

| verb | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***see***; ***see*** sth | (a) understand sth<br>(b) realise sth<br>(c) use your eyes to look at things<br>(d) find out | *I **see** what you mean.*<br>*I can **see** you're not very happy with the situation.*<br>*I can't **see** a thing without my glasses.*<br>***See** if there's any cheese in the fridge.* |
| ***look*** | use your eyes in order to see sth | *If you **look** carefully, you will find your keys.* |
| ***look at*** sb / sth | paying attention to sb / sth | ***Look at** me when I'm talking to you.* |
| ***look after*** sb / sth | take care of sb / sth | *Don't worry; I'll **look after** the kids tomorrow.*<br>✗ ~~*Will you **look for** the baby while I'm out?*~~<br>✓ *Will you **look after** the baby while I'm out?* |
| ***look for*** sb / sth | try to find sb / sth | *I'm **looking for** Steve – have you seen him?*<br>✗ ~~*I am **looking** my keys.*~~<br>✓ *I am **looking for** my keys.* |
| ***look forward to*** + sth / *-ing* | be excited and pleased about sth which is going to happen | *I'm really **looking forward to** our vacation.*<br>*We're **looking forward to** seeing you again.* |
| ***look into*** sth | try and find out the truth about sth | *Police are **looking into** the disappearance of the two children.* |
| ***look through*** sth | look for sth / check sth | *I've **looked through** my pockets but I can't find my keys anywhere.* |
| ***look*** sth ***up***; ***look up*** sth | check a word in a dictionary or other reference book | *He **looked up** the word in his dictionary.* |
| ***have a look*** | look quickly to check sth | *Can you just **have a** quick **look** at the engine for me?* |
| ***gaze into*** sth | look into space, etc. | *Patrick was **gazing into** the fire.* |
| ***gaze*** (***at*** sb / sth) | look at sth for a long time | *She **gazed at** the beautiful landscape.* |
| ***glance*** (***at*** sth) | quickly look at sth once | *He **glanced** nervously **at** his watch.*<br>*She **glanced** round the room to see if there was anyone she knew.* |
| ***glance through*** sth | read sth very quickly | *Can you **glance through** my essay and tell me what you think of it?* |
| ***glimpse*** sth / sb | see sth / sb by chance for a very short time | *I **glimpsed** her face in the crowd and then she was gone.* |
| ***catch a glimpse of*** sb / sth | see sb / sth very briefly | *I only **caught a glimpse of** him as he drove off.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***catch sight of*** sb / sth | see sb / sth briefly | *I **caught sight of** Mary as she walked into the supermarket.* |
| ***notice*** sb / sth | see, hear or feel sb / sth | *Cathy **noticed** that Isabelle was restless.*<br>*I was too busy to **notice** how hungry I was.* |
| ***stare*** (***at*** sb / sth) | look at sb / sth for a long time because you are interested or angry | *She **stared at** the page for several minutes – she was not sure what to write.* |
| ***stare into*** sth | look for a long time into sth | *She was **staring into** the water.* |
| ***watch*** (sb / sth) | look at sb / sth and pay attention | *Harriet **watched** the man with interest as he walked in.*<br>✗ ~~*I am **seeing** TV.*~~<br>✓ *I am **watching** TV.* |
| ***keep an eye on*** sb / sth | take care of, look after sb / sth | *Will you **keep on eye on** the food in the oven while I pop out for a minute?* |

## hearing

| verb | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***hear*** sb / sth | notice by using your ears | *Did you **hear** that sound?* |
| ***hear*** sb + *-ing* | notice sb is near by using your ears | *I think I can **hear** someone knocking.* |
| ***hear*** sb do sth | notice sb do sth by using your ears | *Have you **heard** Boyzone sing their latest hit?* |
| ***hear about*** sb / sth | know about because sb told you | *Have you **heard about** the fire at the chemical factory?* |
| ***hear of*** sb / sth | know sb / sth exists | *I've never **heard of** him before.* |
| ***hear from*** sb | receive news from sb | *Have you **heard from** Sarah lately?* |
| ***hear*** (***that***) + noun clause | find out sth | *I **hear** (**that**) you've been selected to play in the team.* |
| ***be hearing things*** | be imagining you hear a sound | *I must be **hearing things** – I'm sure someone called my name.* |
| ***listen*** | pay attention to a sound or speech | ***Listen!** There's a strange noise coming from the engine.* |
| ***listen to*** sb / sth | pay attention to sb / sth | *I am **listening to** the radio.*<br>✗ ~~*I like **listening** the radio.*~~<br>✓ *I like **listening to** the radio.*<br>✗ ~~*I **hear** the news now.*~~<br>✓ *I **am listening to** the news now.* |
| ***listen to*** sb / sth | take sb, sb's advice seriously | *I wish I'd **listened to** his advice.* |
| ***listen hard*** | listen very carefully | *I **listened hard** but could hear nothing.* |
| ***be all ears*** | be very keen to hear about sth | *As soon as I mentioned money, Karen **was all ears**.* |
| ***lend an ear*** | listen sympathetically to what sb says | *I'm always ready to **lend an ear** if you need to talk.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space in these sentences with an appropriate form of a verb from 11d.**

1 I didn't ..... you come in because I was ..... TV.
2 Ann's really angry with me and I can ..... why.
3 Joe couldn't ..... the phone ringing because he was ..... to music.
4 I have never ..... of a composer called Piccolini. Is there one?
5 I haven't ..... my son in Australia for over a year.
6 She ..... nervously behind her to see if anyone was following.
7 I only ..... a glimpse of John as he rushed past my office this morning.
8 The police ..... something suspicious about the man and decided to follow him.
9 I am ..... my wallet – have you seen it anywhere?
10 ..... carefully to what I've got to say because I'm not going to say it again.
11 I ..... that you're going away on Saturday – where are you going to this time?
12 I wish you'd stop ..... at me like that. It's not very polite, you know.

**2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence using an appropriate form of the word given.**

1 The police are investigating the murder.
**look**
The police ..... the murder.

2 Nobody had told them anything about the accident.
**heard**
They ..... the accident.

3 My sister takes care of the children while we go out to work.
**after**
My sister ..... while we go out to work.

4 I looked through the newspaper very quickly this morning.
**had**
I ..... through the newspaper this morning.

5 Do you know what's happened about the strike?
**about**
Have you ..... the strike?

6 I thought I heard the doorbell ring but it was just my imagination.
**things**
I ..... when I thought I heard the doorbell ring.

7 He searched the drawers but he couldn't find his favourite tie.
**look**
He ..... the drawers but he couldn't find his favourite tie.

8 One quick look at the clock and I knew I would be late.
**glance**
A ..... and I knew I would be late.

9 I'm afraid I don't know him.
**hear**
I'm afraid I .....

10 I saw Abbie this morning getting onto a bus.
**sight**
I ..... Abbie this morning getting onto a bus.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Fill in each space with an appropriate word.**

# Simply magic

We were ..... (1) through the paper, trying to find somewhere to spend Saturday evening in London. Luckily, we had found a baby-sitter to ..... (2) after the twins so we were free for the evening. Suddenly, I caught ..... (3) of an advertisement for an 'All Star Magic Show' at a theatre not far from where we lived. I'd ..... (4) about the Camden Popular Theatre from a friend of mine who works in the box-office there. I'd never ..... (5) a magic show performed live before and I was always ..... (6) for new experiences, so we thought we'd give it a try.

By the time we got to the theatre we were both ..... (7) forward to a bit of fun but nothing more. I've never understood what '..... (8) is believing' meant but now I think I ..... (9) what people mean. The first magician came on. He gazed intently ..... (10) various members of the audience before asking my wife, Mary, to volunteer to help with his first trick. She glanced ..... (11) me for support, I nodded, and she agreed. She got onto the stage, ..... (12) a bit anxious. The magician gave her a book and asked her to ..... (13) carefully to what he was going to say. He asked her to look at any page she chose, at random. Mary ..... (14) through the book and stopped at page ninety-six. The magician asked her to have a ..... (15) at the first line and choose any word, as long as it was a short word. He then told her which word she had chosen.

**4 Cross out the word in each group which cannot be used with the verb in bold.**

*Example:* ***observe*** *frequently now suddenly carefully* ~~*completely*~~ *once often*

1 ***see*** *well carefully badly often further outside occasionally*
2 ***look*** *slowly often badly daily farther earlier carefully*
3 ***notice*** *once suddenly fast now earlier sometimes easily*
4 ***hear*** *frequently yesterday well carefully outside once later*
5 ***listen*** *often suitably more occasionally tomorrow now carefully*
6 ***watch*** *beautifully occasionally publicly outside often normally soon*
7 ***glimpse*** *suddenly slowly earlier unexpectedly once often hurriedly*
8 ***gaze*** *lazily longest further slowly happily fast yesterday*
9 ***stare*** *hopelessly occasionally every day now quickly casually most*
10 ***understand*** *completely highly always well yesterday just suddenly*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 11e adverbs: different forms and meanings

Some adverbs have the same form as the adjective:

*We had an **early** breakfast.* (adjective) *We left **early**.* (adverb)
*He's a **fast** driver.* (adjective) *Run **fast**.* (adverb)
*It will be a **long** journey.* (adjective) *Don't take **long**.* (adverb)
✗ ~~*The river runs **deeply**.*~~
✓ *The river runs **deep**.*

## adverbs with different forms and meanings

Some adverbs have two forms – one the same as the adjective and one ending in *-ly*.

| form | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***direct*** | without stopping anywhere on the way | *They flew **direct** to Rome.* |
| ***directly*** | (a) with no one else in between<br>(b) immediately<br>(c) straight | (a) *You'll be **directly** responsible to me.*<br>(b) *Come **directly** you hear my whistle.*<br>(c) *She looked **directly** at us.* |
| ***free*** | without paying | *We got into the cinema **free**.* |
| ***freely*** | without any restriction | *He comes and goes **freely**.* |
| ***hard*** | with effort or force | *She pushed the door **hard** but it still wouldn't open.*<br>*I tried **hard** to remember where I had parked the car.*<br>*It was raining **hard** and we all got wet.* |
| ***hardly*** | almost not | *It was **hardly** raining earlier.* |
| ***late*** | not at the agreed time | *She's always arriving **late**.* |
| ***lately*** | recently | *Have you seen Natasha **lately**?* |
| ***high*** | a long way up | *He can jump **high**.* |
| ***highly*** | very favourably | *I think **highly** of you.* |
| ***last*** | after all the other | *He came **last** in the race.* |
| ***lastly*** | finally | ***Lastly**, I'd like to say...* |
| ***right*** | correctly | *The calculations didn't come out **right**.* |
| ***rightly*** | justifiably | *The audience was **rightly** upset by what they saw.* |
| ***wide*** | completely | *Open your mouth **wide**.* |
| ***widely*** | to many places | *She has travelled **widely**.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

- Sometimes the two forms of the adverb have the same or a similar meaning:

| form | example |
|---|---|
| *rough/roughly* | *He plays **rough**.*<br>*He pushed her **roughly**.* (both = in a violent way) |
| *loud/loudly* | *Don't talk so **loud/loudly**.* |
| *tight/tightly* | *Hold on **tight**!*<br>*He held on **tightly**.* |
| *wrong/wrongly* | *You've done it all **wrong**!*<br>*Rightly or **wrongly**, the house belongs to her.* |
| *quick/quickly* | *Get out of here **quick**!*<br>*They ran out of the room as **quickly** as they could.* (= the more common form) |

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space with an appropriate adjective or adverb.**

1 If she tries ..... , she may succeed in breaking the world record.
2 I was so shocked I could ..... speak.
3 The teacher gave us a very ..... task to do but we managed it quite well.
4 The road isn't ..... enough for the lorry to get through.
5 The dentist asked her to open her mouth ..... .
6 The name of the suspect is ..... known in town – nearly everyone knows who it is.
7 She did very ..... in the test.
8 Her results were so ..... that she got into Cambridge University.
9 Don't drive so ..... , slow down !
10 He drove in the ..... lane on the motorway because he was in a hurry.
11 If you answer ..... , cross it out and write it again.
12 She gave me the ..... address and I got lost.
13 They sat very ..... to each other to keep warm.
14 He had a very ..... voice which you could hear a mile away.
15 Feel ..... to ask me any questions you like.
16 It hasn't rained much ..... ; the last time was two months ago.

**2 Fill in each space with the correct adverb based on a word in the list. Some words do not need to be changed. Use one word twice.**

*long late far high wide most slow quick further wrong little*

## Catch that thief!

There have been a number of burglaries in our neighbourhood ..... (1). We are not sure who is to blame but it is ..... (2) believed that the burglaries are ..... (3) the work of one gang. The police have been very ..... (4) to act and they still know very ..... (5) for certain. The public, rightly or ..... (6), blame the police for not acting more ..... (7). Most people do not think very ..... (8) of the local police and indeed so ..... (9) they have arrested only one suspect. They say they need more evidence before they can take the matter ..... (10). Whenever they are called in to investigate a burglary, it takes them so ..... (11) to get to the scene of the crime that it is always too ..... (12) to catch the culprits.

*Still waters run **deep**.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 12

## AGENDA

### Grammar

- 12a articles
- 12b determiners
- 12c countable and uncountable nouns

### Vocabulary

- 12d uncountable nouns ending in -s, collective nouns
- 12e suffixes (5)

# Entry test

**Underline the correct answer in 1–5. (– = no word)**

1 She got a first class-degree from *the* / – Oxford University.
2 Jones was found guilty and sentenced to five years in – / *the* prison.
3 Can we meet *outside the* / *outside of* hospital at about six o'clock?
4 Mum, there's *some* / *a* spider crawling all over my arm!
5 She punched her attacker in *his* / *the* face and he ran off.

**Now look at 12a on page 204.**

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.**

6 There are already ..... people waiting outside to buy tickets.
A a B some C the D lots

7 I would be glad to answer ..... questions you may have.
A some B every C any D the

8 Could you please go and get ..... chair from next door?
A an other B another C other D more

9 Unfortunately, there was ..... we could do to help the old man.
A a few B few C a little D little

10 We haven't got ..... money but we manage to get by.
A more of B many C several D much

**Now look at 12b on page 208.**



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.**

11 If you want ..... sensible advice, go to Jack.
A a B the C a little of D some

12 I don't need all this money – take ..... back.
A it B those C that D them

13 I forgot to take the spaghetti out of the water and ..... went soft.
A they B all C it D she

14 She's excellent at languages but her Spanish ..... better than her Italian.
A hears B listens C are D is

15 I prefer furniture made of ..... wood, don't you?
A a B the C some D –

**Now look at 12c on page 212.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.**

16 ..... is one of the most interesting subjects at school.
A Physic B The Physic C The Physics D Physics

17 I'll have to start wearing ..... glasses if my eyes get any worse.
A the B some C – D any

18 They have a lovely house on ..... of the city.
A outskirts B an outskirt C the outskirt D the outskirts

19 There's a fire – call ..... fire brigade!
A a B their C – D the

20 When you get to the traffic lights, ask someone for ..... directions.
A their B – C our D some

**Now look at 12d on page 216.**

SCORE _____

**For questions 21–25, fill in the spaces with the correct form of the words in the list.**

*opportune* *public* *generous* *reluctant* *depress*

21 She's just come out of a long period of ..... but she's better now.
22 Going to the States to work is an ..... you can't afford to miss.
23 Although he's a rich businessman, he's not well known for his ..... .
24 The Prime Minister's speech got a lot of ..... in the media.
25 He agreed to take part in the show but with great ..... .

**Now look at 12e on page 219.**

SCORE _____

TOTAL SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 12a articles

Here is a summary of the way we use articles with different kinds of noun:

| noun | article | example |
|---|---|---|
| countable singular | indefinite ***a*** or ***an*** | *She has **a bicycle** already.* |
| countable singular | definite ***the*** | ***The** red **bicycle** is hers.* |
| countable plural | definite ***the*** | ***The bicycles** are in the shed.* |
| countable plural | none | *They use **bicycles** to get to work.* |
| uncountable singular | definite ***the*** | ***The salt** is in the cupboard.* |
| uncountable singular | none | ***Salt** is cheap.* |

Here is a summary of the main uses of articles:

| meaning | *a / an* | *the* | none |
|---|---|---|---|
| specific | *She has **a cat**.* | *She feeds **the cat**.* | *She has **cats** in the house.* |
| general | ***A cat** is a quiet animal.* | ***The cat** was sacred in ancient Egypt.* | ***Cats** are not as popular in some cultures as dogs.* |
| the listener does not know which person or thing | *There's **a cat** outside the door.* | | |
| the listener knows which | | ***The cat** outside is black.* | |

We also use indefinite articles before nouns in the following ways:

| indefinite article (*a / an*): use | examples |
|---|---|
| sth which has not been mentioned before | *I've just seen **a** car coming up the drive.*<br>*There's **a** spider in the bath.* |
| any one of a group of people or things in general | *He buys **a** newspaper every day.*<br>✗ ~~*I want to be teacher.*~~<br>✓ *I want to be **a** teacher.* |
| all things of the same kind | *Is **a** spider **an** insect?* |
| certain words that express an amount | ***a** hundred / **a** few / **a** lot / **a** little / **a** great deal*<br>***A** few weeks from now I'll be in Venice.* |
| expressions of frequency | *twice **a** week* (= twice each week)<br>*I get fifty pounds **a** day.* (= each day)<br>*This car goes at 110 miles **an** hour.* (= in one hour) |
| two things that are often mentioned together as though they are one thing | ***a** cup and saucer* (✗ '~~a cup and a saucer~~')<br>***a** knife and fork* (✗ '~~a knife and a fork~~') |
| a type of a particular thing | *This area produces **a** fine cheese.* |
| sb's name when we don't know the person | *There is **a** Mr Wilkins to see you.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

- We also use *a/an* after *what, such, rather* to emphasise what we are saying:
  ***What a** day it's been!*
  *He's **such a** fool!*
  *It's **rather a** high price, isn't it?*

We use definite articles before nouns in the following ways:

| definite article (*the*): use | examples |
|---|---|
| sth or sb which you have mentioned before | *I've got two cats – **the** black one is called Bob, **the** white one is called Rosie.* |
| sth which is unique in some way | *Which is **the** tallest building in the world?* |
| sth specific, in an expression with *of* or *which* | *London is **the** capital **of** Britain.* |
| sth restricted to a particular case | ***The** power enjoyed by politicians doesn't interest him.* |
| the names of certain countries | ***the** United States / **the** Lebanon / **the** United Kingdom* |
| the name of a group of mountains | ***the** Alps / **the** Pyrenees / **the** Himalayas* |
| the name of a canal, river, sea, ocean | ***the** Ganges / **the** Mississippi / **the** River Thames / **the** Aegean Sea / **the** Atlantic* |
| sb we visit regularly | *She's gone to **the** doctor / **the** dentist.* |
| sb in an official position | ***the** Pope / **the** President / **the** Queen* |
| the name of a whole family or group | ***the** Joneses / **the** Mitchells / **the** Beatles* |
| sth that everybody knows because it is part of nature or everyday life | *We drove through **the** night.*<br>*Ella's always complaining about **the** traffic!* |
| a part of sb's body | *She hit him on **the** ear.* (= his ear)<br>*He punched him on **the** nose.* (= his nose) |
| an adjective used as a noun referring to a group of people | ***the** sick / **the** injured / **the** rich / **the** young* |
| an adjective used as a noun describing a nationality | ***the** Japanese / **the** Asians / **the** Afro-Caribbeans* |
| the date (in speech) | *March **the** twenty-fifth / **the** twenty-fifth of March* |
| a type of entertainment | *We went to **the** cinema / **the** opera / **the** theatre.*<br>*She plays **the** guitar.* |
| the name of a hotel and restaurant | ***The** Hilton / **The** Sheraton* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

We do not use an article before:

| no article: use | examples |
|---|---|
| the plural form of a countable noun when it is used in a general sense | *I buy magazines about computers.*<br>✗ ~~*I like the music.*~~<br>✓ *I like music.* |
| an uncountable noun when it is used in a general sense | *She hates dishonesty.*<br>✗ ~~*Many people are afraid of the death.*~~<br>✓ *Many people are afraid of death.* |
| the name of a language | *She speaks fluent German.*<br>*Do you know any French?* |
| an adjective, unless the adjective is followed by a noun | *Her husband is tall.* (Compare: *She is married to* ***a*** *tall man.*)<br>✗ ~~*The talls have many advantages.*~~<br>✓ *Tall people have many advantages.* |
| an airport or train station | *Gatwick Airport / Charing Cross Station* |
| a university | *Cambridge University / London University* |
| a shop or bank named after people | *Barclays Bank / McDonald's / Harrod's* |
| a church or cathedral | *St Martin's Church / St Paul's Cathedral* |
| a meal | *have lunch / dinner* |
| a disease or illness | *Cancer causes a lot of suffering.* |
| a street or road | *Oxford Street / Fifth Avenue* |
| a mountain or continent | *Mount Olympus / Mount Everest; Europe / Asia* |
| a country, county, state, etc. | *Holland / Brixton / Texas / Devon* |
| a lake | *Lake Geneva / Lake Ontario* |
| a school, college, church, prison when we are not focusing on the particular one | *He was sent to prison.*<br>*She goes to school.* |
| a hospital, university, etc. when we think of the purpose of the institution, not the building | *He's in hospital.* |
| a way of travelling | *go by car / bus / train; go on foot* |

- We say *German* (e.g. *We learn German at school.*), but we say '*the German language*'.
- We do not use an article in common phrases such as *at work / home, in bed.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Complete the following sentences with *a, an, the* or no article.**

1 ..... audience clapped and cheered.
2 People say ..... British are not very friendly but I disagree.
3 If we do not protect ..... nature, our environment will get worse and worse.
4 I pick up ..... kids from ..... school and take them ..... home when Mary is at ..... work.
5 Take these letters to ..... post office, will you?
6 Are we going round to ..... Wilsons for supper on Saturday?
7 Where do you work during ..... day?
8 What will you do if they cut ..... electricity off?
9 She kissed him on ..... cheek.
10 The Government should tax ..... rich more and ..... poor less.
11 ..... power doesn't interest him but ..... money does.
12 We arrived at Heathrow and got ..... taxi which took us to ..... Oxford Street.

**2 Articles have been removed from the following passage. Write it again including 18 missing articles.**

### London Bridge is falling down

Romans invaded Britain in AD43 and, chasing ancient Britons along Thames, they came to first place where it was easy to cross. They built garrison there – and London was born. They also erected bridge over river. Garrison became major trading post. Later, bridge suffered neglect and whole area was raided by Vikings. In AD886 Alfred Great drove out raiders, bridge was repaired and city prospered again. Hundred years later, Vikings returned but King Ethelred sailed up Thames, attached ropes to London Bridge, headed downriver and pulled it down.

**3 Complete the paragraph below with *a, an, the* or no article.**

### *A day in the life of an ordinary man*

This morning I woke up around ten, I made ..... (1) cup of coffee, took it into ..... (2) bedroom and put it on ..... (3) table next to ..... (4) bed, on ..... (5) side my wife sleeps on. I go through this ritual twice ..... (6) week – I do it on ..... (7) Saturday and ..... (8) Sunday mornings. On ..... (9) other days of ..... (10) week, we go to ..... (11) work at different times and I always get up first to get ..... (12) kids ready for ..... (13) school. I drop them off outside ..... (14) school which is an old Victorian building on the corner of ..... (15) Hill Road, and then go straight to ..... (16) work.

I work in ..... (17) office in ..... (18) city centre and I always have ..... (19) problem finding ..... (20) parking space. My wife says I'm always complaining about ..... (21) traffic and the pollution, which is true – you see, I grew up in ..... (22) country, close to ..... (23) nature and I have never got used to living in ..... (24) city. I think the only thing I would miss about living in ..... (25) big city like this is going to ..... (26) concerts of all kinds. I love rock and classical music, too, and especially going to ..... (27) cinema, which I am particularly keen on. I also like ..... (28) good food and occasionally we go out and have ..... (29) dinner in a nice restaurant, but most of the time we eat at ..... (30) home, where the food is delicious – except when I make it!



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 12b determiners

Determiners include *a*, *an* and *the* (see 12a) and other words that come before nouns. Here is a list of common determiners excluding articles:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***a lot of/lots of*** | ***enough*** | ***most*** |
| ***all*** | ***every*** | ***much*** |
| ***another*** | ***few*** | ***neither*** |
| ***any*** | ***little*** | ***none/none of*** |
| ***both*** | ***a little of*** | ***other*** |
| ***each*** | ***many*** | ***several*** |
| ***either*** | ***more*** | ***some*** |

We use determines in the following ways:

| determiner | meaning / use | examples |
|---|---|---|
| ***all / all of*** | the complete amount, the whole number or amount of, every one of | *He had spent **all (of)** his life working in a factory.*<br>*He spent it **all** bottling lemon juice.* |
| | Note: We use *all of*, not *all*, before pronouns: We say ***all of them*** not ~~*all them*~~. | *There was a terrible storm but **all of us** managed to g back safely.* |
| ***another*** | an additional person or thing (used with singular countable nouns) | *We need **another** chair.* |
| ***any*** | for quantities which do not or may not exist (in negative sentences and questions) | *I don't have **any** money. Do you have **any** money on you?*<br>✗ ~~*I'm not sure if she has **some** brothers.*~~<br>✓ *I'm not sure if she has **any** brothers.* |
| | for quantities that may not exist (in conditional sentences) | *Please phone me if you have **any** problems.* |
| | it doesn't matter which one | *We can go to **any** restaurant you like.* |
| ***both / both of*** | two people or things together | ***Both (of)** her parents are doctors.* |
| | in the expression *both ... and* to emphasise that something is true of one thing and another | *He has lived in **both** Britain **and** America.* |
| | Notes:<br>1 We use *both of*, not *both*, before pronouns: We say ***both of them*** not ~~*both them*~~.<br>2 *Both* is always plural. | *I don't know which book to buy. Why don't you buy **both of them**?*<br>***Both** these books are mine.* |
| ***each / each of*** | every single one of two or more things or people (considered separately) | *Jane had a blister on **each** foot.*<br>***Each of** the children was given a present.* |
| | Note: We always follow *each* with a singular noun, but *each of* with a plural noun or pronoun and a singular verb. | ***Each** child was given a present.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

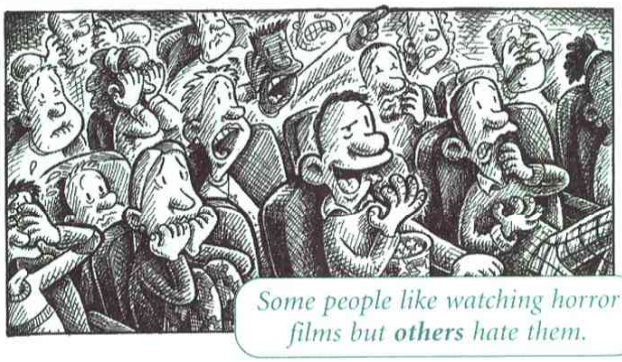
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***either* (…*or*)** | one or the other of two things or people | *I've lived in New York and Chicago but I don't like* ***either*** *city much.*<br>*You can have* ***either*** *this blue one* ***or*** *that one over there.* |
| | Notes:<br>1 We use *either of*, not *either*, before pronouns. We say ***either of them*** not ~~*either them*~~.<br>2 We follow *either* with a singular noun. | *'Do you want the big bag or the small one?' '****Either of them*** *would do.'*<br>***Either*** *bag will be suitable.* |
| ***every*** | each one of a group of things or people | ***Every*** *student has to fill in a questionnaire.* |
| | to emphasise that you are talking about the whole of sth | *I enjoyed* ***every*** *minute of the film.* (= I enjoyed the whole film) |
| | to indicate that sth happens at regular intervals of time or distance | *Richard visits his mother* ***every*** *week.*<br>*You should change the oil* ***every*** *5,000 miles.* |
| ***a few / a few of*** | a small number of; enough (with plural countable nouns) | *Yes, we have a* ***few*** *jobs available in our company.*<br>*I've read* ***a few of*** *her books.* |
| ***few / few of*** | not many, not enough (with plural countable nouns) | *Unfortunately, there are* ***few*** *jobs available at present.* (= not enough)<br>***Few of*** *the customers complained.* |
| ***a little / a little of*** | a small amount | *I told him* ***a little*** *bit about it.*<br>*The city is regaining* ***a little of*** *its former glory.* |
| ***little*** | not much (with uncountable nouns) | *Unfortunately, by then we had* ***little*** *money left.* |
| ***a lot of / lots of*** | a large amount | *There were* ***a lot of / lots of*** *people at the party.* |
| ***many / many of*** | a large number of people or things (with countable nouns) | ***Many*** *people find this kind of movie unpleasant.*<br>***Many of*** *our staff are part time.*<br>*How* ***many*** *brothers do you have?* |
| | Note: In this use, *many / many of* is more formal than *a lot of*. | |
| ***much / much of*** | a lot of (with uncountable nouns), used especially in negative sentences and questions | *There isn't* ***much*** *time – pack the bag quickly.*<br>*Do you get* ***much*** *chance to travel in your job?* |
| ***most / most of*** | nearly all | ***Most*** *universities offer a wide range of courses.*<br>***Most of*** *the people there were strangers.* |
| | Note: We use *most of*, not *most*, before pronouns. | ***Most of them*** *offer a wide range of courses.* |
| ***more*** | a larger amount | *She makes* ***more*** *phone calls than anyone else.* |
| | Notes:<br>1 We use *more of*, not *more* before pronouns. | *She likes* ***more of them*** *than I do.* |
| | 2 We often imply a comparison, without stating it. | *We sell* ***more*** *of these maps.* (= more than other kinds of maps) |
| | 3 We use a plural noun or pronoun after *more of*. | *We need* ***more of*** *these books.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***neither*** (…***nor***) | not one or the other of two people or things (with positive verbs) | ***Neither*** *parent cares what happens to the child.*<br>✗ ~~***Neither*** *John's father* ***nor*** *mine* ***couldn't*** *understand.*~~<br>✓ ***Neither*** *John's father* ***nor*** *mine* ***could*** *understand my problem.* |
| | Notes:<br>1 We use *neither of*, not *neither*, before pronouns.<br>2 We follow *neither* with a singular noun. | *Both players have been warned but* ***neither of them*** *seems to take it seriously.* |
| ***none of*** | not any of three or more things or people (with positive verbs) | ***None of*** *my friends phone me anymore.*<br>✗ ~~***All of us didn't want*** *to go to bed.*~~<br>✓ ***None of*** *us* ***wanted*** *to go to bed.* |
| ***other*** | people or things in addition to the ones already known | *You've already met Peter but I have two* ***other*** *brothers.* |
| | Note: We can use *others* or *the others* on its own without a noun. | ***The others*** *are waiting in the office.*<br>***Others*** *want this job if you turn it down.* |
| ***several / several of*** | some, but not a large quantity | *Milk will keep for* ***several*** *days in a fridge.* |
| | Note: We use *several of*, not *several*, before pronouns. | ***Several of us*** *think it's a bad idea.* |
| ***some / some of*** | not many or much (in affirmative statements) | *There are* ***some*** *people waiting outside.*<br>*There is* ***some*** *cheese in the fridge.* |
| | Note: We use *some of*, not *some*, before pronouns. | ***Some of them*** *are cold.* |
| | when we expect the answer yes or no (in questions) | *Could you give me* ***some*** *bread?*<br>*Would you like* ***some*** *orange juice?* |
| | a large amount of sth (with certain uncountable nouns) | *It will be* ***some*** *time before the bridge is finished.* |

- *Others* means 'other people'; *the others* means 'those not mentioned already'.
  *Some people like watching horror films but* ***others*** *hate them.*
  *Two climbers went to the top and* ***the others*** *waited in the tent.*
- We do not usually use two determiners together:
  ✗ ~~***Either other*** *plan is hopeless.*~~
  ✓ ***Either*** *plan is hopeless.*
  ✓ ***Both*** *plans are hopeless.*
- Singular countable nouns must always have an article or a determiner.
  ✗ ~~*You don't* ***have chance*** *of winning.*~~
  ✓ *You don't* ***have a / any chance*** *of winning.*



*Some people like watching horror films but* ***others*** *hate them.*

*Two climbers went to the top and* ***the others*** *waited in the tent.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Underline the correct alternative in the sentences below.**

1 *None of / Neither of* you need worry; I'm not going to ask any of you for a loan.
2 *None / Each* of the children will be met at the station, so they will be safe.
3 The price is sixty pounds a week, then ten pounds for *each / some* extra day.
4 *Every / Any* item has been carefully checked and they are all fine.
5 *Each / Every* of the children had the same weight at birth.
6 I have asked them both and *neither / both* of them knows the answer.
7 I have *every / all* record the group has ever made.
8 Freda had to stop and rest after *each / many* hundred metres or so.
9 Sadly, there were *few / a few* people at the concert.
10 I'd like to have *few / a few* words with you if you don't mind.
11 Fortunately, I had *a little / little* time to spare.
12 She had very *little / few* money – just *a few / a little* coins.
13 I had never seen so *much / many* bright stars in the sky.
14 These days *most / most of* crime is against property, not people.
15 The court case cost them *few / several* million dollars.
16 My mother has inherited *some / another* land in Australia.
17 Can you give me *some / enough* idea of the cost?
18 Can you pass me *other / another* mug?
19 We only spent *a few / many* days in Rome; on the first day we visited a museum and on the *other / others* days we just strolled around.
20 I can get to Edinburgh by plane or train but *either / neither* way it is very expensive.

**2 Look at the results of the UFO survey and then fill in each space in the text below with an appropriate word.**

### Survey: *Is there life on other planets?*

Number of people interviewed: 400
Age: 18+

| QUESTION | YES | NO |
|---|---|---|
| 1 Is there life on other planets? | 350 | 50 |
| 2 Has earth been visited by other species? | 25 | 375 |
| 3 Have you seen a UFO? | 3 | 397 |
| 4 Do you believe those who say they've seen a UFO? | 15 | 385 |
| 5 Do you have evidence of the existence of UFOs? | 0 | 400 |
| 6 Do you believe we will get evidence in the future? | 12 | 388 |

### Do you believe in UFOs?

In our survey, we asked ..... (1) hundred people whether they believed there was life on ..... (2) planets. The answer ..... (3) people gave was that there must be ..... (4) planets in the universe with ..... (5) kind of life on them. They thought it was unlikely that ..... (6) of the planets in the universe were deserted except for ours. On the other hand, very ..... (7) people thought we had actually been visited by any ..... (8) species. Hardly ..... (9) of the people we interviewed claimed that they had seen a UFO and only a ..... (10) believed stories told by ..... (11) people of meetings with aliens. ..... (12) of those who said they had first-hand experience could offer ..... (13) proof and, sadly, it seemed there was ..... (14) chance that in future anyone would come up with such proof. ..... (15) the people in the survey were adults.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 12c countable and uncountable nouns

We can count countable nouns. A countable noun has both singular and plural forms:
***apple / apples*** ***child / children***

- We cannot count uncountable nouns. An uncountable noun has no plural form and we do not use it with *a / an*:
  *We need new **furniture**.*
  ***Poverty** can lead to **unhappiness** and **despair**.*
- Opposite are some common errors:

✗ ~~*The money **are** insufficient.*~~
✓ *The money **is** insufficient.*
✗ ~~*They have **many works** to do.*~~
✓ *They have **a lot of work** to do.*
✗ ~~*The news **are** very hopeful.*~~
✓ *The news **is** very hopeful.*
✗ ~~*She gave me **a** good advice.*~~
✓ *She gave me **some** good advice.*
✗ ~~*For long **travels** we use the train.*~~
✓ *For long **journeys** we use the train.*

Below is a summary of the basic differences between countable and uncountable nouns:

| | countable example | uncountable example |
|---|---|---|
| use of *a, an, the* | *a book, the book* | *cheese, the cheese* |
| plural noun | *books, the books* | (no plural form) |
| *some* + noun | *some books* | *some cheese* |
| *any* + noun | *any book, any books* | *any cheese* |
| *enough* + noun | *enough books* | *enough cheese* |
| *many* + noun | *many books* | (not possible) |
| *few / a few* + noun | *(a) few books* | (not possible) |
| *less* + noun | (not possible) | *less cheese* |
| *little / a little* + noun | (not possible) | *(a) little cheese* |
| *much* + noun | (not possible) | *much cheese* |
| *that / this* + noun | *that / this book* | *that / this cheese* |
| *those / these* + noun | *those / these books* | (not possible) |

- We can also say:
  *This is **a fine cheese**.* (= a fine variety or type)
  ***These cheeses** are produced only in Italy.*
  (= these types of cheese)
- We can say *one fish, two fish, one deer, two deer.* We can also say *all the fishes in the sea.* (= the different varieties of fish)

## plural forms

- Here are nouns with regular plural forms:
  *computer / **computers***
  *address / **addresses***
  *box / **boxes***
  *city / **cities***
  *journey / **journeys***

- Here are examples of nouns with irregular plural forms:
  *aircraft / **aircraft***
  *calf / **calves***
  *child / **children***
  *cod / **cod***
  *deer / **deer***
  *foot / **feet***
  *fish / **fish***
  *fruit / **fruit***
  *loaf / **loaves***
  *mouse / **mice***
  *rendezvous / **rendezvous***
  *series / **series***
  *species / **species***
  *sheep / **sheep***
  *tooth / **teeth***
  *Walkman / **Walkmans***
  *wife / **wives***
  *woman / **women***



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## common mistakes with plurals

- Some uncountable nouns are often countable nouns in other languages and will cause special difficulty. Here are some of the most common ones:
  *She gave me **advice** but I didn't listen.*
  *Could you help me to carry all this **baggage**?*
  *The **countryside** here is beautiful.*
  *Accidents cause a lot of **damage** – be careful.*
  *I don't feel comfortable with electronic **equipment**.*
  *Can you give us any more **evidence**? This **evidence** is not very reliable.*
  *I like your **furniture** – where did you get it?*
  *Your **hair** looks great – how do you get it to look like that?*
  *She is in very good **health**.*
  *The teacher gives a lot of **homework** and expects it in on time.*
  *Where do you get your **information** from – is it reliable?*
  *Do you have much **knowledge** of economic theory?*
  *I don't need this **money** – take it back.*
  *The **news** says the **weather** is going to get better.*
  *What he said was **nonsense** – wasn't it?*
  *I've got **permission** to go.*
  *You've made **progress** – keep trying.*
  *I made the **spaghetti** especially for you – did you like it?*
  *I had a lot of **work** to do in town and I've only just finished it.* (Compare *I had lots of jobs and I've only just finished them.*)
- The words *means, series* and *species* look like plural nouns but they are usually countable and singular:
  *They found that the only **means** to cross the river was to swim.*
  *Which is your favourite **series** on TV?*
  *It was a **series** about an animal hospital.*
  *One **species** is destroyed in forest fires every day.*
- *Spaghetti* looks like a plural noun but it is uncountable:
  *The **spaghetti** is ready.*

## common uncountable nouns

- Below is a list of nouns which are uncountable. In some cases, there is a singular or plural use when we refer to a particular variety or example:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***absence*** | ***advice*** | ***age*** |
| ***agriculture*** | ***anger*** | ***atmosphere*** |
| ***baggage*** | ***beauty*** | ***behaviour*** |
| ***bread*** | ***childhood*** | ***comfort*** |
| ***company*** | ***concern*** | ***confidence*** |
| ***countryside*** | ***courage*** | ***damage*** |
| ***death*** | ***democracy*** | ***depression*** |
| ***design*** | ***duty*** | ***earth*** |
| ***education*** | ***electricity*** | ***energy*** |
| ***environment*** | ***equipment*** | ***evil*** |
| ***evidence*** | ***existence*** | ***experience*** |
| ***failure*** | ***faith*** | ***fear*** |
| ***flesh*** | ***food*** | ***freedom*** |
| ***fun*** | ***furniture*** | ***ground*** |
| ***growth*** | ***hair*** | ***happiness*** |
| ***health*** | ***help*** | ***homework*** |
| ***ice*** | ***industry*** | ***information*** |
| ***intelligence*** | ***justice*** | ***knowledge*** |
| ***love*** | ***luck*** | ***luggage*** |
| ***machinery*** | ***means*** | ***money*** |
| ***music*** | ***nature*** | ***news*** |
| ***nonsense*** | ***paper*** | ***peace*** |
| ***permission*** | ***poverty*** | ***pride*** |
| ***progress*** | ***reality*** | ***research*** |
| ***rubbish*** | ***seaside*** | ***spaghetti*** |
| ***traffic*** | ***training*** | ***transport*** |
| ***travel*** | ***weather*** | ***work*** |

- If we refer to a specific amount with certain uncountable nouns, we can use *a piece of, a bit of, a slice of,* etc:
  ***a bit of** cheese*
  ***a blob of** paint*
  ***a bunch of** flowers*
  ***a cup of** coffee*
  ***a drop of** water*
  ***a glass of** orange juice*
  ***a loaf of** bread*
  ***a lump of** sugar*
  ***a piece of** paper*
  ***a pile of** rubbish*
  ***a pool of** blood*
  ***a portion of** chicken*
  ***a slice of** bread*
  ***a spot of** rain*
  ***a touch of** flu*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

Some words can be both countable and uncountable. Here are examples:

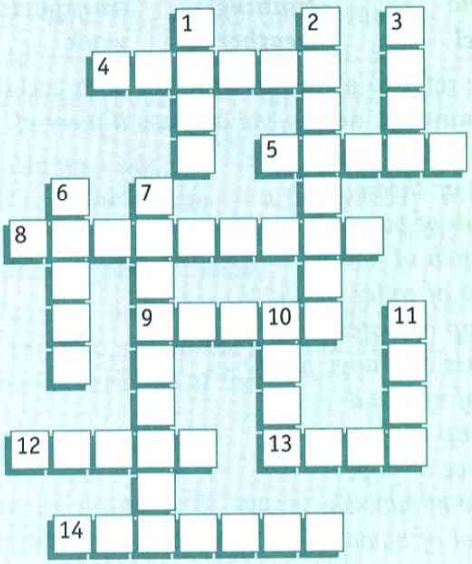
| noun | countable example | uncountable example |
|---|---|---|
| ***chicken*** | *He sat there and ate* ***a whole chicken****.* | *I'll have* ***some chicken*** *and chips, please.* |
| ***coffee*** | *I'd love* ***a coffee*** *now.* (= cup of coffee) | *Is there* ***any coffee*** *left?* |
| ***experience*** | *Failing an exam was* ***a new experience*** *for me.* | *Have you had* ***any*** *previous* ***experience****?* |
| ***fruit*** | *A kumquat is* ***an exotic fruit****.* | *You should eat* ***fruit*** *every day.* |
| ***hair*** | *The cat has left* ***white hairs*** *all over the sofa.* | *Get* ***your hair*** *cut – it's getting too long.* |
| ***juice*** | *I'd like* ***an orange juice****, please.* (= a glass of) | *I'll just squeeze* ***some juice*** *from these oranges.* |
| ***noise*** | *I heard* ***a noise*** *outside the window.* | *Stop making* ***so much noise****.* |

Sometimes, the countable and uncountable forms have completely different meanings:

| noun | countable example | uncountable example |
|---|---|---|
| ***iron*** | *Is* ***the iron*** *hot enough?* | *Spinach is full of* ***iron****.* |
| ***paper*** | *Go to the newsagents and get me* ***a paper****, will you?* (= newspaper) | *You'll need* ***some paper*** *to write on.* |
| ***wood*** | *There's* ***a wood*** *near our house.* | *His sculpture was made of* ***wood****.* |
| ***work*** | ***the complete works*** *of Shakespeare* | *I've got* ***a bit of work*** *to do now.* |

## Practice

**1 Complete the crossword using the clues.**



**Down**

1 By the time he got back, his ..... had grown past his shoulders.
2 No wonder she looks so tired – she's got twelve ..... to look after.
3 Have you heard from your parents? What's their latest ..... ?
6 I don't know whether I prefer the ..... of Strauss or Mozart.
7 Between the two of them, their ..... of how computers work is negligible.
10 Do you agree that there's far too much ..... in the world?
11 I've got a great deal of ..... left to do.

**Across**

4 The ..... of elderly people can really suffer in the winter months.
5 Within minutes, the vultures had stripped the bones of all their ..... .
8 I have to move all my ..... to my new house by the weekend.
9 I still stand by my claim that ..... make better drivers.
12 They swallowed their ..... and apologised.
13 With all the ..... in the world, I'm still not likely to pass this test.
14 With the destruction of the rainforests, we're losing a hundred ..... per week.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Fill in each space in the following sentences with an appropriate form of a countable or uncountable noun.**

1 I need some ..... about buying a house. I've never bought one before.
2 This type of bear has been declared an endangered ..... .
3 You should eat fresh ..... such as oranges every day.
4 ..... which is used by dentists should be kept clean.
5 *Beverly Hills 90210* is a TV ..... about young people in America.
6 She got ..... to leave class early because she wasn't feeling well.
7 Jane has long blond ..... that comes down to her shoulders.
8 Kids can use ..... for games but they also have access to the Internet.
9 You'll find all the ..... you need in the shed.
10 I have so much maths ..... to do that I won't be able to watch TV.

**3 Complete these pairs of sentences using the correct form of one of these words. Use *a / an* where necessary.**

*beer cod iron experience noise deer work*

1 I saw ..... grazing in the field and took a picture of it.
Yesterday, there were ..... in the field but now they've gone.
2 Two pieces of ..... and some chips, please.
The North Sea is full of ..... .
3 I'm thirsty. Let's have ..... in that pub over there.
In Britain, people go to pubs to drink ..... , not watch television.
4 The huge gate was made of ..... .
John bought himself ..... and started ironing his own clothes.
5 She's had ..... with children before and would make a good baby-sitter.
Moving house is ..... I'd rather forget.
6 *Hamlet* is one of Shakespeare's finest ..... .
Gareth has been without ..... for six months now and jobs are hard to find.
7 She'd been working in her room till ..... disturbed her.
In addition to car fumes, ..... can also be a form of pollution.

**4 Fill in the spaces in the following text with one appropriate word, or put – if no word is needed.**

## The chance of a job

David had been buying ..... (1) paper every day for months though he wasn't interested in ..... (2) news about the latest disasters around the world. It was ..... (3) work he wanted. David had been out of ..... (4) work for ages and when he got the chance of ..... (5) job in the local youth centre he applied at once. He rang and asked them for ..... (6) information about ..... (7) job and they told him he needed to have ..... (8) experience of working with ..... (9) children and if possible ..... (10) training in counselling techniques. David had quite a lot of ..... (11) knowledge of counselling because he had ..... (12) degree in psychology from ..... (13) Edinburgh University and at one time he had seriously considered doing ..... (14) research in educational psychology. Before going to the interview, he asked his mum for ..... (15) advice about what he should wear, and she told him to wear a suit and get his hair cut.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 12d uncountable nouns ending in -s; collective nouns

### uncountable nouns ending in -s

Some nouns end in *-s* but are uncountable and take a singular verb:

***Physics** is difficult.*
***Maths** is a compulsory subject.*

- Other examples include:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***economics*** | ***aerobics*** | ***athletics*** |
| ***classics*** | ***economics*** | ***genetics*** |
| ***linguistics*** | ***mathematics*** | ***measles*** |
| ***mumps*** | ***physics*** | |

✗ ~~*Mathematics **are** my favourite subject.*~~
✓ *Mathematics **is** my favourite subject.*
✗ ~~*He wears **a** glasses which make him look intelligent.*~~
✓ *He wears **glasses** which make him look intelligent.*

- Some uncountable nouns ending in *-s* also have a plural meaning:
  ***Politics** is a dirty business.*(= in general)
  ***His politics are** right wing.* (= specific)

### nouns that are always plural

Some nouns are always plural and take a plural verb. We normally use *the* with them:
***The talks** are going ahead between **the Government** and **the unions**.*

✗ ~~***The authority** had refused them their civil rights.~~
✓ ***The authorities** had refused them their civil rights.*

- Sometimes the noun has only a plural form:
  *His **clothes** are dirty but he is actually well off.*
  *I believe **congratulations** are in order!*

Below are some common plural nouns. (We use *the* with many of them. See the examples.)

| plural noun | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***authorities*** | people in charge | ***The** British **authorities** are investigating the problem.* |
| ***conditions*** | the physical situation | ***Conditions** in the prison are very poor.* |
| ***contents*** | the things inside | *He emptied **the contents** of his pocket.* |
| ***foundations*** | material under a building to support it | ***The foundations** of the building were laid ten years ago.* |
| ***outskirts*** | parts of the city furthest from the centre | ***The outskirts** of the city are a very nice place to have a house.* |
| ***premises*** | building or part of building that a shop uses | ***The premises** are in a new office block.* |
| ***races*** | an occasion when horses race | *They went for a day out at **the races**.* |
| ***resources*** | available money, equipment, skills, etc. | *We do not have **the resources** to deal with the problem.* |
| ***sights*** | places of interest in an area | *Let's go and see **the sights**.* |
| ***stairs*** | steps inside a house | ***The stairs** are made of wood.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

- We often use *my, her, his,* etc., with these plural nouns:

| plural noun | example |
|---|---|
| ***activities*** | *Are you aware of* ***our activities?*** |
| ***feelings*** | *You've hurt* ***her feelings.*** |
| ***headquarters*** | ***Their headquarters*** *are in New York.* |
| ***likes and dislikes*** | *We discussed* ***our likes and dislikes.*** |
| ***movements*** | *The police traced* ***his movements.*** |
| ***terms*** | *These are* ***our terms*** *for ending the strike.* |
| ***travels*** | ***His travels*** *have provided good material for a book.* |

We often use some plural nouns without an article or determiner:

| plural noun | example |
|---|---|
| ***appearances*** | ***Appearances*** *can be deceptive.* |
| ***congratulations*** | ***Congratulations*** *on your wedding.* |
| ***lodgings*** | *He rented* ***lodgings*** *near the college.* |
| ***refreshments*** | ***Refreshments*** *will be served in the interval.* |
| ***troops*** | ***Troops*** *were sent in to restore order.* |
| ***supplies*** | *They ran out of* ***supplies.*** |

- We can use some words either with *the* or with no article:
  ***The goods*** *in the airport lounge are sold duty-free.*
  ***Goods*** *must be paid for before leaving.*
  ***The expenses*** *for her trip were paid by the firm.*
  *Imagine the trip – no work and all* ***expenses*** *paid!*

### Clothes and tools

Many clothes, tools and equipment are designed with two parts joined together. We use them as plurals with *-s* and a plural verb:

*His* ***glasses are*** *new.*
*Bring me the* ***pliers*** *which* ***are*** *on the table.*
*The* ***scissors are*** *in the drawer.*
*She was wearing* ***shorts*** *which* ***were*** *too big for her.*
*My* ***trousers are*** *dirty.*

- Other examples include:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***binoculars*** | ***braces*** | ***compasses*** |
| ***dungarees*** | ***handcuffs*** | ***jeans*** |
| ***overalls*** | ***pants*** | ***pyjamas*** |
| ***scales*** | ***sunglasses*** | ***tights*** |
| ***spectacles*** | ***trunks*** | ***underpants*** |

- To refer to a single item we say:
  ***a pair of scissors*** ***a pair of glasses***
  ***a pair of jeans*** ***a pair of tights***
- When we use the expression *a pair of* with a plural noun, the verb that follows is singular if it is in the same clause and plural if it is in a relative clause:
  *This pair of jeans* ***is*** *new.*
  *I bought a pair of jeans which* ***were*** *much cheaper.*

## collective nouns

Collective nouns refer to a group of people or things, e.g. *army, committee, team.* We can think of them as either a single unit or as members of a group:

| | |
|---|---|
| collective noun + singular verb (a single unit) | ***The team is*** *the best in the country.* |
| | ***The council is*** *building a new road.* |
| collective noun + plural verb (members of the group) | ***The team are*** *confident of victory.* |
| | ***The council are*** *voting on the issue.* |

- Here is a list of common collective nouns:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***army*** | ***audience*** | ***the BBC*** |
| ***community*** | ***class*** | ***committee*** |
| ***crew*** | ***data*** | ***the European Union*** |
| ***family*** | ***government*** | ***group*** |
| ***gang*** | ***jury*** | ***media*** |
| ***herd*** | ***press*** | ***public*** |
| ***staff*** | ***team*** | ***the United Nations*** |

- These words take only a plural verb:
  ***Cattle*** *are kept for their meat.*
  ***The people*** *are very pleased.*
  ***The police*** *have been called in.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space with an appropriate word from the box.**

*pair of shorts* *foundations* *scissors* *jury* *expenses* *media*
*company* *interests* *troops* *army* *supplies*

1 You're very lucky – travelling around the world, staying in nice hotels, all ..... paid.
2 The mass ..... nowadays, TV and the press, have enormous power.
3 In the summer, you can't go around wearing long trousers all the time. You'll need a nice .....
4 Can you pass me those ..... so I can cut this article out of the paper?
5 The ..... have weighed all the evidence and have found the accused guilty.
6 She lives alone and just needs ..... now and again, someone to talk to.
7 What are your .....? I mean, do you have any hobbies? Do you play any sports?
8 Our ..... are ready to attack the enemy; they have a bigger ..... than we have but it isn't as well equipped with weapons and tanks.
9 We're running out of food and water – we'll have to telephone and ask for more ..... to be sent.
10 They laid the ..... of the building months ago but they still haven't started to build it.

**2 Complete the following sentences with the appropriate verb, article or pronoun.**

1 Physics ..... an interesting subject at school but I wasn't very good at ..... .
2 Athletics ..... less popular before the Olympics made ..... fashionable.
3 Politics ..... by no means the only area where women are doing better but ..... is one of the most important.
4 Classics ..... what I wanted to study but my parents persuaded me that economics ..... more useful so I did ..... instead.
5 I think you hurt ..... feelings when you forgot to invite her to your party.
6 The goods ..... being packed now and ..... will be delivered first thing tomorrow morning.
7 Could you tell me a bit about ..... likes and dislikes? ..... mathematics your best subject?
8 ..... police ..... co-operating with ..... authorities in other countries which have a drugs problem.
9 The Government ..... planning new taxes but ..... don't know yet whether their own supporters will accept such a policy.
10 The audience ..... requested not to bring ..... refreshments into the auditorium.

*Two's **company**; three's **a crowd**.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 12e suffixes (5)

## *ion*

We use most suffixes to change a word to a different part of speech (See also 1e, 3e, 4e, 10e, 13e).

A verb + *ion*, *tion*, etc. makes a noun:
*invent* (verb) + ***ion*** = *invention* (noun)
*decorate* (verb) + ***tion*** = *decoration* (noun)

Here are nouns using the suffix *ion*. Note the changes in spelling:

| verb ending | + suffix = noun | example |
|---|---|---|
| -ss | + ***ion*** | *confession depression discussion impression possession profession* |
| -nt | + ***ion*** | *invention* |
| -de | + ***sion*** | *collision conclusion decision exclusion explosion intrusion provision seclusion* |
| -se | + ***sion*** | *confusion immersion repulsion revision* |
| -it | + ***sion*** | *admission omission permission* (but: *limit – limitation, visit – visitation*) |
| -ere | + ***sion*** | *cohesion* |
| -ert | + ***sion*** | *diversion inversion* |
| -nd | + ***sion*** | *expansion extension* |
| -ate, -ute, -ce | + ***tion*** | *collocation complication decoration deflation delegation education excavation federation graduation operation pollution production* |
| -se, -ite, -ote | + ***ation*** | *accusation invitation privatisation quotation* |
| -ge, -ve, -ire | + ***ation*** | *admiration allegation expiration starvation* |
| -t | + ***ation*** | *adaptation flotation* |
| -er | + ***ation*** | *alteration* |
| -rm | + ***ation*** | *formation* |
| -py | + ***ation*** | *occupation* |
| -ue | + ***ation*** | *valuation* |
| -ify | + ***ication*** | *classification identification qualification* |
| -ish | + ***ition*** | *abolition demolition* |
| -ose | + ***ition*** | *exposition imposition opposition* |
| -eat | + ***ition*** | *repetition* |
| -dd | + ***ition*** | *addition* |

- Some nouns ending in *ion* do not have a first part that exists separately, for example: *incursion jubilation nutrition tradition*
- Some nouns ending in *ion* are from adjectives, for example: *precision* (from *precise*) *profusion* (from *profuse*)



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

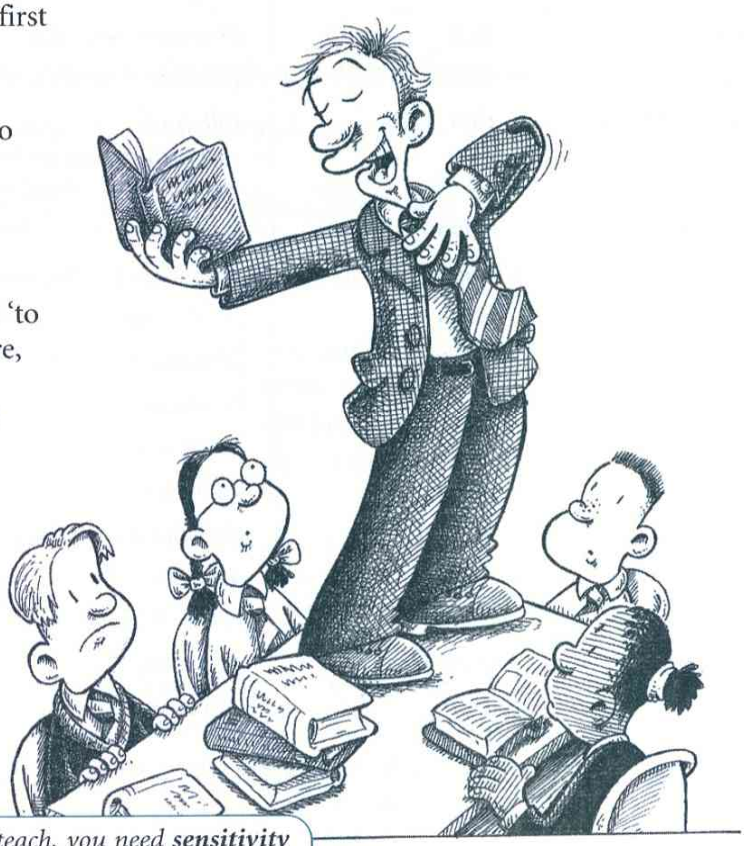
## *ity*

An adjective + the suffix *ity* makes a noun:
*active* (adjective) + ***ity*** = *activity* (noun)
*invisible* (adjective) + ***bility*** = *invisibility* (noun)

Here are nouns using the suffix *ity*. Note the changes in spelling:

| adj ending | + suffix = noun | example |
|---|---|---|
| -e | + ***ity*** | *activity futility mobility opportunity scarcity security severity* |
| -ive | + ***ity*** | *creativity productivity sensitivity* (but: *authoritative – authority*) |
| -ed, -id | + ***ity*** | *celebrity humidity stupidity validity* |
| -nal | + ***ity*** | *community eternity* |
| -al, -an, -ar | + ***ity*** | *equality fatality humanity mortality normality reality similarity* |
| -ary | + ***ity*** | *necessity* |
| -ic | + ***ity*** | *publicity* |
| -or | + ***ity*** | *majority minority* |
| -ous | + ***osity*** | *curiosity generosity* (but: *hilarious – hilarity, prosperous – prosperity*) |
| -ble | + ***bility*** | *acceptability advisability credibility eligibility flexibility illegibility instability invisibility irritability possibility readability reliability responsibility sensibility suitability visibility* (but: *hospitable – hospitality*) |

- Some nouns ending in *ity* do not have a first part that exists separately, for example: *affinity calamity heredity vicinity*
- We use *sensitivity* to refer to 'the ability to understand other people's feelings and problems':
  *To teach young children, you need lots of* ***sensitivity*** *and imagination.*
- *Sensibility* is a formal word which means 'to understand feelings expressed in literature, music, art':
  *An art critic is a person of* ***sensibility*** *and perception.*



*To teach, you need* ***sensitivity*** *and* ***imagination****.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

Less common noun and adjective suffixes are:

| noun suffix | examples |
|---|---|
| *ure* | close – closure, press – pressure, expense – expenditure, natural – nature, pleasant – pleasure |
| *ence* | correspond – correspondence, exist – existence, patient – patience, refer – reference, scientific – science<br>Note: *consequences* is almost always plural. |
| *ance* | appear – appearance, guide – guidance, insure – insurance, perform – performance, reluctant – reluctance |
| *y* | discover – discovery, envious – envy, jealous – jealousy, honest – honesty, trend – trendy, apologetic – apology, various –variety, sympathetic – sympathy, brave – bravery, cruel – cruelty, loyal – loyalty, miserable – misery, poor – poverty |
| *cy* | fluent – fluency, frequent – frequency, tend – tendency, efficient – efficiency, private – privacy |

| adjective suffix | examples |
|---|---|
| *cal* | geography – geographical, history – historical, music – musical, philosophy – philosophical, psychology – psychological |

## Practice

**1 These nouns are formed with the suffix *ion*. Complete the chart with the original verbs. There is an example at the beginning.**

| noun | verb | noun | verb |
|---|---|---|---|
| discussion | discuss | | |
| 1 decision | ..... | 13 expansion | ..... |
| 2 abolition | ..... | 14 opposition | ..... |
| 3 addition | ..... | 15 graduation | ..... |
| 4 accusation | ..... | 16 identification | ..... |
| 4 flotation | ..... | 17 decoration | ..... |
| 5 demolition | ..... | 18 occupation | ..... |
| 7 repetition | ..... | 19 collision | ..... |
| 8 rendition | ..... | 20 permission | ..... |
| 9 confession | ..... | 21 qualification | ..... |
| 10 cohesion | ..... | 22 starvation | ..... |
| 11 seclusion | ..... | 23 abolition | ..... |
| 12 reversion | ..... | 24 valuation | ..... |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a noun that fits in the space in the same line.**

1 On Saturday we had a long ..... about where to go for our summer holidays. DISCUSS
2 Whose ..... was it to make sure the bills were paid? RESPONSIBLE
3 There is a ..... of a new earthquake in the region. POSSIBLE
4 She went through a long period of ..... when she lost her job. DEPRESS
5 The ..... of the bomb was heard several kilometres away. EXPLODE
6 What made you choose law as a ..... ? PROFESS
7 If you don't do more ..... before the exam, you're not going to pass. REVISE
8 Scientists have made an important ..... about why we grow old. DISCOVER
9 The actor gave the finest ..... of her career. PERFORM
10 There has been an increase in the ..... of bank-robberies lately. FREQUENT
11 This insurance plan can offer your family financial ..... in case of death or accident. SECURE
12 The ..... of people in this city live in flats because it's cheaper. MAJOR

**3 Complete the second sentence so that it is as a similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.**

1 The economic crisis forced them to close the factory.
**led**
The economic crisis ..... of the factory.

2 I am very pleased to introduce our next speaker.
**gives**
It ..... to introduce our next speaker.

3 For the next three years they corresponded regularly.
**continued**
They ..... for the next three years.

4 We don't have any proof that life exists on other planets.
**prove**
We ..... of life on other planets.

5 Louise was very patient with me when I was ill and irritable.
**showed**
Louise ..... with me when I was ill and irritable.

6 We agreed never to refer to the matter again.
**make**
We agreed not ..... to the matter again.

7 The Curies are best known for discovering radium.
**famous**
The Curies are ..... of radium.

8 It could rain tomorrow.
**is**
There ..... rain tomorrow.

9 Peter has always been very generous with his friends.
**great**
Peter has always ..... towards his friends.

10 You will be able to take the exam one more time.
**given**
You will ..... to retake the exam.

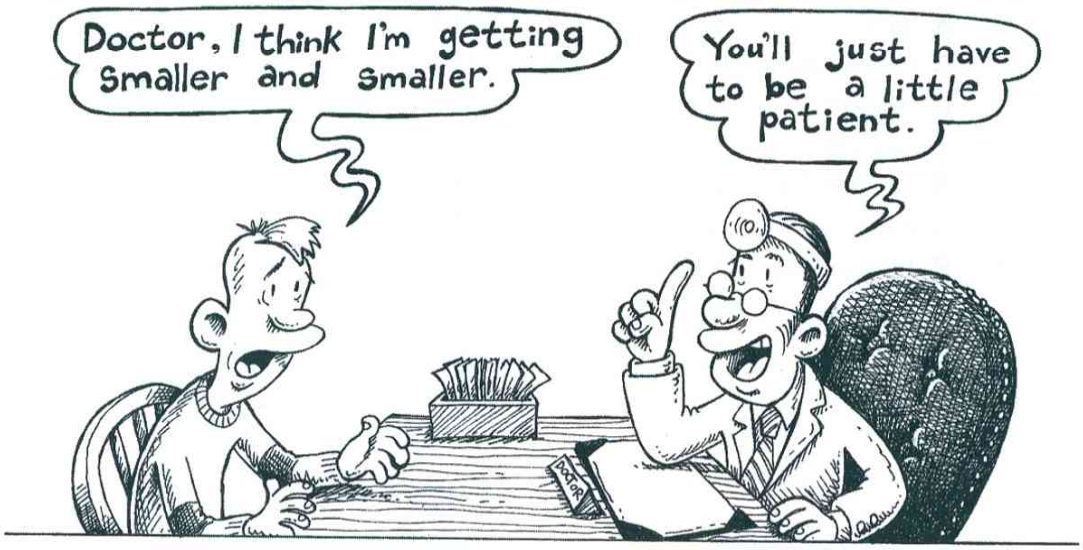


PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**4** **Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits the space in the same line. The first (0) is given as an example.**

## How to learn vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| Students are under enormous .....pressure..... (0) to learn huge | PRESS |
| amounts of vocabulary but they are rarely given | |
| ..... (1) as to how to go about it. They have | GUIDE |
| a ..... (2) to try and learn long lists by heart, but | TEND |
| this is hardly the most ..... (3) approach to the | EFFICIENCY |
| problem. The golden rule is to do lots of ..... (4) | REVISE |
| at regular intervals. Secondly, students should concentrate | |
| on words with the highest ..... (5), particularly | FREQUENT |
| everyday words which also improve the students' | |
| spoken ..... (6). They should also take every | FLUENT |
| ..... (7) to use the words in communication – | OPPORTUNE |
| there is considerable ..... (8) evidence that | PSYCHOLOGY |
| learners who like using the foreign language improve | |
| their oral ..... (9) and their overall | PERFORM |
| ..... (10) of the language much more rapidly | ACQUIRE |
| than students who are ..... (11) to practise the | RELUCTANCE |
| language in real situations. | |






PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Exam practice 6

## Part 1

For questions **1–15**, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

**Example: 0** **A** quiet **B** quite **C** more quiet **D** quietly

### NIGHT VISITOR

She put the key in the keyhole as ..... (**0**) as she could but she found it ..... (**1**) as the door was old and rusty. As she ..... (**2**) opened the door, it squeaked ..... (**3**) on its old hinges. 'I wish they'd oil the thing a bit more ..... (**4**),' she muttered to herself ..... (**5**). She closed the door ..... (**6**) behind her and then tiptoed ..... (**7**) across the room. Unfortunately, this time it was the floorboards that betrayed her as they creaked ..... (**8**) with every step she took. It had been so ..... (**9**) since the old house had been built – it had ..... (**10**) been about two hundred years before and for all Helen knew they had ..... (**11**) replaced the original floorboards. Helen's heart began to beat ..... (**12**). It was one o'clock. Helen's parents must have gone to bed ..... (**13**). This was most unusual. Rarely ..... (**14**) to bed before she got home. No sooner had she put her foot on the first stair ..... (**15**) she heard a muffled voice call out, 'Who's there? Is that you, Helen?'

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1** | **A** hardly | **B** easy | **C** hard | **D** easily |
| **2** | **A** slowly | **B** loudly | **C** careful | **D** noisy |
| **3** | **A** lightly | **B** noisily | **C** softly | **D** gently |
| **4** | **A** frequent | **B** oftener | **C** sooner | **D** frequently |
| **5** | **A** with angry | **B** angry | **C** angrily | **D** from anger |
| **6** | **A** shyly | **B** efficiently | **C** carefully | **D** fast |
| **7** | **A** softly | **B** gentle | **C** finely | **D** shortly |
| **8** | **A** aloud | **B** loud | **C** loudly | **D** allowed |
| **9** | **A** along | **B** long time | **C** long | **D** a long time |
| **10** | **A** probably | **B** certainly | **C** definitely | **D** may not |
| **11** | **A** rarely | **B** scarcely | **C** never | **D** occasionally |
| **12** | **A** fastly | **B** more faster | **C** more fast | **D** faster |
| **13** | **A** early | **B** more earlier | **C** the earliest | **D** more early |
| **14** | **A** they went | **B** they did go | **C** they have gone | **D** did they go |
| **15** | **A** then | **B** than | **C** that | **D** there |

SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Part 2

For questions **16–30**, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only **one** word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### SETTING OUT

It was only a two-day crossing from Piraeus to Alexandria, but ....as.... (**0**) soon as I saw the dingy little Greek steamer I felt I ought to have made ..... (**16**) arrangements. Even from ..... (**17**) quay it looked overcrowded, like ..... (**18**) refugee ship; and when I went aboard I found there wasn't ..... (**19**) room for everybody. The bar was the size of ..... (**20**) cupboard and there was an old barman serving breakfast snacks. The man looked as if he had spent ..... (**21**) night in the bar. I asked for a black coffee and a ..... (**22**) of toast. I looked around for a chair but found that ..... (**23**) only one that was not occupied was near the ..... (**24**) which kept flying open to let in the cold winter wind. The floor space was taken up by a ..... (**25**) of noisy Italian schoolchildren screaming at the tops of ..... (**26**) voices and chasing each other round the room. Most ..... (**27**) them were in shorts and T-shirts but a ..... (**28**) had put their anoraks on to protect them from the chilly breeze. My Italian ..... (**29**) pretty fluent and no doubt I would get the ..... (**30**) to practise over the next two days. I drank my coffee and made my way out to the deck.

SCORE _____

## Part 3

For Questions **31–40**, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. **Do not change the word given**. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (**0**).

**Example:** **0** I had only just said goodbye to John when Maria turned up.
**hardly**
Hardly had I said goodbye to John when Maria turned up.

**31** There has never been a time when I didn't like music.
**fond**
I ..... music.

**32** I don't think he's likely to come to work today.
**probably**
He ..... to work today.

**33** He did quite badly in the last exam.
**well**
He ..... in the last exam.

**34** She doesn't smoke as much as she used to.
**less**
She ..... she used to.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**35** The teacher's voice was too quiet.
**loudly**
The teacher ..... enough.

**36** I haven't been to a party as enjoyable as this for ages.
**been**
Rarely ..... to a party as enjoyable as this.

**37** As soon as she finished her chocolate, she started eating an ice-cream.
**finished**
Scarcely ..... when she started eating an ice-cream.

**38** She came into the room as soon as I left.
**sooner**
No ..... than she entered the room.

**39** You must work harder.
**working**
You ..... enough.

**40** I'll have finished the book in a very short while.
**long**
It won't ..... finished the book.

SCORE _____

## Part 4

For questions **41–55**, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning (**0**) and (**00**).

### TIPS ON ERROR DETECTION

**0** We asked teachers how students were coping with the error ✓
**00** detection exercise in the exam. The most teachers said The

**41** students enjoy looking for more errors; the task was often seen .....
**42** as a competition to see who could find the most of errors. .....
**43** The examiners' reports of included tips to help students .....
**44** achieve the best of possible results in the exam. .....
**45** To read to the end of the sentence before you decide .....
**46** if a line is correct or incorrect. The any evidence that .....
**47** a line is incorrect may be in the part of the sentence .....
**48** on the next line. Pay particular attention to each .....
**49** articles, the relative pronouns and prepositions. .....
**50** Another of problem may be auxiliary and modal verbs. .....
**51** In the error detection text there may be a final line which .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**52** ends the text. Because of the line has no number, no answer .....
**53** is necessary. If candidates think a line is correct, they should .....
**54** put a tick on the answer sheet. If they leave as a blank .....
**55** space, no mark will neither be given. Other marks, such as a cross, should not be used. .....

SCORE

## Part 5

For questions **56–65**, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

**SPEAKING ENGLISH WELL**

| | |
|---|---|
| I have a Dutch friend who speaks English *beautifully* (**0**). I have | BEAUTY |
| always wondered how the Dutch manage to learn languages | |
| so ..... (**56**). The Dutch, like the Germans, often speak | SUCCESS |
| English ..... (**57**) than some native speakers or at | WELL |
| least they seem to speak the language more ..... (**58**) | CORRECT |
| than some English people. Will says that if you want to speak | |
| English ..... (**59**) with a reasonable accent, you should | FLUENCY |
| listen to tapes as ..... (**60**) as possible. If you can afford | FREQUENCY |
| ..... (**61**) to go to an English-speaking country, you should | OCCASION |
| go but you should also study the rules of English ..... (**62**), | CARE |
| especially if you want to speak ..... (**63**). Will also | ACCURACY |
| feels very ..... (**64**) that there are no magic solutions | STRENGTH |
| but that you ..... (**65**) have to work hard at the | SIMPLICITY |
| new language. | |

SCORE

TOTAL SCORE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 13

**AGENDA**

**Grammar**

- 13a relative clauses
- 13b participles
- 13c linking words and phrases

**Vocabulary**

- 13d phrasal verbs with *get*
- 13e suffixes (6)

# Entry test

**Underline the correct answer in 1–5.**

1 The woman *who / who she* lives next door is a university professor.
2 This is the school *where / when* I used to go as a child.
3 That's the man *that his / whose* house was burnt down.
4 The company for *where / which* he works has gone bankrupt.
5 *Jill, who / Jill who* works as a nurse, has just written her first book.

**Now look at 13a on page 230.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.**

6 I saw a woman ..... in the corner on her own so I went over to have a chat.
A stand B to stand C who stands D standing

7 She was lying in the middle of the road, ..... for help.
A she was crying B she cried C crying D and she crying

8 He just sits around all day, ..... nothing.
A doing B to doing C to do D is doing

9 ..... that I wouldn't pass the exam, I didn't bother to take it.
A I know B Knowing C I knew D I knowing

10 ..... our meal, we had a cup of coffee.
A Finished B We have finished C Having finished
D Have finished

**Now look at 13b on page 234.**

SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.**

11 ..... the house is old, it is still very warm.
A Although B Even C Despite D No matter

12 She liked teaching in spite of ..... it was badly paid.
A it was a fact B the fact that C – D in fact

13 Despite ....., she wouldn't take her coat off.
A it was hot B that it was hot C being heat D the heat

14 I was hoping to deal with this matter quickly. ..... it is more difficult than I thought.
A No matter, B No matter C However, D However

15 I am going to get this qualification, ..... long it takes.
A no matter B however C nevertheless, D while

**Now look at 13c on page 236.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.**

16 If we're going to share the same office we'd better learn to get ..... .
A by B around C along D off

17 By the way, did you get your money ..... when the concert was cancelled?
A over B out C away D back

18 I have a committee meeting till eleven o'clock but I should be able to get ..... before then.
A away B in C off D up

19 I got ..... the Arts Faculty at the University of London to study history.
A through B on C into D from

20 I still haven't got ..... the shock of failing to get my degree.
A through B off C together D over

**Now look at 13d on page 238.**

SCORE _____

**For questions 21–25, fill in the spaces with the correct form of the words in the list.**

*threat* *addiction* *envy* *approve* *history*

21 You're becoming a TV ..... – why don't you read a book for a change?

22 The audience cheered and clapped in ..... .

23 Ancient Greek ..... like Herodotus and Thucydides are still popular.

24 She stared ..... at Helen's beautiful new dress.

25 The Government would not give in to terrorist ..... .

**Now look at 13e on page 240.**

SCORE _____

TOTAL SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 13a relative clauses

Relative clauses give more information about something we have just mentioned in a sentence. There are two types of relative clause.

### Type A

Type A identifies which person or thing we mean exactly. (We also call it a 'identifying' or 'defining' relative clause.) We cannot leave information in defining relative clauses out of a sentence:

*It's the car* ***that I saw here yesterday.***

✗ ~~*It's the car*~~. This sentence is incomplete.

The table below shows how we form defining relative clauses:

| | subject | object | possession |
|---|---|---|---|
| people | ***who / that:***<br>*She's the woman* ***who / that reads the news on TV.*** | ***who / whom / that:***<br>*She's the woman* ***(who / whom / that) I saw on TV last night.*** | ***whose:***<br>*She's the woman* ***whose car was stolen last night.*** |
| animals / things | ***which / that:***<br>*That's the kind of dog* ***which / that makes a good pet.***<br>*I don't want a car* ***which / that breaks down all the time.*** | ***which / that:***<br>*It's the kind of dog* ***(which / that) I'd like to have.***<br>*This is the house* ***(which / that) we live in.*** | ***whose:***<br>*That's the dog* ***whose owner was arrested.***<br>*That's the shop* ***whose windows were smashed.*** |

- We can leave out the relative pronoun if it refers to the object of the sentence:
  *It's the job* ***(which / that)*** *I'd like to have.*
- We do not use commas in defining relative clauses.
- We can also use the relative pronoun as the object after a preposition (*for which, to whom*, etc.). We now usually omit the relative pronoun object and put the preposition at the end of the clause:
  *Miss Berry was the person* ***to whom I sent the letter.*** (formal)
  *Miss Berry was the person* ***I sent the letter to.***
- *Whom* as the object is now formal. We commonly use *who*, except when we say *to / for / with whom*:
  *Is she the person* ***to whom*** *you gave the letter?*
  *That's the company* ***for whom*** *you work, isn't it?*
  *He's the man* ***with whom*** *I share an office.*

  ✗ ~~*He's the person* ***whom*** *I saw her with*~~.
  ✓ *He's the person* ***who*** *I saw her with.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Type B

Type B gives additional information about a person or thing. (We also call it a 'non-identifying' or 'non-defining' relative clause.) The sentence still makes sense without the non-identifying relative clause:

*The summer here, **which I don't like**, lasts for months.*
*The summer here lasts for months.*

The table below shows how we form non-identifying relative clauses:

| | subject | object | possession |
|---|---|---|---|
| people | ***who:*** *His wife, **who is French**, speaks three languages.* | ***who / whom:*** *His wife, **who / whom I met in Paris**, is French.* | ***whose:*** *His wife, **whose car was stolen**, is French.* |
| animals / things | ***which:*** *The novel, **which has already sold thousands of copies**, is the author's first one.* *The computers, **which have been on sales for months**, proved to be unreliable.* | ***which:*** *The book, **which I read last week**, is brilliant.* *The car, **which we liked a lot**, was much too expensive to buy.* | ***whose:*** *The dog, **whose name was Spot**, was very playful.* |

- We cannot usually leave out the relative pronoun (*who, whom, whose*) if it refers to the object of the sentence, especially in spoken English.
- We use commas with non-identifying relative clauses. Note possible changes in meaning between Type A (without commas) and Type B (with commas):
  *Mr Smith who teaches English is so fat!* (= it is the Mr Smith who teaches English that I am referring to)
  *Mr Smith, who teaches English, is so fat!* (= Mr Smith is fat and also teaches English)

## relative adverbs

Relative adverbs (*when, where, why*) describe time, place or reason. They have a close relationship with the pattern: preposition + relative pronoun. Instead of a relative adverb, we can use a preposition + *which*:

| type | relative adverb | preposition + *which* |
|---|---|---|
| **time** | *That was the year **when** I graduated.* | *That was the year **in which** I graduated.* |
| | *May 6 was the day **when** we got married.* | *May 6 was the day **on which** we got married.* |
| | *Twelve o'clock was the time **when** we met.* | *Twelve o'clock was the time **at which** we met.* |
| **place** | *That's the factory **where** they make chemicals.* | *That's the factory **in which** they make chemicals.* |
| | *That's the spot **where** the statue will be built.* | *That's the spot **on which** the statue will be built.* |
| | *Mykonos is the island **where** we go every summer.* | *Mykonos is the island **to which** we go every summer.* |
| **reason** | *I'll tell you the reason **why** you were fired.* | *I'll tell you the reason **for which** you were fired.* |

- We can omit relative adverbs, except for *where* in some sentences.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## *whatever, whichever,* etc.

We use relative clauses beginning *whatever, whichever, whoever, wherever* or *whenever* to talk about someone or something when it does not matter what, which, who, etc:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **things** | ***whichever*** | *Buy* ***whichever*** *book you want.* (= any book you want) |
| | ***whatever*** | ***Whatever*** *she can do to help, she will.* (= anything she can) |
| **people** | ***whoever*** | *Invite* ***whoever*** *you like.* (= anyone) |
| **places** | ***wherever*** | *I'll go* ***wherever*** *I like.* ( = to any place) |
| **time** | ***whenever*** | *Come* ***whenever*** *you like.* ( = at any time) |

• *Whichever* usually comes before a noun.

## Practice

**1 Join the following pairs of sentences using *who, whose, which, where* or *when.* Make the underlined sentence the relative clause. There is an example at the beginning.**

*Example:* The teacher is very amusing. She teaches French.
The teacher who teaches French is very amusing. (Type A)
or: The teacher, who teaches French, is very amusing. (Type B)

1 The new director is very popular. She gets on well with everyone.
.....

2 The beach is very quiet. We always go to it.
.....

3 I went to see the film *Titanic.* I enjoyed it very much.
.....

4 Our cat is called William. We've had him for five years.
.....

5 It was 1998. I met her for the first time.
.....

6 The house is the biggest in the village. The doctor lives there.
.....

7 George speaks Spanish. His wife is from Argentina.
.....

8 The winters are very cold. I enjoy them.
.....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Rewrite these sentences, putting the preposition at the end.**

*Example:* Computer programming is something about which I know little.
Computer programming is something (which / that) I know little about.

1 It was a mistake for which they have already apologised.
.....

2 Mathematics is a subject in which she has little interest.
.....

3 It was the guerrillas to whom they sold the weapons.
.....

4 It was the Queen to whom the Prime Minister sent the letter.
.....

5 It was the bank from which he borrowed money.
.....

6 That was the year in which I was born.
.....

7 March 25 is the day on which the country celebrates its independence.
.....

8 That's the hospital in which the twins were born.
.....

9 That is the island on which we spent our honeymoon.
.....

10 These are the reasons for which I chose to marry him.
.....

*People **who live in glass houses** shouldn't throw stones.*

**3 Now rewrite sentences 7–10 above using the relative adverb *when, where* or *why*.**

*Example:*
6 That was the year when I was born.
7 .....
8 .....
9 .....
10 .....

**4 Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word. The first (0) is given as an example.**

## The return of the native

1980 was the year ..when... (0) I first went back to the small village ..... (1) I was born. I was only three years old ..... (2) my parents went to settle in the States, ..... (3) I now consider my home. But like a lot of first-generation Americans ..... (4) parents were constantly talking about 'home' as another country, I was curious to find out more about this place from ..... (5) we had emigrated more than twenty years before. The reason ..... (6) I hadn't visited the land of my parents earlier – something .....(7) I now regret – perhaps had something to do with the way ..... (8) they would always talk about it as if it were my real home, ..... (9) for me was the States. The first impression I got on arriving in Santa Maria was the heat, ..... (10) was unbearable. The people ..... (11) were waiting to greet me at the airport were all incredibly friendly and they spoke of the time ..... (12) I was a child in the village as if it was yesterday. My grandfather, ..... (13) eyes filled with tears when he saw me, and who I would be staying ..... (14) while on the island, looked incredibly like my father, ..... (15) hair had recently started to go grey. The village itself, which was a two-hour journey up the mountain, was simply stunning.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 13b participles

## form

Participles have two forms:

| form | examples |
|---|---|
| **present participle** or *-ing* form | *I saw him **walking** his dog.*<br>***Putting** his foot on the accelerator, he drove off down the road.* |
| **past participle** | |
| in the Present Perfect | *I have **made** a cake. She has **seen** him.* |
| in the Past Perfect | *I had **met** him before.*<br>*I had **seen** her at the first meeting.* |
| in passive structures | *The house has been **sold**.*<br>*It had been **built** in the 1960s.* |

## uses of present participles

| use | example |
|---|---|
| • to shorten relative clause (active structures) | *Anyone **arriving** late will not be admitted* (= anyone who arrives late) |
| • to talk about two actions (or more) happening at the same time; often after verbs such as *sit, stand, lie* and *come* | *He lay on the sofa, **drinking** wine and watching TV.*<br>*She stood there, **waiting** for him to turn up.*<br>*He just sat there, **doing** nothing.* |
| • after the verbs *see, watch, feel, hear, listen to, smell, notice*: verb + object + *-ing* | *I heard someone **crying**.* |
| • before the main clause for emphasis | ***Laughing** and **shouting**, the children ran out of the room.* (= they were laughing and shouting at the same time as running out of the room) |
| • to replace a clause of reason beginning *because, since, as* | ***Knowing** that John wouldn't be at the party, she didn't bother to go.*<br>***Being** so well qualified got him the job.* |
| • instead of time clauses beginning *when, after, before, as soon as* or *while*: | ***Realising** he had left the lights on, he told the taxi driver to turn back.*<br>***Closing** the door behind her, she got into the car and drove off.* |
| • as adjectives | *a **burning** house* (= a house which is on fire) |

• We form the negative with: *not* + present participle:
***Not realising** he had left the lights on, he left the house.*

## uses of past participles

| use | example |
|---|---|
| to shorten a relative clause in the passive | *She lives in a house **built** in the nineteenth century.*<br>*I would never go into a **haunted** house – would you?* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Combine the following pairs of sentences into one, using a participle.**

*Example:* She was doing the high jump. She twisted her ankle.
She twisted her ankle doing the high jump.

1 Bill was listening to the lecture. He fell asleep.
.....

2 She was training to be a nurse. She lived in London for a year.
.....

3 The students waited at their desks. They felt nervous.
.....

4 The teacher gave out the questions. She told the students not to open the booklet.
.....

5 The students opened the test booklets. They looked anxiously for the easiest questions.
.....

**2 Make sentences beginning with *Having*.**

*Example:* Maria handed in her script. She had answered all the questions.
Having answered all the questions, Maria handed in her script.

1 He wrote her a letter. He had tried phoning her several times.
.....

2 I had received an invitation. I felt I had to go to the party.
.....

3 He couldn't understand the message. He hadn't learnt any Japanese.
.....

4 After he had picked up his luggage, he went to look for a taxi.
.....

*Happiness is **being** busy with the unimportant.*

**3 Fill in each space in the following text, using an appropriate present or past participle of the verbs given in the box. You will need to use one of the verbs twice.**

*come build hold make break follow*
*talk carry look hide begin haunt*
*know wear wait stare get have*

### THE HAUNTED HOUSE

Just after midnight, Julian and Anne, with Tommy the dog, arrived at the ..... (1) house, having first ..... (2) sure that no one would notice their absence. The house, ..... (3) in the seventeenth century, had been abandoned for several years and the ..... (4) windows stood ..... (5) like the eyes of a frightened ghost. Julian, ..... (6) by Anne and Tommy, took out his torch and pointed it towards the fence, ..... (7) for the gap which they had ..... (8) a few days earlier.

But how had their latest adventure ..... (9)? Julian had been sitting in a café ..... (10) a drink when he overheard some men ..... (11) about hiding 'the stuff' in the haunted house till things had quietened down. ..... (12) that the police were looking for drug traffickers in the area, Julian had followed the men to their car, ..... (13) sure to take down the number.

Julian, Anne and Tommy the dog spent the next few evenings at the house, ..... (14) in one of the old stables next to the house, ..... (15) patiently for the arrival of the criminals. At last, their efforts were rewarded. They saw the lights of a car ..... (16) closer. When the car stopped, a man got out, ..... (17) what seemed to be a large parcel. A few seconds later they saw another figure ..... (18) out of the car, ..... (19) a long black overcoat and ..... (20) something in his hand that, in the darkness, looked like a gun.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 13c linking words and phrases

Here is a simple way of linking clauses by expressing contrast:

*Jack works very hard* ***but*** *he doesn't have a lot of money.*

- We can express the same idea using other conjunctions such as:
  ***Although*** *Jack works very hard, he doesn't have a lot of money.*
  ***Though*** *Jack works very hard, he doesn't have a lot of money.*
  ***In spite of/Despite*** *working hard, Jack doesn't have a lot of money.*
  *Jack works hard,* ***yet*** *he doesn't have a lot of money.*
  *Jack works hard.* ***Nevertheless,*** *he doesn't have a lot of money.*
  *Jack works hard;* ***however,*** *he doesn't have a lot of money.*
  ***On the one hand,*** *Jack works hard;* ***on the other,*** *he doesn't have a lot of money.*
  ***Whereas*** *Jack works very hard, he doesn't have a lot of money.*
  ***While*** *Jack works very hard, he doesn't have a lot of money.*

Here is a summary of the main linking words we can use when making contrasts:

| linking word | followed by | example | rest of sentence |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***although/(even) though*** | + clause + comma | ***(Even) though*** *she is successful,* | *she is so modest.* |
| ***in spite of/despite*** | + noun | ***In spite of/Despite*** *her success,* | *she is so modest.* |
| ***in spite of/despite*** | + *-ing* | ***In spite of/Despite being*** *successful,* | *she is so modest.* |
| ***in spite of/despite*** | + ***the fact that*** + clause + comma | ***In spite of/Despite the fact that*** *she is successful,* | *she is so modest.* |
| ***nevertheless/however*** | + comma + clause | *She is very successful.* ***Nevertheless,/However,*** | *she is so modest.* |
| ***whereas/while*** | + clause | *She is very successful,* ***whereas/while*** | *others are not.* |

- *Even though* is more emphatic than *although* or *though*. We use it to emphasise the surprising contrast of two facts:
  *I can still remember that day,* ***even though*** *it was a long time ago.*
- We can reverse the order of the two clauses:
  ***Even though*** *it was a long time ago, I can still remember that day.*
- We use *however* meaning 'in spite of this fact'. *Nevertheless* is also possible but is considered more formal:
  *What you said was true.* ***However,/Nevertheless,*** *it was a little unkind.*
- We can also use *however* when we add information that seems surprising or contrasts with what we have just said:
  *This method has been accepted.* ***However,*** *it may not be the best one.*
- We use *whereas* to say that something is true of one thing but it is not true of another:
  *Why are some cancers curable* ***whereas*** *others are not?*
- We use *while* at the beginning of a clause to introduce information which contrasts with something we have said in the main clause:
  *The first car is made in Korea* ***while*** *the second one is manufactured in Japan.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space with an appropriate word or phrase. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.**

1 ..... she joined the company only a year ago, she has already been promoted twice.
2 Fast food is cheap ..... food in a proper restaurant is more expensive.
3 We went out ..... the rain.
4 ..... he was only twelve he could run faster than any other child in the class.
5 Even ..... they loved each other, they decided to part.
6 The children are very clever. ....., they can be very noisy at times.

**2 Match the items in the two columns. The first one has been done as an example.**

*Example:* Even though he set off early, *g*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 I like holidays in the mountains, ..... | a while her husband is a taxi driver. |
| 2 Despite public protests, ..... | b consumer goods are selling well. |
| 3 In spite of high prices, ..... | c However, it is getting better now. |
| 4 She works in a hospital, ..... | d it'll be better than staying at home. |
| 5 The economic situation has been quite difficult. ..... | e the Government decided to build a road through the wood. |
| 6 Even though I don't really like going to football matches, ..... | f whereas my wife loves the seaside. |
| | (g he still arrived late.) |

**3 Use the words in the list to complete the gaps. You will need to use some words/phrases more than once. The first (0) is given as an example.**

*despite/in spite of* *however* *whereas* *although* *but* *even though*

## Shop till you drop!

Despite/In spite of ..... (0) the fact that Kelly had lots of homework to do, she agreed to go shopping with her friend Justine. Justine loved to buy wild clubbing clothes, ..... (1) Kelly was more of a jeans and T-shirt kind of girl. ..... (2) the rain, they set off on Saturday morning for the town centre. Justine, as always, had far more cash than Kelly. ..... (3), Kelly had an eye for a bargain. Lunch time found them happy and hungry at the local burger bar. ..... (4) they'd spent nearly all their money, there were still a few shops that Justine wanted to visit (.....(5) she'd promised to be frugal), and ..... (6) having aching feet, they managed a couple more hours' shopping.

***Although** I disagree with what you say, I will defend to the death your right to say it.*
VOLTAIRE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 13d phrasal verbs with *get*

Here are some of the most common phrasal verbs with *get* and their uses:

| phrasal verb | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***get about*** | travel to different places | *Jane **gets about** the city on her bike.* |
| ***get*** sth ***across*** | explain | *How can I **get across** (to you) how I feel?* |
| ***get around*** | travel a lot | *In my job I **get around** quite a lot.* |
| ***get around to*** | finally do | *I'll **get around to** your request later.* |
| ***get away*** | succeed in leaving | *I should be able to **get away** from the office by seven.* |
| ***get away*** | escape | *The three men **got away** in a stolen car.* |
| ***get away with*** sth | escape punishment | *I don't know how they manage to **get away with** treating their workers like that.* |
| ***get back*** | return to a place | *We'll probably get back about nine.*<br>✗ *We **returned back** home in time for dinner.*<br>✓ *We **got back** home in time for dinner.* |
| ***get*** sth ***back***; ***get back*** sth | have something returned | *Did you get that money back that you lent Bessie?*<br>✗ *Did you **take back** the money you lent her?*<br>✓ *Did you **get back** the money you lent her?* |
| ***get back to*** sb | phone someone later | *I'm a bit busy at the moment – can I **get back to** you?* |
| ***get by*** | have just enough money to buy the things you need | *She can just about **get by** on her pension.*<br>✗ *I **get on** with the little I have.*<br>✓ *I **get by** with the little I have.* |
| ***get*** sb ***down*** | make someone feel sad or unhappy | *All this delay and waiting is **getting** her **down**.* |
| ***get*** sth ***down***; ***get down*** sth | write down | *The reporters were trying to **get down** everything he said.* |
| ***get in*** | manage to enter | *They arrived at the stadium in good time but they still couldn't **get in**.* |
| ***get in(to)*** somewhere | manage to enter (a country, university, etc.) | *How many of your students **got into** university?* |
| ***get off*** | leave (a bus, train, plane) | *The bus driver will tell you where to **get off**.* |
| ***get on*** | make progress | *He's new but he's **getting on** fine.* |
| ***get on*** (***with*** sb) | have a friendly relationship with | *How does Gina **get on with** her colleagues?* |
| ***get on with*** sth | continue to do something | ***Get on with** your work!* |
| ***get over*** sth | get well after an illness<br>recover from the shock of sth | *She's still trying to **get over** that cold.*<br>*Parents never really **get over** the death of a child.* |
| ***get*** sth ***over*** | succeed in communicating | *There's no point in having brilliant ideas unless you can **get** them **over**.* |
| ***get together*** | meet for a talk, to practise etc. | *Let's **get together** next week and discuss it.* |
| ***get round*** sth | find a solution to a problem | *Your mother can't stay here – we'll have to **get round** the problem somehow.* |
| ***get through*** (***to*** sb) | succeed in reaching sb by telephone | *At last, I managed to **get through to** one of the managers.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Fill in the correct particle or preposition in the following sentences.**

1 Gill managed to get .away. from the man and call the police.
2 Just because he's been working here a long time, he thinks he can get ...on.... with being late every day.
3 I never lend books because I never get them .back.. .
4 With four kids to feed, Jenny just about gets ...by.... on 100 dollars a week.
5 I was working hard to get ..into... Cambridge University.
6 I tried your telephone number several times but I couldn't get ..through
7 Although they often shout at each other, they actually get ..on..... well.
8 Jones was trying to get ..over.. when he was shot in the back.
9 When my work gets me ...down, I try to think of the summer holiday.
10 It took me a long time to get ..through my friend's death.

**2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence using the word given. Do not change the word given.**

*Example:* It's a difficult problem but we'll find a solution somehow.
**get**
It's a difficult problem but we'll get round it somehow.

1 They are very friendly with their neighbours.
**get**
They...get on..... with their neighbours.
2 I've been phoning all day but I still haven't managed to speak to her.
**get**
I've been phoning all day but I haven't been .....get through to her.
3 Please just continue with what you're doing until I return.
**get**
I'd like ..you to get on with what you're doing until I return.
4 It is important to make it clear to young people that smoking isn't cool.
**get**
We ..get acroos.. to young people that smoking isn't cool.
5 I find stories about death depressing.
**gets**
It ..gets me down to hear stories about death.

**3 Read the text below and add a word which best fits each space.**

### *Getting away from it all*

After a long hard winter I was looking forward to getting ..... (1). Spring in Seville seemed just the thing to help me get ..... (2) my winter depression.

In my job (I work for an advertising company), I don't get ..... (3) very much and things had been getting me ..... (4) lately so I was very keen to ..... (5) up and go, leaving everything behind. I knew everything would still be there waiting for me when I got ..... (6) but for ten days I would be able to get ..... (7) from it all. The problem was I hadn't been getting ..... (8) well with my boss in the last few months – we didn't see eye to eye about policy and I just couldn't get ..... (9) to her how I saw the future of the company. Moneywise the job's fine – I make more than enough to get ..... (10) and I suppose prospects are good – I want to get ..... (11) in my career and the job gives me lots of opportunities for promotion. But some day soon I will have to get ..... (12) the difficulties I'm having with my boss.

*If you can't **get away** for a holiday, stay home and tip every second person you meet.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 13e suffixes (6)

We use most suffixes to change a word to a different part of speech (See also 1e, 3e, 4e, 10e, 12e). A noun + *al* makes an adjective:
*comic* (noun) + ***al*** = *comical* (adjective)

- Here are lists with less common suffixes which change nouns into other parts of speech. Note the many changes in spelling:

| noun | + suffix | = adjective |
|---|---|---|
| *accident* | + ***al*** | *accidental* |
| *Bible* | + ***al*** | *biblical* |
| *cervix* | + ***al*** | *cervical* |
| *clinic* | + ***al*** | *clinical* |
| *crime* | + ***al*** | *criminal* |
| *critic* | + ***al*** | *critical* |
| *culture* | + ***al*** | *cultural* |
| *habit* | + ***al*** | *habitual* |
| *music* | + ***al*** | *musical* |
| *nation* | + ***al*** | *national* |
| *origin* | + ***al*** | *original* |
| *option* | + ***al*** | *optional* |
| *profession* | + ***al*** | *professional* |
| *race* | + ***al*** | *racial* |
| *season* | + ***al*** | *seasonal* |
| *-y* | + ***ical*** | *economical historical mystical poetical surgical* (but: *industry – industrial*) |

- Some adjectives ending in *al* do not have a first part that exists separately, for example:
*abnormal diagonal*
- We can use most adjectives which end in *ical* as adjectives ending with *ic*, for example:
*economic poetic historic*
*Surgical* cannot be shortened in this way.
- A few words ending in *al* are nouns. The first parts are verbs, for example:
*approval* (from *approve*)
*proposal* (from *propose*)
*survival* (from *survive*)

| noun | + suffix | = adjective |
|---|---|---|
| *act* | + ***ive*** | *active* |
| *addict* | + ***ive*** | *addictive* |
| *effect* | + ***ive*** | *effective* |
| *expense* | + ***ive*** | *expensive* |

- The first part of some of these adjectives can also be verbs, for example:
*active* (from *act*)

| noun | + suffix | = adjective |
|---|---|---|
| *danger* | + ***ous*** | *dangerous* |
| *envy* | + ***ous*** | *envious* |
| *fame* | + ***ous*** | *famous* |
| *fury* | + ***ous*** | *furious* |
| *glory* | + ***ous*** | *glorious* |
| *industry* | + ***ous*** | *industrious* |
| *jealousy* | + ***ous*** | *jealous* |
| *humour* | + ***ous*** | *humorous* |
| *pity* | + ***ous*** | *piteous* |
| *space* | + ***ous*** | *spacious* |
| *study* | + ***ous*** | *studious* |

- Many adjectives ending in *ous* do not have a first part that exists separately and are not formed from nouns, for example:
*anxious curious enormous generous*
*noxious obvious precious serious*

| noun | + suffix | = adjective |
|---|---|---|
| *elite* | + ***ist*** | *elitist* |
| *Marx* | + ***ist*** | *Marxist* |
| *terror* | + ***ist*** | *terrorist* |
| *sex* | + ***ist*** | *sexist* |

- We can make nouns from most adjectives which end in *ist* by changing the suffix to *ism*:
*elitism Marxism terrorism sexism*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

- We can also use the suffix *ist* to make nouns:

| noun | + suffix | = noun |
|---|---|---|
| *arson* | + ***ist*** | *arsonist* |
| *bigamy* | + ***ist*** | *bigamist* |
| *canoe* | + ***ist*** | *canoeist* |
| *cello* | + ***ist*** | *cellist* |
| *novel* | + ***ist*** | *novelist* |
| *piano* | + ***ist*** | *pianist* |
| *science* | + ***ist*** | *scientist* |

- A few nouns ending in *ist* are formed from adjectives, for example:
  *fatalist* (from *fatal*) *loyalist* (from *loyal*)

| noun | + suffix | = noun |
|---|---|---|
| *duke* | + ***dom*** | *dukedom* |
| *free* | + ***dom*** | *freedom* |
| *king* | + ***dom*** | *kingdom* |
| *sheik* | + ***dom*** | *sheikdom* |
| *star* | + ***dom*** | *stardom* |

- A few nouns ending in *dom* are formed from verbs, for example:
  *boredom* (from *bore*)

We can use the suffix *en* to make verbs:

| noun | adjective | verb |
|---|---|---|
| *breadth* | *broad* | *broad**en*** |
| *depth* | *deep* | *deep**en*** |
| *threat* | *threatening* | *threat**en*** |
| *width* | *wide* | *wid**en*** |

## US spelling

Words which end in *our* in British English are usually spelt *or* in American English:
*favour – favor* *favourite – favorite*
*labour – labor* *behaviour – behavior*

- Both *ise* (*realise, criticise*) and *ize* (*realize, criticize*) spellings are acceptable in British English, but American English uses only *ize*.

## Practice

**1 Fill each space with an appropriate word from 13e.**

1 The hijacker ..... to shoot the hostages, if he was not allowed to go free.
2 Although she didn't have her parents' ....., she got married anyway.
3 You're always very ..... of my work – you never praise me.
4 We can't buy that car! It's far too ..... .
5 When Peter saw Helen's brand new computer, he felt so ..... .
6 Journalists claim that ..... of expression is essential if they are to report the truth.
7 Many drugs are ..... and you should avoid taking them.
8 Jane Austen is a famous English ..... .
9 Only a ..... would say men are more intelligent than women!
10 I'm absolutely ..... with you for scratching my car.
11 They say travel ..... the mind.
12 Do ..... footballers earn too much money?



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word.**

*Example:* Going by bus is cheaper than going by train.
**economical**
It is more economical to go by bus than by train.

1 His success made everyone else really envious.
**filled**
Everyone ..... at his success.

2 The committee accepted what he proposed.
**made**
He ..... which the committee accepted.

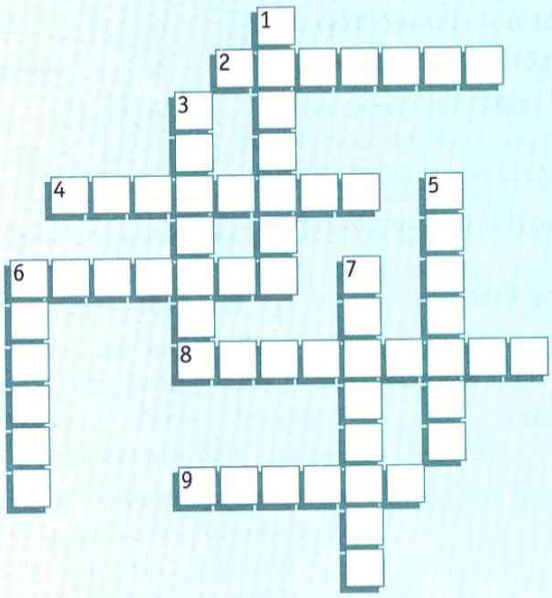
3 If you behave better in class you'll learn more.
**improves**
If your ..... , you'll learn more.

4 The athletes are the heroes of the whole country.
**national**
The athletes ..... heroes.

5 This book will give you a broader knowledge of English.
**broaden**
This book ..... of English.

6 Odysseus really existed, he is not just a myth.
**historical**
Odysseus ..... , not just a myth.

**3 Complete the crossword by using the clues and the words on pages 240 and 241.**



**Across**

2 Great Britain is also called the United ..... .
4 The adjectival form of 'bigamy'.
6 We had several ..... moments waiting for the test results.
8 .....s are still working on a cure for AIDS.
9 They were devastated by the ..... loss of their baby.

**Down**

1 An adjectival form of 'pity'.
3 When he found out about her affair, he flew into a ..... rage.
5 *Hilary and Jackie* is a film about the ..... Jacqueline du Pré.
6 Margery is eighty-eight but she is still very ..... and walks everywhere.
7 You must be a competent ..... to attempt shooting those rapids.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**4 Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning.**

## TALENT

| | |
|---|---|
| My .....favourite..... (0) composer is Chopin and I am fortunate | FAVOUR |
| enough to have a friend who is also a very gifted ..... (1). | PIANO |
| As a ..... (2) musician, she believes strongly that | PROFESSION |
| ..... (3) ability is mostly something you learn, not | MUSIC |
| a ..... (4) that you are born with. She thinks that | CHARACTER |
| ..... (5) students can improve their ability enormously. | INDUSTRY |
| I feel really ..... (6) when I hear my friend perform | ENVY |
| and the ecstatic ..... (7) that she gets from her | RESPOND |
| audiences at the end of a ..... (8). Both the public | PERFORM |
| and ..... (9) agree that she is one of the country's most | CRITICISE |
| talented ..... (10). The huge amount of money she earns | ART |
| gives her the ..... (11) to do almost anything that she likes, | FREE |
| which I, as a humble ..... (12), cannot compete with. | POEM |

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 14

## AGENDA

### Grammar

14a prepositions of time, place and movement

14b prepositions after verbs and nouns

14c *it* and *there*

### Vocabulary

14d prepositional phrases

14d phrasal verbs with *put*

# Entry test

**Underline the correct preposition in questions 1–5.**

1 I'm busy now – I'll be with you *in / at* a couple of minutes.
2 They'll be going *in / to* Paris for a few days at Easter.
3 We'd been waiting ages *in / at* the bus stop before the bus arrived.
4 I read about the fire *to / in* the *Sunday News*.
5 We arrived *at / in* France after a long delay.

**Now look at 14a on page 246.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.**

6 Most parents do not approve ..... their children smoking.
A about B of C on D to

7 We spent all night discussing ..... the film.
A for B about C with D –

8 I don't have to tell you the advantages ..... a university education.
A of B in C from D with

9 What's your opinion ..... Spielberg's new film?
A for B from C to D of

10 They blamed him ..... the accident.
A with B of C for D about

**Now look at 14b on page 250.**

SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.**

11 Apparently, ..... is cheaper to go by train.
A that B this C it D there

12 ..... are much cheaper flights at the weekend.
A It B There C They D –

13 ..... seems that no one really knows where he's gone.
A It B There C He D One

14 Suddenly, ..... was a loud crash as the car hit the lamppost.
A it B this C there D what

15 ..... must be something we can do to help her.
A There B He C It D We

**Now look at 14c on page 252.**

SCORE _____

**Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.**

16 Can you please be quiet for a bit – I'm ..... the phone.
A to B in C on D at

17 They sat down ..... a corner table and called the waiter.
A in B at C on D to

18 She turned up for dinner ..... an old pair of jeans and a T-shirt.
A into B to C with D in

19 Isn't *Antigone* a play ..... Sophocles?
A from B of C by D for

20 It was my fault we lost the game, ..... some extent anyway.
A in B at C from D to

**Now look at 14d on page 254.**

SCORE _____

**For questions 21–25 fill in the spaces with the correct particle in the list.**

*back off out through up*

21 I will not put ..... with your rudeness any longer.
22 If you just hang on, I'll put you ..... to the marketing department.
23 Please make less noise – you're putting me ..... my game.
24 She's still busy so she's put the meeting ..... an hour.
25 The army had to be called in to help put ..... the forest fire.

**Now look at 14e on page 257.**

SCORE _____

TOTAL SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Grammar

## 14a prepositions of time, place and movement

### prepositions in time phrases

The following are the main prepositions which we use in time phrases:

| preposition | used with | examples |
|---|---|---|
| *at* | • clock times, points of time in the day | *at nine o'clock; at 6.35*<br>*at midnight, at noon, at dawn, at lunch time, at dinner time, at night* |
| | • weekends and holiday periods<br>• points in time | *at the weekend, at weekends, at Christmas, at Easter;*<br>*at Ramadan, at the beginning, at the end, at last, at the moment, at present, at the time, at times* |
| *in* | • the main parts of the day<br>• months, years, seasons, centuries | *in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening*<br>*in March, in 1999, in the autumn, in the twentieth century* |
| | • events which will happen at the end of a period<br>• at a point in time during a period | *in an hour, in a couple of minutes, in a week, in a moment*<br>✗ ~~*I'll be back until in an hour.*~~<br>✓ *I'll be back in an hour.*<br>*in the beginning, in the end*<br>*in the night, in the evening, in a day* |
| *on* | • specific dates and days | *on August 8, on Tuesday, on Wednesday, on weekdays, on New Year's Day, on Christmas Day, on the day of departure/arrival, on Wednesday morning, on a fine sunny day* |

### on time or in time?

- *On time* means 'not late, at the time expected':
  *The Intercity express always leaves **on time** so it doesn't get there late.*
- We can use *right, dead* or *bang* with *on time* to emphasize that it is exactly at the right time:
  *The train arrived **right on time**.*
  *I finished my essay **dead on time**.*
  *Be **bang on time** or we'll have to leave without you.*
- *In time* means 'early enough':
  *We got there **in time** to see most of the film but we missed the beginning.*
  *Hurry and we'll be there **in time** for lunch.*

### at the end or in the end?

- *At the end* is a prepositional phrase usually followed by a noun; it refers to the final point or part:
  ***At the end** of the book, they get married.*
  ***At the end** of the century, there were still too many people without food to eat.*
- *At the end* is also an adverb which refers to the point at which something occurs:
  *You can check your answers **at the end**.*
- *In the end* is a link phrase and means 'finally, after a long time':
  ***In the end**, we found a taxi and arrived at the theatre on time.*
  *She thought about it for some time and, **in the end**, she decided to go to America.*

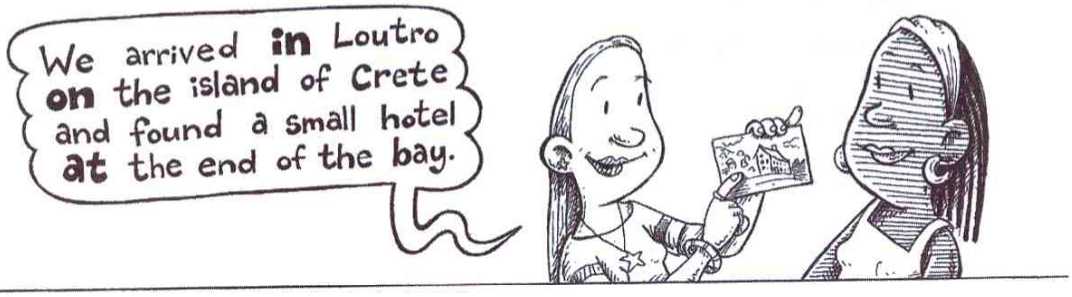


PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## prepositions in place phrases

The following are the main prepositions which we use in place phrases:

| preposition | meaning / use | examples |
|---|---|---|
| *at* | • shows a point in space where something is happening | *There was a huge queue **at** the bus stop.* |
| | • useful phrases: | ***at** the bottom of the pile, **at** the top of the hill,*<br>***at** the corner of the street, **at** the crossroads,*<br>***at** home, **at** Brenda's, **at** school, **at** work, **at** a hotel,*<br>***at** the table, **at** university, **at** the wedding, **at** the funeral*<br>✗ ~~*I'm fed up with being **in my home** all the time.*~~<br>✓ *I'm fed up with being **at home** all the time.* |
| | • with verbs that show place: *be, wait, sit, stay, live* | *Our house is **at** the end of the road.*<br>*We live **at** number 18 Hill Street.*<br>*I waited **at** the door for five minutes.* |
| *in* | • tells us that something taking place is inside rather than outside: it can be used with verbs of movement | *No running is allowed **in** the building.*<br>*Come **in** the office.* |
| | • useful phrases: | ***in** a chair, **in** an armchair, **in** bed, **in** a book,*<br>***in** the centre, **in** the country, **in** the world,*<br>***in** hospital, **in** prison, **in** a hotel,*<br>***in** the middle of the road, **in** the centre of town,*<br>***in** the newspaper, **in** the north / south,*<br>***in** the open air, **in** the park, **in** the mountains,*<br>***in** a queue, **in** the sky, **in** town, **in** the city,*<br>***in** London, **in** Europe, **in** a place / area,* etc. |
| | • with *arrive* when we talk about large cities and countries<br>• with verbs which do not involve movement: *be, live, wait, sit, stay* | *We arrived **in** the United States on Wednesday.*<br>*I live **in** the old town.*<br>*I am **in** the living-room.*<br>*Wait for me **in** the pub.*<br>*How many people are **in** the room?* |
| *on* | • useful phrases: | *She likes lying **on** the beach.*<br>*They spent the summer **on** an island.*<br>*They have a house **on** the coast.*<br>***on** the island of Crete, **on** board, **on** a cruise,*<br>***on** an excursion, **on** a trip, **on** a tour,*<br>***on** Earth, **on** a stool, **on** a farm, **on** a mountain,*<br>***on** the outskirts, **on** page three, **on** the pavement,*<br>***on** the radio, **on** TV, **on** the screen, **on** the streets,*<br>***on** top of the box, **on** the corner of the street* |






PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## prepositions in movement phrases

***at***

We use *at* with *arrive* in sentences such as:

*We **arrived at** the airport/**at** our destination.*

- We also use *at* to show the person or thing that an action is aimed at:
  *They **threw** eggs **at** the speaker.*
- We use *throw to* when we want someone to catch something:
  *She **threw** the pencil **to** me.*

***into***

We use *into* with verbs that mean 'to move from outside to inside an area':

*When she came **into** the room, they fell silent.*
*I saw Jim going **into** the paper shop.*
*She got back **into** bed.*
*They're moving Stephen **into** a different class.*

***to***

We generally use *to* with verbs of movement including *go, come, travel, run, send, take, return, get, walk*:

*I am going **to** Room Three for a seminar.*
*I returned **to** England last month.*

- We also use *to* with nouns that suggest movement, including *welcome, journey, trip, stroll*:
  *Our **journey to** Tibet was unforgettable.*
  ***Welcome to** Britain!*
- When *been* means 'visited', we use *to*:
  *I've **been to** Italy several times.*
- When *been* means 'stayed or lived' we use *in*:
  *I've **been in** France for five days now.*

***towards***

*Towards* means moving or pointing in a particular direction.

*He noticed two policemen coming **towards** him.*
*All the windows face **towards** the river.*

- We also use *towards* with nouns to suggest aiming to achieve:
  *They are working **towards** an agreement.*

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space in the following sentences with *in, on, at, to* or *into*.**

1 ..... the morning we went ..... the museum and then had lunch ..... the cafeteria.
2 Look! You have mud ..... your shoes. Wipe them ..... the mat before you come ..... the house.
3 They went ..... the restaurant and sat down ..... a corner table.
4 I've got to go ..... town this morning but we can meet later ..... the morning, ..... John's house.
5 It says ..... the newspaper that they're getting married ..... the spring ..... a small church ..... the island of Santorini.
6 There I was, sitting ..... the waiting-room when who do you think came ..... the room?
7 ..... Tuesday morning, I'm going ..... town to put some money ..... my bank account.
8 The coffee's ..... the table and there's some sugar ..... the cupboard if you want some.
9 The film starts ..... eight o'clock and I'd like to be ..... the cinema ..... time to see the start of the film.
10 Mr Fisher is ..... Boston now but he'll be ..... his way back ..... London ..... a couple of days' time.
11 I saw Jessica ..... Oxford Street ..... Friday afternoon and she told me she's still ..... university.
12 Is there anything ..... the television this evening? Have a look in the paper – I think the TV guide is ..... the back page.
13 She stood up and walked ..... the window. She saw a woman sitting ..... a bench throwing a ball ..... a dog, who caught it and brought it back ..... her.
14 She was standing ..... the queue ..... the bus stop, with her back ..... me.
15 I had never been ..... the United States before so, when we arrived ..... JFK airport ..... that spring morning in 1989, I felt very excited.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Add the appropriate preposition of time to these phrases.**

..... present
..... arrival
..... 6.30pm
..... the afternoon
..... Wednesday afternoon
..... an hour
..... weekends
..... weekdays
..... a cold day
..... a week
..... the beginning
..... a moment
..... last
..... the year 2000
..... her birthday
..... midnight
..... March 25
..... a winter's night
..... times
..... the summer

**3 Add the appropriate preposition of place to these phrases.**

..... the corner of the road
..... the back
..... the crossroads
..... the television
..... a journey
..... the bus stop
..... hospital
..... Europe
..... Earth
..... the north
..... the streets
..... work all day
..... the open air
..... home
..... the park
..... a chair
..... the door
..... a queue
..... the bottom
..... top

**4 Read the text and add of the preposition which best fits each space. The first (0) is given as an example.**

## Going to the zoo

On ..... (0) Saturday morning, we took the children ..... (1) the zoo because ..... (2) school they are doing a project ..... (3) the moment on zoos – and we thought they should go ..... (4) one and do some research ..... (5) the spot. Later on, when we got home, they looked up some information ..... (6) the encyclopaedia and we found out that the first public zoo ..... (7) the world was opened ..... (8) Paris ..... (9) 1793; this was the famous Jardin des Plantes. ..... (10) it were animals, of course, but there was also a museum and a botanical garden. The next big zoo to be opened was ..... (11) 1829 in Regent's Park ..... (12) London. ..... (13) Britain, there are now many more zoos. ..... (14) Whipsnade Zoo, in Bedfordshire, animals from all parts of the world thrive, free to roam ..... (15) the surrounding countryside.

*Truth lies **at** the bottom of a well.*
DEMOCRITUS



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 14b prepositions after verbs and nouns

## verb + preposition

Here are summaries of the way common verbs combine with particular prepositions or particles (in the heading):

| about | with | to | for | of |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *agree* | *agree* | *agree* | *apologise* | *approve* |
| *dream* | *deal* | *apply* | *pay* | *dream* |
| *hear* | *compare* | *belong* | *wait* | *accuse* |
| *laugh* | *discuss* | *listen* | *admire* | *remind* |
| *know* | *cope* | *go* | *forgive* | *die* |
| *forget* | *provide* | *refer* | *punish* | *smell* |
| *quarrel* | *sympathise* | *speak* | *work* | *consist* |
| *worry* | *collide* | *shout* | *like* | *taste* |

| at | in | from | on |
|---|---|---|---|
| *arrive* | *arrive* | *differ* | *insist* |
| *laugh* | *succeed* | *resign* | *rely* |
| *look* | *believe* | *suffer* | *congratulate* |
| *shout* | *include* | *stop* | *bet* |
| *joke* | *involve* | *recover* | *decide* |
| *stare* | *persist* | *come* | *count* |

## noun + preposition

Here are summaries of the way nouns combine with particular prepositions (in the headings):

| with | of | to | from | about |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *relationship* | *delay* | *damage* | *departure* | *discussion* |
| *trouble* | *description* | *reaction* | *protection* | *information* |
| *connection* | *hope* | *reply* | *fall* | *quarrel* |
| *contract* | *idea* | *solution* | *extract* | *argument* |
| *agreement* | *lack* | *objection* | *phone call* | *debate* |
| *harmony* | *map* | *thanks* | | *hesitation* |

| between | in | for | on |
|---|---|---|---|
| *choice* | *decrease* | *excuse* | *advice* |
| *comparison* | *delay* | *reason* | *attack* |
| *connection* | *expert* | *reputation* | *book* |
| *contact* | *failure* | *respect* | *expert* |
| *relationship* | *increase* | *responsibility* | *talk* |

***connect with, connect to, connection between***

- *Connect to* means 'to join two or more things':
  *First, **connect** the speakers **to** the CD player.*
- *Connect with* means 'to realise that two facts or events are connected':
  *The police did not **connect** her **with** the crime.*
- *Connection between* means 'the way two facts, ideas or events are related to each other':
  *There is a proven **connection between** smoking and cancer.*

***hear of, hear about, hear from***

- *Hear of* means 'to know that something or someone exists':
  *I've never **heard of** him in my life.*
- *Hear about* means 'to find out a piece of information':
  *Did you **hear about** the fire?*
- *Hear from* means 'to receive news from someone e.g. in a letter or by e-mail':
  *Have you **heard from** Sarah lately?*

***pay by, pay for, pay in***

- We *pay for* something when we buy it:
  *She **paid** $200 **for** the use of the room.*
- *Pay by* means 'pay using':
  *Can I **pay by** Visa?*
- We *pay in* a particular currency:
  *Can I **pay in** euros / English pounds?*

***shout at, to, for, in***

- *Shout at* somebody means 'to say something very loudly because you are angry':
  *I wish you'd stop **shouting at** the children.*
- *Shout to* somebody means 'to shout so they can hear':
  *The children **shouted to** each other.*
- *Shout for* means 'to shout in order to get':
  *He rushed out of the house, **shouting for** help.*
  *I **shouted for** the children to come and eat.*
- *Shout in* + noun means 'to shout because of':
  *He **shouted in** pain as the ball hit him.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Which preposition goes with the following groups of verbs and nouns?**

| verbs | preposition |
|---|---|
| 1 object, refer, manage, explain, compare, invite, talk | ..... |
| 2 forgive, blame, charge, care, apply, arrest, search | ..... |
| 3 tell, boast, care, complain, argue, hear | ..... |
| 4 smile, throw, glance | ..... |
| 5 switch, concentrate, depend | ..... |
| 6 charge, communicate, connect, argue, interfere | ..... |

| nouns | preposition |
|---|---|
| 7 damage, invitation, solution, letter, attitude | ..... |
| 8 cheque, demand, need, advertisement | ..... |
| 9 knowledge, experience, opinion, plan, drawing / painting | ..... |

**2 Fill in each space in the following sentences with the correct preposition.**

1 I was tired ..... being an accountant – I needed a change.
2 The Government have known ..... the scandal for months.
3 Why are you staring ..... me like that?
4 On Friday we had a nice long discussion ..... the wording of the proposal.
5 We'd like to discuss our contract with you and agree ..... new terms, if possible.
6 It's hard to see the difference ..... the centre and the liberal party.
7 Luke is afraid ..... the dark.
8 He's an expert ..... electronic music.
9 The twins differed ..... each other in many ways.
10 I was ashamed ..... having lied to her.
11 I don't think Branson is capable ..... committing murder.
12 While he was writing on the blackboard, the kids were shouting ..... each other. It was chaos.
13 I don't see any connection ..... the book and the film at all.
14 Mother disapproves ..... every boyfriend I bring home.
15 Have you ever heard ..... a painter called Tiepolo?

**3 Read the letter below and add the preposition which best fits each space. The first (0) is given as an example.**

Dear Ms Jones
I am writing ....in.... (0) reply to your advertisement ..... (1) secretaries to work ..... (2) your central offices. I had already heard ..... (3) you from a friend of mine, Jenny Mansfield, who worked ..... (4) you a few years ago ..... (5) the sales department. I would be interested ..... (6) applying ..... (7) a full-time post. I am quite experienced ..... (8) secretarial work, and would have little difficulty ..... (9) the duties the current job involves. I think I'm quite skilled ..... (10) word processing. I also have wide experience ..... (11) handling members of the public. I enclose a reference ..... (12) my previous employer and copies ..... (13) my certificates. I would be happy to come for an interview at any time which is convenient for you.
I look forward to hearing ..... (14) you.

Yours sincerely,

Anne Dale

*I like **talking to** a brick wall; it's the only thing in the world that never contradicts me.*
OSCAR WILDE



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 14c *it* and *there*

## impersonal uses of *it*

The use of *it* allows us to put the topic of a sentence at the end, and places more emphasis on what you want to talk about. Compare:

*Marking test papers can be very* ***boring****.* (emphasis on 'boring')
***It*** *is very boring* ***marking test papers****.* (emphasis on 'marking test papers')

Here is a summary of the uses of *it* as a subject:

| use | examples |
|---|---|
| • to focus on an adjective: | ***It*** *is useful to know how to use a computer.*<br>***It****'s essential to bring a raincoat.*<br>✗ ~~*Is easy to buy what you want in a big city.*~~<br>✓ ***It****'s easy to buy what you want in a big city.* |
| • to talk about the weather | ***It*** *has been sunny all week.*<br>***It*** *snowed heavily last winter.* |
| • to tell the time | ***It*** *has just gone six o'clock.* |
| • to introduce an action | ***It*** *is going to take five hours to get there.* |
| • to describe a place | ***It*** *was calm and beautiful up in the mountains.* |
| • to comment on a fact | ***It*** *was surprising that so few people came to the show.* |

## *it* + *be* + adjective (+ *that*)

We can use this structure with a variety of adjectives. We can omit *that*:

***It was amazing (that)*** *no one was hurt.*
***It was funny that*** *both of us thought the same thing.*
***It is possible (that)*** *you were right after all.*

- Here are more examples of adjectives we can use with this structure:
  ***awful bad essential***
  ***good interesting likely***
  ***obvious possible sad***
  ***strange surprising true***
  ***wonderful***

## *there*

| use | examples |
|---|---|
| • to say that something exists | ***There*** *are some very good films on this week.*<br>✗ ~~*If you are not busy, is something I would like to ask you.*~~<br>✓ *If you're not busy,* ***there*** *is something I'd like to ask you.* |
| • to mention the presence of something | *I think* ***there****'s somebody in the living-room.* |
| • to say something has happened or will happen | ***There****'s been an accident at the crossroads.*<br>***There****'s going to be trouble.* |
| • with modal verbs to express possibility and probability | ***There*** *must be a solution to the problem.*<br>***There*** *may be life on other planets.* |
| • with *seems* and *appears* | ***There*** *seems to be a bit of problem.* |
| • to explain a problem | ***There*** *seems to be a traffic jam further up the road.* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## *There* + *be*: singular or plural?

| | *be* in singular form | *be* in plural form |
|---|---|---|
| *there* + *be* + countable noun | *If **there**'s any chance of you coming, let us know.* | *Once upon a time **there were** three pigs.* |
| *there* + *be* + list, if the first item is a singular countable noun | *On the table, **there was** a pencil, a pen and some papers.* | (not possible) |
| *there* + *be* + a number or *a few/lot, some* etc. | ***There was** a lot of noise outside.* ***There is** some oil in the garage.* | ***There were** a lot of people in the room.* ***There are** a few people waiting outside.* |

- In spoken and informal English, *there* and the auxiliary are usually contracted:
  *There is...* ⇨ *There's...* *There would be...* ⇨ *There'd be...* *There will be...* ⇨ *There'll be...*

## Practice

**1 Fill each space in these sentences with *it* or *there* and an appropriate verb.**

*Example:* 0 It takes me one hour to get home.

1 ..... very expensive to buy a new car.
2 ..... difficult trying to reach her by phone so I sent a fax.
3 He put his coat on because ..... getting cold.
4 ..... to be some mistake – I've never met you before in my life.
5 ..... several fights outside the stadium but no one was hurt.
6 ..... been some time since I wrote to you, as I've been very busy.
7 ..... a pity you didn't come to the party; we had a lovely time.
8 ..... life after death? I wonder.
9 ..... be some kind of explanation for such strange behaviour.
10 ..... no special way of doing it.

**2 Fill each space in the paragraph below with *it* or *there*.**

### A CHANGE IN THE WEATHER

..... (1) has always been a disadvantage for visitors to Britain that the weather is very changeable and that ..... (2) is always raining, even in summer. ..... (3) are countless jokes about British weather and no doubt ..... (4) is a good reason for their popularity. ..... (5) is no smoke without fire. ..... (6) doesn't however seem to be the case any more that Britain does not have a summer. In fact, ..... (7) seems to be less and less rainfall nowadays, which is a worldwide phenomenon. What has happened is that ..... (8) has been a rise in the temperature of the planet as a whole. ..... (9) is getting hotter every year to such an extent that ..... (10) is no longer necessary to go abroad if you want to get a sun-tan. ..... (11) will be much quicker and cheaper to go to Brighton or Bournemouth. ..... (12) is thought that global warming is having both positive and negative effects in different parts of the world. ..... (13) have been several conferences to find a solution to the problem but ..... (14) has become obvious that ..... (15) is no simple answer to the problem.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Vocabulary

## 14d prepositional phrases

We often use prepositions in common phrases where little variation is possible. Some prepositions go with groups of similar words:

***at*** – ***at*** *breakfast,* ***at*** *lunch,* ***at*** *dinner,* ***at*** *supper*
***for*** – ***for*** *example,* ***for*** *instance*
***in*** – ***in*** *a dress,* ***in*** *pyjamas,* ***in*** *a pair of jeans,* ***in*** *a skirt,* ***in*** *uniform*
***on*** – ***on*** *e-mail,* ***on*** *the phone*

- Prepositions can combine to make compound phrases:
  ***out of*** *date,* ***out of*** *fashion*

- Words with related meanings often go with different prepositions:
  ***in*** *cash / dollars* – ***by*** *credit card*
  ***on*** *earth* – ***in*** *the world*
  ***by*** *accident* – ***on*** *purpose*
  ***at*** *the bottom* – ***in*** *the bottom left-hand corner*
  ***at*** *the door* – ***on*** *the phone*
  ***by*** *car* – ***on*** *foot*
  ***on*** *holiday* – ***at*** *work*
  ***in*** *a loud voice* – ***at*** *the top of his voice*

Here are more common phrases with prepositions:

| at | by | for | in | on | out of |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ***at*** *all times* | ***by*** *accident* | ***for*** *a change* | ***in*** *conclusion* | ***on*** *behalf of* | ***out of*** *order* |
| ***at*** *first sight* | ***by*** *heart* | ***for*** *ages* | ***in*** *the west* | ***on*** *condition that* | ***out of*** *practice* |
| ***at*** *the moment* | ***by*** *chance* | ***for*** *breakfast* | ***in*** *control* | ***on*** *no account* | ***out of*** *favour* |
| ***at*** *the age of* | ***by*** *mistake* | ***for*** *fear of* | ***in*** *danger* | ***on*** *my own* | ***out of*** *the woods* |
| ***at*** *the beginning* | ***by*** *the way* | ***for*** *fun / pleasure* | ***in*** *favour of* | ***on*** *purpose* | ***out of*** *the way* |
| ***at*** *breakfast* | ***by*** *bus / train* | ***for*** *good* | ***in*** *general* | ***on*** *second thoughts* | ***out of*** *touch* |
| ***at*** *the bottom of* | ***by*** *sea / land / air* | ***for*** *granted* | ***in*** *other words* | ***on*** *the whole* | ***out of*** *work* |
| ***at*** *the bus stop* | ***by*** *example* | ***for*** *ever* | ***in*** *time* | ***on*** *business* | ***out of*** *breath* |
| ***at*** *sea* | ***by*** *sight* | ***for*** *luck* | ***in*** *cash* | ***on*** *a diet* | ***out of*** *control* |
| ***at*** *the corner* | ***by*** *means of* | ***for*** *life* | ***in*** *a uniform* | ***on*** *arrival* | ***out of*** *danger* |
| ***at*** *dawn* | ***by*** *no means* | ***for*** *nothing* | ***in*** *a dress* | ***on*** *average* | ***out of*** *date* |
| ***at*** *last* | ***by*** *cheque* | ***for*** *ever* | ***in*** *haste* | ***on*** *foot* | ***out of*** *doors* |
| ***at*** *the door* | *day* ***by*** *day* | ***for*** *sale* | ***in*** *German* | ***on*** *the other hand* | ***out of*** *fashion* |
| ***at*** *the end* | ***by*** *Beethoven* | ***for*** *short* | ***in*** *pencil* | ***on*** *line* | ***out of*** *luck* |
| ***at*** *first* | ***by*** *air mail* | ***for*** *a visit* | ***in*** *a group* | ***on*** *duty* | ***out of*** *print* |
| ***at*** *once* | ***by*** *e-mail* | ***for*** *a walk* | ***in*** *addition (to)* | ***on*** *fire* | ***out of*** *sight* |
| ***at*** *home* | ***by*** *fax / phone* | ***for*** *a while* | ***in*** *answer (to)* | ***on*** *horseback* | ***out of*** *tune* |
| ***at*** *arm's length* | ***by*** *far* | ***for*** *now* | ***in*** *future* | ***on*** *the left / right* | ***out of*** *reach* |
| ***at*** *least* | ***by*** *the rules* | ***for*** *your birthday* | ***in*** *general* | ***on*** *the floor* | ***out of*** *earshot* |
| ***at*** *the same time* | ***by*** *the arm* | ***for*** *better or worse* | ***in*** *the news* | ***on*** *the phone* | ***out of*** *money* |
| ***at*** *daybreak* | ***by*** *telepathy* | ***for*** *my sake* | ***in*** *pairs* | ***on*** *the screen* | ***out of*** *time* |
| ***at*** *work* | ***by*** *hand* | ***for*** *the moment* | ***in*** *a loud voice* | ***on*** *holiday* | ***out of*** *pocket* |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

| to | up | from |
|---|---|---|
| *to some extent* | *up to date* | *from A to B* |
| *to the point* | *up to you* | *from bad to worse* |
| *to my surprise* | *up and down* | *from place to place* |
| *to your advantage* | *up till / until* | *from time to time* |
| *to our amazement* | *up the hill* | *from morning to night* |
| *to your health* | *up the spout* | *from now on* |
| *to some degree* | *up to no good* | *from my point of view* |
| *to you* | *up as far as* | *from flour / wood / plastic* |

## in the beginning or at the beginning?

- *In the beginning* (not usually with *of*) means 'near the start of an event':
  ***In the beginning**, the South had some success.*
- *At the beginning of* means 'at the very start of an event':
  ***At the beginning of** the Civil War, the fort was attacked.*

## at the end or in the end?

- *At the end (of)* refers to the final part (of a period of time, a road, a book, a film, etc.):
  *He's leaving **at the end of** October.*
  *Their house is **at the end of** the road.*
- *In the end* means 'finally':
  *We waited and waited; **in the end**, we decided to go back home.*

## by bus or on the bus?

- *By bus* refers to using buses as a means of transport:
  *I usually go to work **by bus**.*
- We can use *on the bus* for specific journeys to particular destinations:
  *I came home **on the bus**.*
  *If we go there **on the bus**, we'll have more time to chat.*

## made of, made out of or made from?

- We use *made of* when it is obvious what substance has been used to make something:
  *A little doll **made of** wood.*
- We use *made out of* when we emphasise the substance from which something is made:
  *It's **made out of** wood, not plastic.*
- We use *made from* to say what ingredients have been used:
  *Bread is **made from** flour, water and yeast.*

*Joe almost gave up but **in the end** he reached the top of the mountain.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice

**1 Fill in each space with an appropriate preposition.**

1 The report, which will be ready ..... the beginning of next week, will be sent to you ..... e-mail.
2 I agree with you ..... some extent but ..... general I would have put things differently.
3 ..... the beginning, I thought the book was interesting but ..... the end of the book the hero gets killed.
4 He's been ..... of work for over six months and can't afford to go ..... holiday.
5 He thought the chair was made ..... of wood but ..... his surprise it was all plastic.
6 ..... the top left corner of the picture I can see a hill; ..... the bottom of the hill there is a bicycle.
7 He was driving ..... the middle of the road and seemed to be completely ..... of control.
8 ..... my opinion, you can't go to the party ..... a dress like that.
9 ..... dessert, we had a lovely cake made ..... chocolate and almonds.
10 There's a shop ..... the corner of the street that sells vegetables ..... morning till night.

**2 Choose the correct word in each of the following sentences:**

1 From my point of *opinion / view*, there's little advantage in buying shares now.
2 His health is going from bad to *worse / ill*.
3 The kids were really in a silly *mood / behaviour* after the party.
4 I don't know whether it's true but that's what it said on the *radio / newspaper*.
5 I can get the information to you more quickly if you're on *phone / e-mail*.
6 You don't think he would have broken the window on *accident / purpose*, do you?
7 He is the officer in *charge / power* of the investigation.
8 When Romeo met Juliet, it was love at first *sight / look*.
9 Why don't you send the message by *e-mail / phone*?
10 After the accident, she was rushed to hospital and is now out of *danger / risk*.

**3 Read the text below and add the word which best fits each space. The first (0) is given as an example.**

### Living a long time

It is often said that Japanese people, ....on.... (0) average, live much longer than Europeans. ..... (1) a large extent this must be due to the food most Japanese people eat since ..... (2) the point of view of lifestyle, life ..... (3) modern Japan is no less stressful than ours ..... (4) the West. The Japanese live ..... (5) a diet largely made up ..... (6) fish and rice. ..... (7) lunch time a typical Japanese family will consume ..... (8) least twice as many vegetables as we do in Europe. ..... (9) comparison with Europeans, the Japanese eat far less meat and fewer potatoes; ..... (10) the same time, they eat seven times more fresh fish than we do which makes their diet much healthier ..... far (11). It would be fair to say that, ..... (12) general, the Japanese consume far less sugar than Europeans, though the modern Japanese – frequent visitors ..... (13) Europe ..... (14) business or ..... (15) pleasure – are discovering the pleasures and dangers of western-style eating habits.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# 14e phrasal verbs with *put*

Here are some of the most common phrasal verbs with *put* and their uses:

| phrasal verb | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***put*** sth ***across***; ***put across*** sth | explain ideas clearly | *The union representative was able to **put across** her argument effectively.* |
| ***put*** sth ***over***; ***put over*** sth | explain ideas clearly | *The course will help **put over** your ideas more clearly.* |
| ***put away*** sth; ***put*** sth ***away*** | place something where it is usually kept | *Let me **put** these books **away**. **Put away** your toys.* |
| ***put*** sth ***back***; ***put back*** sth | postpone, arrange to do something later | *They've **put back** the meeting till next Thursday.* |
| ***put*** sth ***down*** | write on a piece of paper | *I'll **put** your name **down** on the list.* |
| ***put*** sb ***down*** | criticise somebody | *She **puts** me **down** all the time.* |
| ***put*** sth ***forward***; ***put forward*** sth | suggest a proposal, offer an idea for consideration | *Professor Kaplan has **put forward** a theory.* |
| ***put*** sth ***off***; ***put off*** sth | arrange to do something later | *The meeting's been **put off** till next week.* |
| ***put*** sth ***on***; ***put on*** sth | to put clothing on your body; switch on a light, electrical equipment | ***Put** your coat **on** before you go outside. It's freezing. **Put** the heater **on**.* |
| ***put*** sth ***out***; ***put out*** sth | make a flame or fire stop burning | ***Put** that cigarette **out** immediately.* |
| ***put*** sb ***through*** | connect someone on the telephone | *Hold on; I'll try to **put** you **through**.* |
| ***put*** sth ***up***; ***put up*** sth | build<br>increase | *They're **putting up** some new office blocks. Our landlord **put** the rent **up**.* |
| ***put*** sb ***up*** | let somebody stay overnight | *We can **put** you **up** on the sofa.* |
| ***put up with*** sth / sb | accept an unpleasant situation | *How do you **put up with** all this noise?* |

## Practice

**1 Complete these sentences with an appropriate phrasal verb.**

1 I will not ..... your bad temper any longer! I've had enough.
2 All the hotels are full – can you ..... me ..... for the night?
3 She's an excellent speaker – she really knows how to ..... a message.
4 I always ..... a couple of kilos over Christmas.
5 Please don't leave that there, ..... it ..... .
6 Can you ..... me ..... to Mr Smith, please.
7 The Government has decided to ..... income tax again!
8 The building caught fire but the firemen soon ..... it ..... .



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence using the word given. Do not change the word given. Use between two and five words, including the word given.**

1 A good teacher should be able to explain things clearly.
**put**
A good teacher should be able to ..... clearly.

2 Please don't leave your toys lying around the floor.
**put**
Can ..... tidily, please.

3 I wasn't able to keep notes on everything the lecturer said.
**manage**
I ..... down everything the lecturer said.

4 It would be useful if you could propose something in writing.
**forward**
It would be useful if you could ..... in writing.

5 If you keep delaying going to the doctor it will only make things worse.
**off**
The longer ..... going to the doctor the worse it will be.

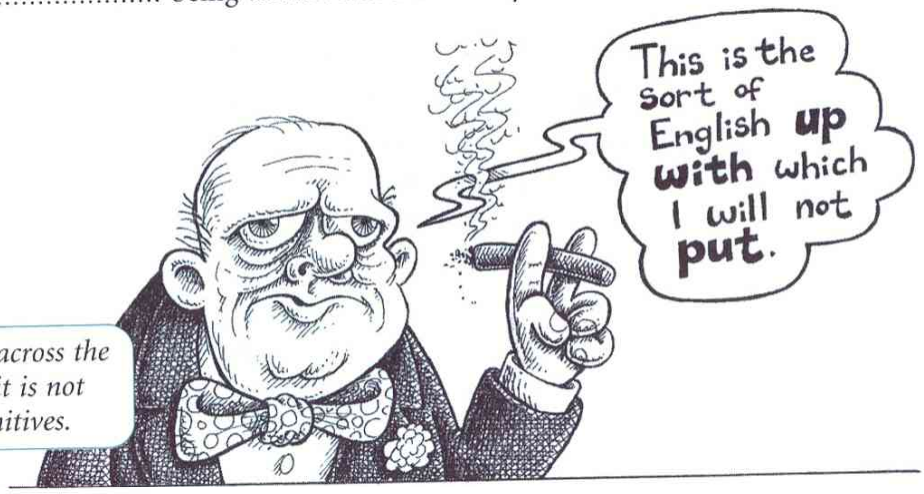
6 As soon as she had got dressed, she left the house.
**put**
As soon as she ..... she left the house.

7 They're planning to build new blocks of flats near the park.
**put**
They are ..... new blocks of flats near the park.

8 The price of electrical goods has increased again.
**put**
They've ..... electrical goods again.

9 The receptionist tried to connect me but the line was engaged.
**put**
The receptionist ..... because the line was engaged.

10 I won't accept being treated like a child any more.
**put**
I won't ..... being treated like a child any more.




*Churchill, on coming across the grammar rule that it is not wrong to split infinitives.*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Exam practice 7

## Part 1

For questions **1–15**, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

**Example:** **0** **A** tired **B** irritated **C** fed **D** angry

### ON YOUR BIKE!

If you are getting ..... (**0**) up wasting time looking for parking space, my ..... (**1**) to you is to consider the bicycle as an alternative ..... (**2**) of transport. Cycling is probably the cheapest and healthiest way of getting ..... (**3**) in our congested city centres. ..... (**4**) it is convenient and environmentally desirable, it can be an unattractive ..... (**5**) on a cold wintry morning. It is much easier to ..... (**6**) onto a nice warm bus or jump into your car, ..... (**7**) the sight of cyclists as they weave their way in and out of the traffic may fill you with ..... (**8**) as you sit waiting in yet ..... (**9**) traffic jam. In spite of the ..... (**10**) that worsening pollution is getting many people ..... (**11**), causing more and more health problems, and ..... (**12**) it is fashionable to express one's ..... (**13**) of the environmentally safe bicycle, it is hard to ..... (**14**) the danger cyclists face in sharing the road with cars. ..... (**15**) cycling is not as risky as it looks at first sight, there are more and more accidents involving cyclists.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1** | **A** advice | **B** warning | **C** plan | **D** solution |
| **2** | **A** method | **B** way | **C** means | **D** instrument |
| **3** | **A** on | **B** through | **C** over | **D** about |
| **4** | **A** Despite | **B** In spite | **C** Although | **D** Even as |
| **5** | **A** choice | **B** advice | **C** propose | **D** transport |
| **6** | **A** enter | **B** be | **C** travel | **D** get |
| **7** | **A** even | **B** however | **C** though | **D** and |
| **8** | **A** approval | **B** envy | **C** angry | **D** criticism |
| **9** | **A** other | **B** more | **C** another | **D** longer |
| **10** | **A** truth | **B** reality | **C** fact | **D** event |
| **11** | **A** round | **B** down | **C** over | **D** together |
| **12** | **A** while | **B** despite | **C** as | **D** in spite of |
| **13** | **A** favour | **B** agreement | **C** belief | **D** approval |
| **14** | **A** refuse | **B** criticise | **C** deny | **D** think |
| **15** | **A** Even though | **B** However | **C** Whereas | **D** Although |

SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Part 2

For questions **16–30**, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only **one** word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### GETTING TO HUNGARY

All flights ..to.... (**0**) Hungary arrive ..... (**16**) Ferihegy Airport, Budapest. Another possibility is to fly to Vienna and ..... (**17**) there to come ..... (**18**) train to Hungary. Train travel, especially ..... (**19**) first class, is very comfortable. Trains also arrive ..... (**20**) Paris, Munich and Zurich. Reductions ..... (**21**) trains are given to young people and pensioners. If you need a visa, make sure you obtain it ..... (**22**) advance to avoid delays ..... (**23**) the border.

It is cheaper to get to Hungary ..... (**24**) bus but it is much harder. Another way to reach Budapest is by sailing down the Danube River ..... (**25**) a ferry from Vienna. ..... (**26**) the trip, passengers can enjoy the scenery. The ferry arrives ..... (**27**) the dock in the centre ..... (**28**) the city.

The official tourist season begins ..... (**29**) May 1 and ends ..... (**30**) the end of October. These months are the ideal time to come from the point of view of the weather.

SCORE

## Part 3

For Questions **31–40**, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. **Do not change the word given**. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (**0**).

**Example: 0** She was running for the bus and fell over.
**when**
She fell over when she was running for the bus.

**31** Although I overslept, I still managed to catch the train.
**time**
Despite ..... , I still managed to catch the train.

**32** Although his leg was broken, he managed to get out of the car.
**fact**
In spite ..... leg was broken, he managed to get out of the car.

**33** In spite of being sixty, Peggy runs five miles a day.
**old**
Although ..... , she runs five miles a day.

**34** It makes no difference how rich he is, they still don't like him.
**how**
No ..... , they still don't like him.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**35** In spite of the fact that he didn't know French, he went to live in France.
**speak**

Even ..... French, he went to live in France.

**36** I used to work in that factory many years ago.
**where**

That's the factory ..... many years ago.

**37** That's the man who had his car stolen last week.
**whose**

That's the ..... last week.

**38** When the teacher and I had talked about the problem, we decided to change schools.
**discussed**

Having ..... teacher, we decided to change schools.

**39** I'm rather busy at the moment – do you mind if I phone you later?
**get**

I'm rather busy at the moment – can ..... later?

**40** You'll recover from the shock of losing your friend, even if it takes a long time.
**get**

You ..... the shock of losing your friend, even if it takes a long time.

SCORE

## Part 4

For questions **41–55**, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning (**0**) and (**00**).

### BECOMING A WRITER

**0** Harry Barber got his degree in philosophy, which his professor ...✓.....
**00** he never believed he would ever manage, and decided to see the ...he.....
**41** world. Having been wandered aimlessly from one country to another, .....
**42** Harry finally settled in Australia where he tried to make it his name .....
**43** as a writer. Harry, some whose stories were based on his travels .....
**44** around the world, stayed up until the early hours of the morning, .....
**45** hoping inspiration would come. Although that he had sent off a .....
**46** few stories to magazines, only one yet had been published, which .....
**47** he was encouraging but it didn't pay the bills. He was forced to get .....
**48** himself a part-time job washing dishes but, in spite of the fact that .....
**49** as the work was menial and left his mind free for his more .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**50** creative activity, Harry felt so tired when he got to home that .....
**51** all he wanted to do was sleep. However, even he had got himself .....
**52** an agent with whom he was on the good terms. Harry hoped his .....
**53** first novel it would change his luck. However, when his .....
**54** agent saw the first draft of the book, he advised Harry to rewrite .....
**55** most of the chapters which he found too slow – people they wanted .....
fast-moving novels nowadays, he said.

SCORE _____

## Part 5

For questions **56–65**, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (**0**).

### PROBLEMS AT SCHOOL

Stephen Murray was clearly going through a difficult *adolescence* (**0**). ADOLESCENT
He had never managed to gain the ..... (**56**) of his teachers at APPROVE
school. He ignored repeated ..... (**57**) to change his attitude or WARN
be expelled. He was widely considered to be an ..... (**58**) pupil INTELLIGENCE
who was wasting his ..... (**59**) by misbehaving in class. OPPORTUNE
His parents received regular ..... (**60**) about their son but in spite COMPLAIN
of their own experience of Stephen's rebellious ..... (**61**), it was BEHAVE
their ..... (**62**) that the school was as much to blame as Stephen BELIEVE
was for the ..... (**63**) that arose from time to time. They UNDERSTAND
reacted ..... (**64**) to any suggestion that the boy's upbringing ANGRY
was in any way ..... (**65**) for Stephen's lack of discipline. RESPONSE

SCORE _____

TOTAL SCORE _____



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# word store (topic related)

These exercises, each organised into groups related to topics, will help you to build your store of very useful words and phrases.

## Living conditions

**1 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word is given.**

We live in a (1) d..... house in the old part of the (2) c..... . It has three (3) f..... and a basement which I use as a study. It's got a small front (4) g..... and a lovely view over the bay. Many people dream of buying a (5) c..... in the country where they can escape to at weekends. Others even hope to own a (6) v..... in a beautiful location on the coast. Most people here, however, live in (7) f..... . There are a lot of students living here in rented (8) r..... and bed-sits.

**2 Now read the text again and answer the questions.**

Which word or phrase means ...?

1 a bedroom which is also used as a living room .....

2 a large house in the country .....

3 a small house in the country .....

4 a house not joined to any other .....

5 a set of rooms below ground level .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Complete the sentences with one of the words given.**

*wardrobe* *lamp* *corkscrew* *armchair* *cushions* *plug* *chest* *light-switch* *stools* *sofa* *cupboard* *bulb* *fireplace* *dressing* *iron*

1 My bedroom doesn't have a ..... so I don't have anywhere to hang my clothes.
2 When she gets home she sits in a comfortable ..... in front of the fire.
3 The three children were all sitting on the ..... watching television.
4 I think we've got some sugar in the ..... in the kitchen.
5 The ..... is on the wall just as you go into the room. Just press it.
6 Make sure your hands are dry when you put the ..... into the socket, otherwise you might get an electric shock.
7 There were several couples in the pub sitting on ..... at the bar, drinking.
8 I can't open this bottle of wine because I don't have a ..... .
9 He had never used an ..... before so he scorched his new shirt.
10 She sat at the ..... table, looking at herself in the mirror.
11 I keep my socks and underwear in a ..... of drawers in my bedroom.
12 It's too dark to read in here; why don't you get a reading ..... ?
13 The ..... on the landing has gone and I can't see a thing – can you put a new one in?
14 There were not enough chairs so some people had to sit on ..... on the floor.
15 On cold winter days, we used to sit round the ..... to keep warm.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**4 Complete the chart below by putting the words in one of the three categories.**

*basement* *block of flats* *hall* *power point* *terraced house* *cottage*
*bungalow* *remote control* *attic* *tea towel* *semi-detached* *cellar*
*corkscrew* *washing-up liquid* *ground floor* *study* *table mat* *landing*
*loft* *detached house* *bed-sit* *ironing board* *villa*

| types of home | parts of a house | things we find in the house |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

**Which household words can fill the gaps in the following sentences? More than one answer may be possible.**

*Example:* It's dark in here – turn the light on.

1 The ..... has come off.
2 She fell down ..... .
3 The ..... broke down yesterday.
4 My ..... was cut off.
5 The batteries in my ..... have run out. I must get some new ones.
6 We have to put the ..... back one hour tonight.

*the stairs* *the staircase* *TV* *dishwasher*
*washing machine* *tap* *electricity*
*water supply* *door handle* *power supply* *radio*
*Walkman* *clock* *paint*



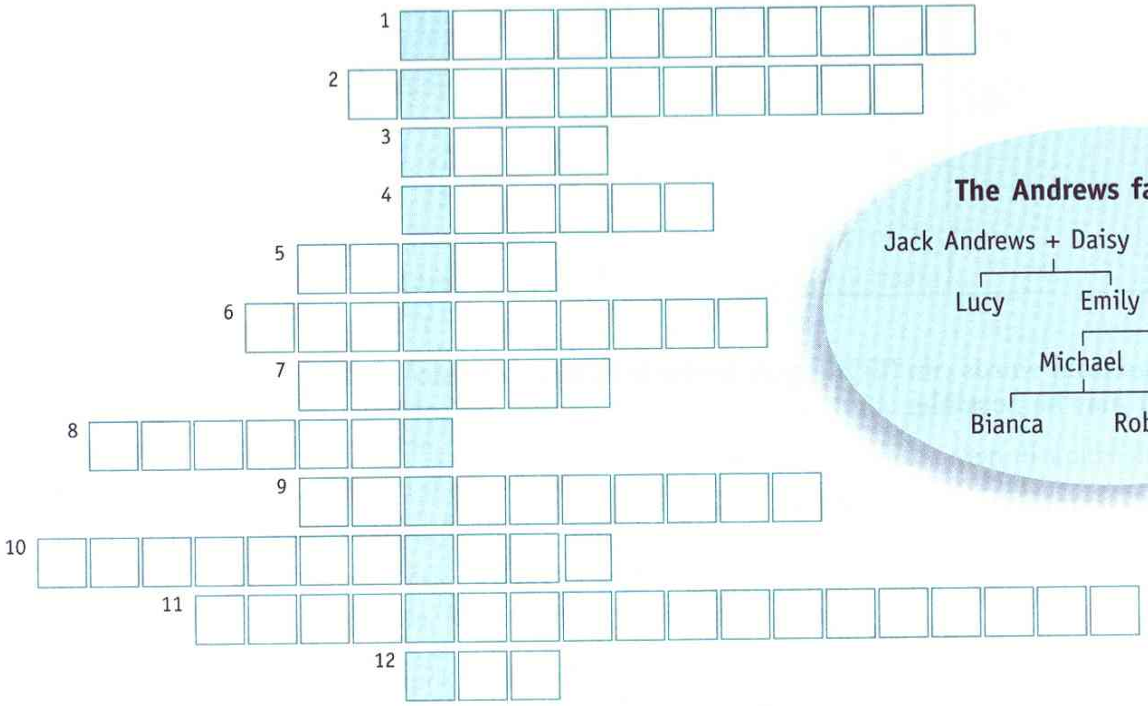
PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

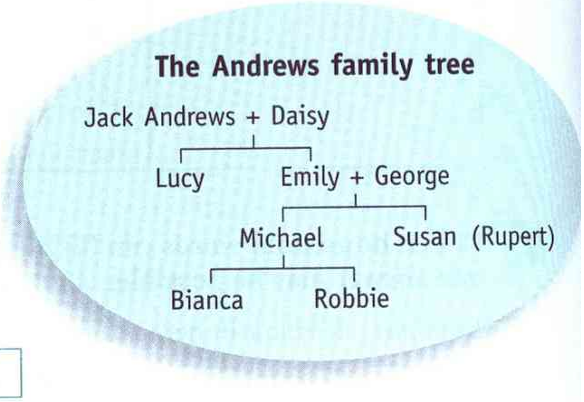
# Social relationships

**1 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word is given.**

A nuclear family consists of only a (1) h....., (2) w..... and children. In my country, an extended (3) f..... is more common. It consists not only of (4) p..... and children but also of (5) g....., aunts, uncles and cousins. My (6) g..... lives with us and loves looking after her grandchildren. My mum's brother, my (7) U..... George, is a widower and has lived with us since (8) A..... Helen died. He is also my godfather.

**2 Read the clues and complete the crossword.**






**ACROSS**

1 Susan's parents, Emily and George, are Australian. Jack is her ..... .

2 Jack emigrated to Australia and married Daisy. Daisy is Susan's ..... .

3 They had another daughter, Lucy – so Emily has a sister. Lucy is Susan's ..... .

4 When Susan's brother Michael got married, he had two children, Bianca and Robbie. Now Susan has a niece and a ..... .

5 Susan's dad died a few years ago and her mum became a ..... .

6 Emily remarried and her new husband, Bill, is a lawyer. Bill is Susan's ..... .

7 Susan's engaged. Her ..... is called Rupert. He's twenty-two and he's a computer programmer.

8 Rupert's mum died when he was at university and so Rupert's dad is a ..... .

9 Rupert's dad is getting married to Maria soon, and Maria will be Rupert's ..... .

10 When Susan and Rupert get married, Rupert's dad will be Susan's ..... .

11 Bianca is Jack and Daisy's ..... .

12 Robbie is Michael's ..... .

**DOWN**

1 What are Susan's ..... called?



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3** **Fill in each blank with the correct form of the words listed.**

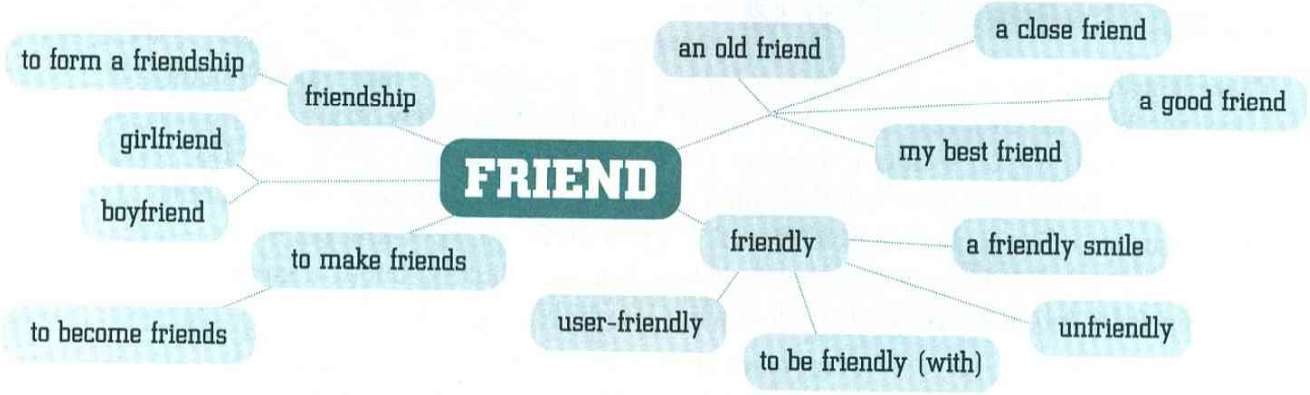
*best* *honeymoon* *meet* *anniversary* *engage*
*go* *stranger* *marriage* *christen* *know*
*in* *to* *get* *fall* *wedding*

# Love at first sight

Last August, Tony and Julie were complete (1) ..... . They hadn't even heard of each other. They first (2) ..... at Michael's twenty-first birthday party and they took (3) ..... each other immediately. As they got to (4) ..... each other, they realised they had many things (5) ..... common. After the party they began (6) ..... out together. Before long, they had (7) ..... in love. They decided to get (8) ..... and then if all went well (9) ..... married a year later. Julie said she didn't believe (10) ..... was a good idea before they had both found good jobs. In the end, the (11) ..... took place in August, on the first (12) ..... of their meeting at Michael's party. It was held in St Martin's Church, which was where Anthony had been (13) ..... as a baby. Their (14) ..... man was Michael, who had invited them to his party a year before. For their (15) ..... they went on a two week cruise of the Aegean islands.

## Friendship

**1** **Fill in the blanks with one or more suitable words from the diagram.**




1 She's cheerful and ..... the whole time.
2 The new student in the class is upset because we've been ..... towards him.
3 Our ..... developed quickly over the weeks that followed.
4 She's not a very ..... friend – she's just an acquaintance.
5 The two boys ..... friends very quickly.
6 I've just bought a new computer but the manual is not very ..... – I can't understand a word it says.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Read the text and then complete the sentences with the correct preposition or particle from the list. Some will be used more than once.**

*Example:* I don't get *on* very well with my boss because he thinks I don't work hard enough.

*out* *up* *down* *off*

1 She fell ..... with her boyfriend but after a while they made up again.

2 He looks ..... to his father and always listens carefully to his advice.

3 Just because she's got more money than her neighbours she looks ..... on them.

4 She's very popular with colleagues because she's always ready to help them ..... if they have problems.

5 She was born in France but didn't grow ..... there – she was brought ..... by her grandparents in Spain.

6 She used to go ..... with a boy called Jack but they've broken ..... for good now – what put him ..... her was her arrogance.

**STUCK-UP**

Kelly's a really difficult person to get on with – she's already fallen out with her best friend. The way she looks down on everyone else really puts people off her – many people think she's a bit of snob but I think it's just the way she's been brought up. You see she was an only child in a very well-off family so she's probably been spoilt.

## Occupations

**1 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word is given.**

### And a good job too!

There is a lot of (1) u..... nowadays so it is getting more and more difficult to get the kind of (2) j..... you really want. Then you have to decide what is more important to you – how much you (3) e..... or job satisfaction? Do you want to work with your hands (called (4) m..... work) or do you prefer to work in an office (called clerical work)? Do you prefer to work indoors or (5) o..... ? Whatever you decide, when you are thinking about a career, or applying for a job, you will find the following vocabulary useful:

- apply for a job
- make an application
- to earn a good wage
- to make a lot of money
- to have a large income
- to retire from work
- to belong to a union
- to join a union
- to hand in one's resignation
- dismiss someone from a job
- employ someone
- give someone a job



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Fill the gaps with an appropriate word from the list.**

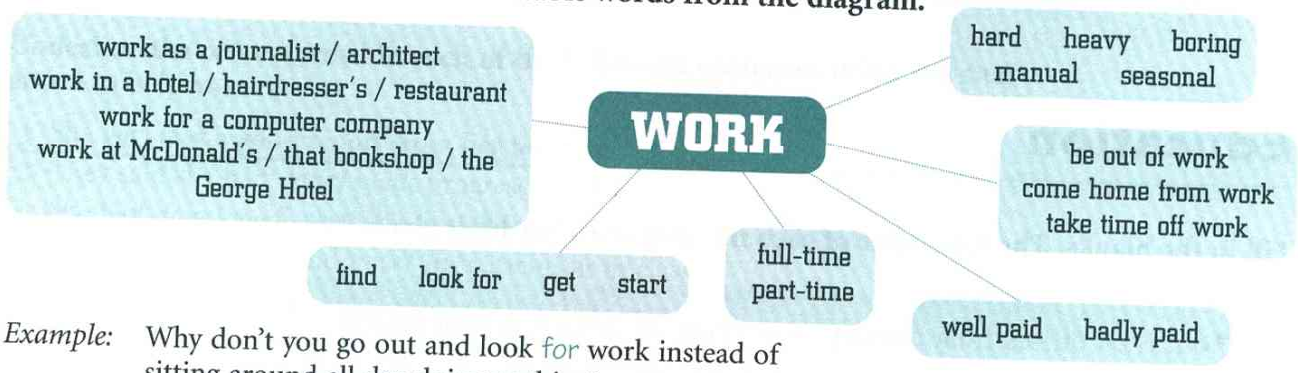
*offer* *experience* *career* *job* *management* *interview* *salary* *trainee* *qualifications* *reference* *promotion* *pension* *wage* *sack*

a choose a ..... in computers
b go for an .....
c go into .....
d to get a ..... as a waiter
e to get the .....
f to earn a decent weekly .....
g to get an annual ..... increase
h to get a ..... at sixty-five
i to win .....
j to get a good ..... from your tutor
k to have the right ..... for the job
l to have two years' relevant .....
m to accept an ..... of a job
n to take a young person on as a .....

**3 Put the following steps in Joe Bloggs' career in the correct order.**

a He was promoted to assistant to the sales manager.
b He took up gardening as a hobby.
c He looked for a job.
d He was appointed managing director.
e He made an application.
f He was offered the job.
g He was out of work.
h He retired.
i He went for an interview.
j He worked as a clerk.
k He got the job of sales manager.
l He gave in his resignation.

**4 Fill in the blanks with one or more suitable words from the diagram.**




*Example:* Why don't you go out and look for work instead of sitting around all day doing nothing?

1 Jane is working ..... a software developer for Microsoft.
2 My dad worked ..... a factory all his life.
3 His wife works ..... the local council.
4 I'll talk to you about the problem when you come home ..... work.
5 Arthur has been out ..... work ever since they closed the mine.
6 Her boss gave her time ..... work to go and see the doctor.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**5** **Study this chart and then do the exercise that follows.**

| verb | meaning | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***carry out*** sth; ***carry*** sth ***out*** | do something that needs to be done | *Those repairs must be **carried out**.* |
| ***deal with*** sb | do business with someone, or take an action to do with work | *In my job, I have to **deal with** a lot of different people.* |
| ***deal with*** sth | take the correct action to complete a piece of work or solve a problem | *The problem is being **dealt with**.* |
| ***get on*** | be successful in one's career | *If you want to **get on** in your career, you'll have to work hard.* |
| ***take on*** work; ***take*** work ***on*** | agree to do a job | *You've **taken on** too much work – slow down a bit.* |
| ***take*** sb ***on*** | employ someone | *We're **taking** ten waiters **on** this summer.* |
| ***take over*** | continue doing someone else's job | *Who will **take over** now that Smith has resigned?* |
| ***take up*** a post | start working at a new job | *She **took up** her first teaching post in 1970.* |

**Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb from the table above. Make any other changes necessary.**

1 After looking at his qualifications, they decided to offer him the job.
2 He's doing far too much and will make himself ill.
3 I started work here five years ago.
4 Who do you think is going to be the new director when Santana retires?
5 Will you handle any complaints while I'm away?
6 She did all the tasks successfully.

## Education

**1** **Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.**

Education differs from country to country. In Britain, school consists of pre-school, (1) p..... school and secondary school. (2) M..... for different subjects are given in figures out of 10, 20 or 100; (3) g..... are usually expressed in letters, A, B, C, etc. A certificate is given for success in a particular (4) a..... of study (for example the Cambridge Certificate); a diploma is awarded by colleges and a (5) d..... by universities.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2** **Look at these useful expressions, then fill the gaps with one of these words.**

*place* *revise* *exercise* *heart* *classes* *diploma* *grade* *year* *private* *grades*

| verb | expressions |
|---|---|
| ***do*** | *do* (= study for) *a degree in management; do* (= take) *an exam / an* (**1**) .....; *do* (= carry out) *an experiment; do* (= carry out) *research into traffic pollution; do* (= study) *maths, history* |
| ***gain*** | *gain a good degree / education; gain experience* |
| ***get*** | *get a good education; get information / advice; get a* (**2**) ..... *at university; get into university; get a grant; get good / bad marks /* (**3**) .....; *get a good report; get a degree / certificate /* (**4**) ..... |
| ***have*** | *have good knowledge of marketing strategies; have* (**5**) ..... *lessons* |
| ***go*** | *go to university / college / evening* (**6**) ..... |
| ***make*** | *make progress; make a mistake; make the* (**7**) ..... |
| ***study*** | *study mathematics / notes / a diagram; study for a test / an exam / a degree* |
| ***take*** | *take a course / an exam; take notes (while listening or reading); take a break from studying; take a* (**8**) ..... *off to travel* |
| ***teach*** | *teach a lesson / a class; teach English / media studies; teach at a school / college / university* |
| **Others** | *attend classes / a private language school / university*<br>*carry out research into environmental effects of tourism cheat in an exam*<br>*copy from someone else give a lecture / a talk / a demonstration*<br>*learn a poem by* (**9**) ..... *; memorise the facts pay attention (in class)*<br>*prepare /* (**10**) ..... *for an exam sit for / sit an exam* |

**3** **Underline the correct word in each of the following sentences using the chart above to help you.**

1 She *got / took* a good report from her teachers.
2 They said she had *done / made* progress in all subjects.
3 She had *done / made* very few mistakes in her tests.
4 She is well-behaved and *pays / gives* attention in class.
5 She always *takes / does* notes when the teacher talks.
6 She likes physics and enjoys *doing / making* experiments.
7 She hates being disturbed when she is *revising / reading* for an exam.
8 She feels a bit nervous when she has to *sit / revise* an exam.
9 She wants to *get / go* into university.
10 When she *gets / takes* her degree, she wants to go abroad.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**4** **Choose *a* or *the* in the following passage. Cross out the wrong one. In some places neither is possible so cross out both.**

## PEOPLE IN EDUCATION

*A / The* professor is not *a / the* teacher in *a / the* secondary school, but has *a / the* highest academic position in *a / the* university. *A / The* lecturer is *a / the* university teacher. Lecturers – and professors – give *a / the* lectures. Students in Britain usually have *a / the* tutor who gives them *a / the* advice and teaches students in small groups. You graduate from university with *a / the* degree. If you do *a / the* postgraduate work, you will have *a / the* supervisor to help and advise you.

**5** **Match the definitions below with one of the words given.**

1 Someone in charge of a school.
2 Someone who is still at university studying for their first degree.
3 Someone who has successfully completed their first degree.
4 Someone responsible for courses in a private school.
5 Someone in the same class as you at school.
6 Someone who teaches at a college or university.
7 Someone responsible for teaching a small group of students.
8 Someone with the highest academic position in a university.

*tutor* · *lecturer* · *professor* · *undergraduate* · *classmate* · *head teacher* · *director of studies* · *graduate*

**6** **Fill each gap with an appropriate word from the list.**

A (1) n..... or (2) p..... is for children aged two to five. A (3) p..... includes (4) i..... and lasts from the age of five to eleven. In Britain, at the age of nine some children go to (5) m ..... before going to (6) s..... . Bright pupils sometimes go to (7) g..... after taking an examination, but most children go to a mixed ability (8) c..... . A (9) p..... in England is 'private' and parents pay for children to attend – a (10) s..... is free.

*grammar school*
*nursery school*
*state school*
*infant school*
*playschool*
*primary school*
*public school*
*middle school*
*secondary school*
*comprehensive school*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**7** **Put the following story in the correct order.**

a Her research is in international law.
b When she was at playschool, Maria played and had fun.
c After finishing her BA, she took a year off.
d In her infant school, she began learning how to read and write.
e She got into grammar school and did well in all subjects.
f When she was at junior school, she loved history.
g She got a place at university to do law.
h She graduated with a first-class degree.
i She decided to do postgraduate work.
j In the sixth form she studied A-levels to get into university.

# The arts

**1** **Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.**

Daniel Day-Lewis is a great actor – he has (1) p..... both in films and on the (2) s..... . One of his finest (3) r..... was in *The Last of the Mohicans*. His mother was the actress Jill Balcon and his father was the famous writer, Cecil Day-Lewis, who published several volumes of (4) p..... . Cecil Day-Lewis was also a lecturer at Cambridge University. Some of his (5) l..... to undergraduates were published and broadcast by the BBC. He was Professor of Poetry at Oxford and he also published detective (6) n..... under a pseudonym.

**2** **Complete the chart below by adding words from the list. Some may go in more than one place.**

| literature | music | theatre | cinema | art |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |

*sculpture* *chapter* *script* *act* *comedy* *CD* *concert* *singer* *microphone* *short story* *première* *screenplay* *scenery* *stage* *lighting* *auditorium* *performance* *encore* *sound-track* *drama* *rehearsal* *scene* *picture* *play* *trailer* *magazine* *opera* *audience* *exhibition* *musical* *first night* *landscape* *novel* *canvas* *role* *character* *biography* *subtitles* *horror* *illustration* *set* *screen* *edition* *love story* *cast* *thriller* *brush* *programme* *matinée* *poetry* *musician* *science fiction* *orchestra* *western* *costume* *watercolour* *volume* *pop* *tragedy* *plot*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Complete the gaps in the following sentences with an appropriate form of a word from the chart at the bottom of page 273.**

1 The director got very angry when the actor failed to turn up to ..... .
2 The ..... for this film was written by a famous novelist.
3 The ..... applauded at the end of the performance.
4 Everyone in the ..... was very good apart from the leading lady.
5 The first ..... of a book is often worth more if it is signed by the author.
6 The ..... of the film includes some great songs.
7 The whole play was performed in seventeenth century ..... .
8 I last went to a rock ..... to see the Rolling Stones.
9 Is this your first ..... of poetry?
10 Children's books appeal to children if they have attractive ..... .

**4 Complete the following text with words connected with the theatre. The first letter of each missing word has been given.**

## The most difficult role

They say Hamlet is the most difficult role for an actor to play and one of the most difficult (1) p..... to direct. Lawrence Olivier gave one of the best (2) p..... of his career as Hamlet. There are always several performances of Hamlet being (3) p..... on all over the world at any one time. The irony is that although we know more about Hamlet than almost any other (4) c..... in literature, we hardly know anything about the (5) a..... of the play, William Shakespeare.

**5 Collocations. List any word or phrase which matches with each verb below.**

*Example:* put on a play, a performance, ...

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| act in | direct | produce | see |
| appear in | get | publish | set |
| broadcast | give | put on | watch |
| compose | play | review | write |

*a difficult part* *a performance* *Hamlet* *a show* *a horror movi* *a review* *a symphony* *a play* *a film* *the leading role* *a video* *a production* *a new edition* *a CD* *the story* *a new book* *the scene* *a piece of music* *a recital* *a concert*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**6 Complete these sentences with an appropriate word or words from 5 opposite.**

1 The story is ..... in nineteenth-century France.
2 The play got really fantastic ..... from the critics.
3 Harrison Ford has already ..... several award-winning films.
4 Who plays the ..... of the monster in the film?
5 His Othello was one of the worst ..... of his career. It was awful.
6 The play was first ..... on television.
7 The play was directed by Spielberg and ..... by Paramount Pictures.
8 Who ..... the music for the film *Titanic*?
9 Her first novel was ..... by Penguin books.
10 Let's stay in and ..... a film on TV tonight.

**7 Study this list of phrasal verbs and then do the exercise that follows.**

| verb | meaning / use | example |
|---|---|---|
| ***come up*** (***in*** the exam) | appear as a question in an exam; be set in the exam | *I wonder what's going to **come up in** the exam on Monday.* |
| ***get in***; get ***into*** sth | enter a school, university | *You have to pass a lot of exams to **get into** university.* |
| ***get through*** (sth) | pass (an exam) | *I'm afraid you didn't **get through** your exam.* |
| ***give*** sth ***in*** | give homework, an essay, etc. to a teacher | *You should have **given in** this work last week.* |
| ***look up*** sth; ***look*** sth ***up*** (***in***) | check the meaning of a word in a dictionary | *If you don't know what it means, **look** it **up in** the dictionary.* |
| ***pay attention*** (***to*** sth / sb) | listen to what someone is saying | *You should **pay attention to** the teacher in class.* |
| ***put up your hand*** | raise your hand | *Please **put up your hand** if you want to speak.* |
| ***send*** sb ***down*** | tell sb to leave a college or university because of bad behaviour | *She was **sent down** because she cheated in the test.* |
| ***stay up*** | go to bed late | *I used to **stay up** all night revising for my exams.* |
| ***take up*** sth | start studying French, music, etc. | *She's going to **take up** the guitar.* |

**Answer the questions using a phrasal verb from the list above.**

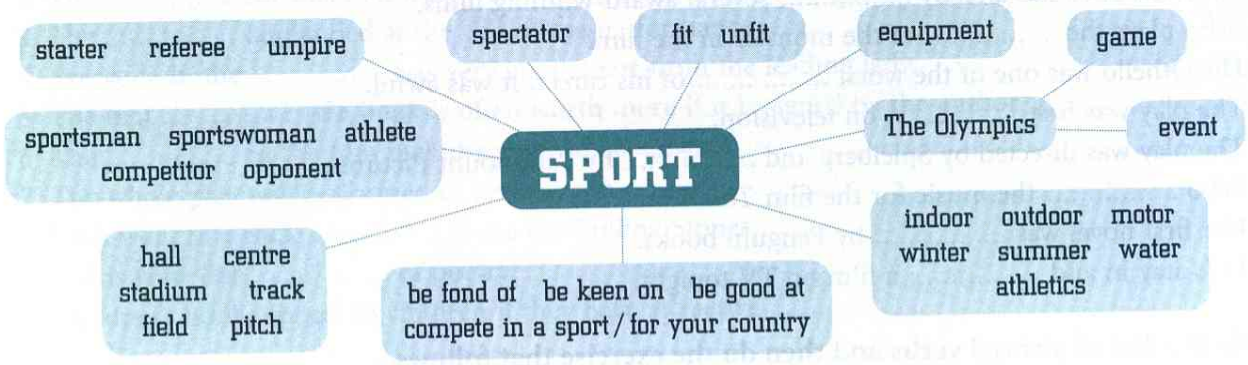
1 What would you do if you wanted to ask your teacher a question without shouting out?
2 What do you do if you have an exam the next day and you need to revise?
3 What would you do if you wanted to learn another foreign language?
4 What would you say to explain what happened to a student who cheated?
5 What do you do in class if you listen carefully to your teacher?
6 What does your teacher say to you if you passed your exam?
7 What would you do if you wanted to find out what 'serendipity' means?
8 What would you have to do if you wanted to study to be a doctor?
9 What do you say to tell your friend you hope a question will be set in the exam?
10 What would your teacher say if you are late with an essay?



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

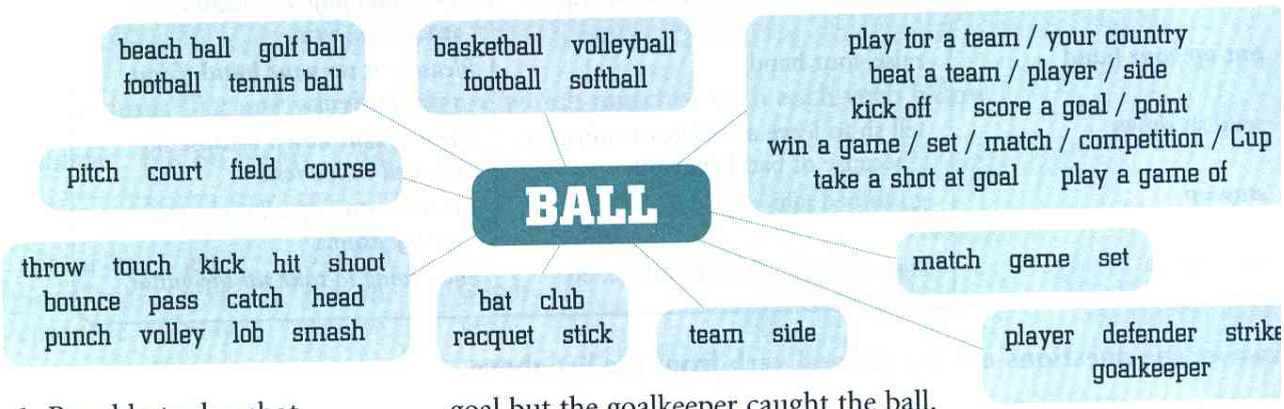
# Sports

**1 Fill in the blanks in the sentences below with a word or phrase from the diagram.**




1 I enjoy watching football but I've never been very good ..... it.
2 At our local sports centre you can play a wide variety of ..... sports.
3 I'm not too keen ..... sports such as boxing.
4 The ..... you need for skiing, like boots and a ski suit, can be quite expensive.
5 It's a pity that most people only support ..... during the Olympics.
6 Are you fond ..... sports like tennis?
7 Which do you prefer – summer or ..... sports?
8 Is swimming an ..... or indoor sport in your country?
9 Personally, I think the ..... should have awarded a penalty.
10 Athletes have to be extremely ..... if they want to compete successfully.

**2 Fill in the blanks in the sentences below with a word or phrase from the diagram.**




1 Ronaldo took a shot ..... goal but the goalkeeper caught the ball.
2 A good basketball player must be able to ..... the ball to other players.
3 Brazil ..... Germany 2-1.
4 In table tennis, you must let the ball ..... on the table before you hit it.
5 Bergkamp plays ..... Arsenal in England.
6 How many times has Germany ..... the World Cup?
7 If he gets this game, he'll win the set and could win the ..... .
8 Martina ..... the ball over her opponent's head to the back of the court.
9 Tiger Woods' shot was superb – he ..... the ball and it rolled ten metres and fell into the hole
10 We love playing ..... in bare feet on the beach.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3** **Complete the chart by adding the words below.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *umpire* | *canoeing* | *ring* | *pool* | *snooker* | *golf* |
| *squash* | *coach* | *club* | *athletics* | *bowls* | *defender* |
| *rod* | *oar* | *course* | *field* | *swimming* | *motor racing* |
| *track* | *pitch* | *boxing* | *skiing* | *ground* | *tennis* |
| *skis* | *football* | *hockey* | *court* | *stadium* | *basketball* |
| *volleyball* | *player* | *referee* | *net* | *bat* | *judge* |
| *stick* | *whistle* | *team* | *goalkeeper* | *boots* | *trunks* |
| *captain* | *manager* | *diving* | *fishing* | *racquet* | *striker* |

| places | games | sport | people | equipment |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |

**4** **Fill in the blanks with a word from the chart above.**

1 Have you ever been to a boxing ..... ?
2 You can't row without one or two ..... .
3 The person who selects the players for a game is the ..... .
4 In table tennis you hit the ball with a round ..... .
5 The official who makes sure players follow the rules in games like tennis, squash, and basketball is the ..... .
6 London's most famous venue for international matches is Wembley ..... .
7 When there is a foul during a football match, the referee blows his ..... .
8 The football player who tries to score goals is called a ..... .
9 We play squash and tennis on an indoor ..... .
10 Marathon runners make one circuit of the ..... before leaving the stadium.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Hobbies

**1 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.**

## In your own time

Most of us have a (1) h..... that we do in our spare time. Some of us do things like surfing the Net, or make things like model planes. Others play cards or board (2) g..... like backgammon, while others like to (3) c..... things such as stamps and antiques. I (4) s..... a lot of my summer holidays snorkelling in the sea. My brother goes away almost every weekend either walking or (5) c..... in the mountains. His favourite hobby is taking (6) p..... of rare flowers. My aunt who is eighty has a magnificent (7) c..... of traditional music, and still goes to (8) d..... classes. So, there is much more to life than watching television!

**2 Complete the chart below using the equipment in the list. There is an example.**

*camera* *boots* *mountain bike* *tweezers* *hoe* *brush* *rope* *glue* *needle* *palette*

| equipment | hobby |
|---|---|
| wax | making candles, batik printing |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3** **Fill in the blanks with the correct form of a verb from the list.**

*have* *take* *go* *do* *make*

1 She ..... excellent photographs of people in markets.
2 Shall we ..... mountain climbing this weekend?
3 If you've nothing to do, let's ..... a game of cards.
4 You should ..... some exercise; come to the gym with me.
5 He ..... model planes using matches and thin paper.
6 Jenny ..... guitar lessons for several years.
7 She ..... a lot of sewing in her spare time.
8 Would you describe ..... shopping as a hobby?
9 Lola's helping the children ..... animals out of cake dough.
10 Chess is a great game to play but it ..... too much time.
11 I don't seem to ..... enough time for all my hobbies!
12 We're ..... swimming later on – do you want to come?

**4** **Complete these sentences with the correct form of the words at the end of the sentence.**

1 She spends too much money playing on machines in the ..... arcade. AMUSE
2 My friends think men who knit are hilariously ..... . FUN
3 One of my most ..... hobbies is playing a musical instrument. ENJOY
4 It is so ..... lying on the beach doing absolutely nothing. PLEASE
5 We could hear loud ..... coming from the flat downstairs. LAUGH
6 The ..... asked us to smile at the camera. PHOTOGRAPH
7 He kept the children amused with his ..... stories. HUMOUR
8 Her new novel is sure to ..... her readers. DELIGHTFUL
9 I don't find jokes about sick people at all ..... . AMUSE
10 Paul was ..... as he skateboarded down the steps. GRIN
11 It's so ..... to sit by the sea and watch dolphins playing. PEACE
12 My idea of perfect ..... is a shopping trip to Paris. HAPPY



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Travel and tourism

**1 Study these charts and then do the exercise that follows.**

| accommodation | journey | transport |
|---|---|---|
| stay in a / an:<br>hotel<br>bed & breakfast (b. & b.)<br>youth hostel<br>self-catering flat<br>motel<br>guesthouse<br>inn<br>cottage<br>camp<br>cabin | a car / bus / train journey<br>crossing<br>drive<br>flight<br>tour<br>trip<br>day trip<br>business trip<br>round trip<br>package holiday<br>voyage<br>scheduled / charter flight<br>ramble<br>trek<br>walk | travel / go:<br>by air / sea / rail<br>by car / taxi / bus / coach<br>by bike / train<br>by boat / ferry / ship<br>by plane<br>by public transport<br>on foot |

| people | places | objects | actions |
|---|---|---|---|
| guest<br>holiday-maker<br>sightseer<br>tourist<br>traveller<br>visitor<br>courier<br>guide<br>host(ess)<br>steward(ess)<br>customs officer<br>coach driver<br>porter<br>receptionist<br>ticket officer<br>travel agent | bus stop<br>bus station<br>train station<br>taxi rank<br>airport<br>arrivals<br>departures<br>departure lounge<br>gate<br>terminal<br>harbour<br>port<br>abroad<br>overseas | backpack<br>baggage<br>bags<br>holdall<br>luggage<br>suitcase<br>trolley<br>boarding card<br>cheques<br>credit card<br>foreign currency<br>passport<br>(a return / one-way) ticket<br>traveller's cheques<br>visa | plan an itinerary<br>book a holiday / flight / ticket (to)<br>buy a ticket<br>reserve a seat / room<br>travel to<br>depart from<br>drive / fly / sail (to)<br>set off<br>set out<br>arrive at / in<br>get in at (time)<br>land at / in<br>check in<br>check out (of)<br>do some / go sightseeing<br>go on an excursion / a trip (to)<br>pay the bill / pay (for)<br>run out of petrol / money<br>miss the bus / train / plane |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Fill in the blanks with an appropriate word from the charts opposite.**

1 I usually go to the airport ..... train so I rarely ..... a taxi.
2 Our ..... was delayed and we spent two hours in the ..... at the airport.
3 If we don't hurry, we'll ..... the bus and we'll have to go ..... foot.
4 Please have your ..... ready for inspection.
5 At the hotel, the ..... gave us our room numbers and a ..... took our bags to our rooms.
6 Next day we paid the ..... and ..... of the hotel.
7 We boarded the ..... to the island but then the ..... was rough and everyone was sick.
8 I'd like to ..... a package ..... to Spain. Is there a cheap ..... direct to Malaga?

**2 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.**

When planning a (1) h..... you must first decide where you are going. Next, you need to decide where you're going to (2) s..... and how you're going to travel – (3) b..... plane, car, train or boat. You may need to visit a travel (4) a..... who will organise your tickets. If you are travelling (5) a....., it's best to (6) b..... in advance to make sure you get the (7) f..... you want and a good (8) h..... . Don't forget to arrange to have some foreign (9) c..... and to have enough (10) t..... .

**3 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first. Use the word given. This word must not be changed.**

1 I think the excursions were the best thing about language school.
**going**
What I liked most about .....

2 I'd like to see the sights before we find somewhere to stay.
**sightseeing**
I'd like .....

3 As soon as the plane has arrived, I'll phone you.
**landed**
As soon as .....

4 If you want a good room, you should reserve it in advance.
**reservation**
If you want a good room, you should .....

5 I usually go to work by bus but yesterday I went by train.
**take**
I usually .....

6 Why don't you fly to Paris instead?
**flight**
Why don't you .....

7 Make sure you have enough petrol if you're driving in the mountains.
**run**
Make sure you .....

8 The train from Liverpool arrives at eleven o'clock.
**get**
The train from .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Shopping

**1 Study this chart and then do the exercise that follows.**

| people | places | objects | actions |
|---|---|---|---|
| (regular) customer<br>client<br><br>(shop / sales) assistant<br>manager<br>(member of) staff<br><br>butcher<br>chemist<br>fishmonger<br>florist<br>newsagent<br>optician<br>shopkeeper<br>stall holder<br>trader | baker's<br>bookshop<br>boutique<br>bureau de change<br>butcher's<br>chemist's<br>department store<br>DIY store<br>dry-cleaner's<br>fishmonger's<br>florist's<br>greengrocer's<br>jeweller's<br>newsagent's<br>off-licence<br>(charity / local / second-hand) shop<br>kiosk<br>(street) market<br>supermarket<br>toyshop<br><br>the high street<br>(in) the sales<br>shopping centre<br>shopping mall | bank card<br>cash<br>cheque book<br>credit card<br>store card<br>Switch card<br><br>a bargain<br>(mail order) catalogue<br>carrier bag<br>designer label<br>goods<br>faulty goods<br>product<br>price<br>rate of exchange<br>receipt<br>sales tax (VAT)<br><br>cash desk<br>shop window<br>till<br>checkout<br>'pay here' | borrow (money) from sb<br>lend (money) to / lend sb money<br><br>afford<br>buy sth<br>can / can't afford<br>cut (their) prices<br>exchange sth (for sth else)<br>get a discount<br>go shopping<br>order sth<br>pay cash / by cheque<br>pay a deposit<br>pay for sth (at a reduced price)<br>take sth back<br>try sth on<br><br>see to sb<br>serve (a customer)<br>giftwrap sth |

**Fill in the blanks with an appropriate word from the chart.**

1 I'm sorry but you can't pay ..... these with a credit card. Have you got a Switch ..... ?
2 I can't ..... to buy a new computer – I haven't even got the cash to pay a ..... .
3 Can I ..... a discount if I pay ..... ?
4 I don't usually ..... shopping in the high street; I enjoy finding ..... in the market.
5 Excuse me, can I try these trousers ..... before I buy them?
6 Is meat cheaper in the ..... or from your local ..... ?
7 Will you ..... me some cash so that I can ..... for the parking?
8 You'll get the best ..... at that ..... de change over there.
9 Do you prefer cheap ..... , or those with a ..... label?
10 How much does it cost to have this clock gift..... ?



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2 Which words or phrases are the following descriptions of?**

1 Someone who serves customers in a shop. .....
2 The main shopping street in a town. .....
3 The place where you can buy paint, screws, etc. .....
4 Where you would go to buy medicines. .....
5 The bag you get in a supermarket to hold your shopping. .....
6 A shop that sells fruit and vegetables. .....
7 The place where you can exchange foreign currency. .....
8 A large shop on several floors selling a wide variety of goods. .....
9 A small building in the street selling newspapers, sweets, etc. .....
10 The place where you pay for things in a supermarket. .....

**3 Complete the chart with the words from the list.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *household goods* | *lettuce* | *suntan lotion* | *mushrooms* | *yoghurt* |
| *shampoo* | *shirt* | *flowers* | *crisps* | *aspirin* |
| *courgettes* | *cleaning products* | *bread* | *sunglasses* | *trousers* |
| *toothpaste* | *shoes* | *frozen food* | *magazine* | *milk* |
| *underwear* | *bubble bath* | *nappies* | *melon* | *cheese* |
| *carrots* | *eggs* | *denim jacket* | *breakfast cereals* | *plums* |
| *stamps* | *stationery* | *beans* | *jewellery* | *pencils* |
| *lipstick* | *aubergines* | *cigarettes* | *flour* | *medicines* |
| *sausages* | *food in cans* | *coffee* | *hairbrush* | *bananas* |
| *sweets* | *toilet paper* | *chocolate* | *pasta* | *perfume* |

| newsagent's | chemist's | boutique | greengrocer's | supermarket |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |

**4 Complete these phrases with an appropriate word from the list.**

1 a ..... of milk or orange juice
2 a ..... of coke or beer
3 a ..... of soap or milk chocolate
4 a ..... of yoghurt or margarine
5 a ..... of chocolates or tissues
6 a ..... of toothpaste or glue
7 a ..... of shampoo or moisturiser
8 a ..... of beans or paint
9 a ..... of biscuits or cigarettes
10 a ..... of flowers or grapes
11 a ..... of mineral water or bubble bath
12 a ..... of pickles or jam

*packet* *tin* *can* *box* *tube* *carton* *bar* *bottle* *jar* *sachet* *tub* *bunch*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Food and restaurants

**1 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.**

A vegetarian is someone who eats only (1) v..... , bread, fruit, eggs, etc. and doesn't eat (2) m..... . However, some do eat (3) f..... which I find strange. Others eat chicken but not (4) r..... meat. A vegan doesn't eat meat, fish, or any (5) d..... products such as eggs, milk and (6) c..... . They do eat fruit and (7) n..... . A (8) g..... knows a lot about food and enjoys good food and (9) w..... . A (10) c..... is someone who prepares and cooks food in a hotel or restaurant.

**2 Complete the chart below by adding the words in the list.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *nectarine* | *thyme* | *salmon* | *apple* | *mussel* | *lamb* |
| *satsuma* | *trout* | *squid* | *lettuce* | *plaice* | *oregano* |
| *mackerel* | *rosemary* | *mutton* | *courgette* | *basil* | *plum* |
| *coconut* | *fig* | *shrimp* | *cabbage* | *bacon* | *cauliflower* |
| *mincemeat* | *smoked salmon* | *chives* | *liver* | *chicken* | *chop* |
| *spinach* | *cucumber* | *beef* | *strawberry* | *grape* | *joint* |
| *prawn* | *watermelon* | *lobster* | *cod* | *parsley* | *sausage* |
| *aubergine* | *pork* | *sardine* | *salami* | *mango* | *octopus* |

| vegetables | fish | herbs | seafood | fruit | meat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 Complete the chart with the words from the list.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *roast beef* | *hot dog* | *curry* | *spaghetti Bolognese* |
| *prawn crackers* | *bocadillo* | *shepherd's pie* | *apple crumble and custard* |
| *tapas* | *ciabatta* | *kebab* | *hamburger* |
| *tiramisu* | *paella* | *chop suey* | *tagliatelle* |
| *popcorn* | *moussaka* | *pumpkin pie* | *onion bhaji* |
| *samosas* | *souvlaki* | *biryani* | *sweet and sour* |
| *houmous* | *tortilla* | *spring roll* | *fish and chips* |

| Spain | Britain | Greece | China | Italy | India | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | |

**4 Match the dishes** (1–8) **with a set of ingredients** (a–h).

1 shepherd's pie
2 paella
3 pizza
4 moussaka
5 spaghetti Bolognese
6 spring roll
7 Waldorf salad
8 biryani

a mincemeat, onion, tomato paste, red wine, pasta
b apples, walnuts, celery or lettuce, mayonnaise
c mincemeat, sliced aubergines, tomatoes, onions, cheese sauce
d chicken, onion, spices, chilli, rice
e bread dough, tomato, onion, cheese, anchovies, olives
f mincemeat, carrots, onions, gravy, mashed potato
g bean sprouts, chopped vegetables, pork, pancake, hot oil
h seafood, rice, chicken, onion, saffron

**5 Put the correct form of the verbs in the list into the sentences.**

*bake* *roast* *barbecue* *boil* *casserole* *grill* *steam* *fry*

1 It's best to ..... an omelette in a deep pan.
2 Potatoes are delicious if you ..... them in their jackets.
3 ..... vegetables are healthier than boiled ones.
4 ..... meat tastes better if you cook it slowly in the oven.
5 Put butter on trout before you ..... it under a strong heat.
6 Tough meat is easier to cook if you ..... it in the oven with vegetables.
7 Do you think the British ..... their cabbage for far too long?
8 I love the smell of ..... lamb chops from next-door's garden.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**6 Complete each gap with an appropriate word. You are given the first letter of the missing word.**

Have you been to 'Bar None'? We went yesterday and it was great. I'm glad we (1) b..... because the restaurant was full. I asked the waiter to bring us a wine (2) l..... so that we could decide what to drink. For my (3) s..... I chose garlic mushrooms, and for my main (4) c..... I ordered a casserole with pork (5) c..... , sage and white wine. For (6) d..... I had crème caramel with ice-cream. I asked our waiter to bring the (7) b..... and I had to pay cash because they wouldn't take (8) c..... cards. I left the waiter quite a large(9) t..... as I was very pleased with the (10) s..... .

**7 Match the food (1–10) with words from the list. You may use the words more than once.**

1 meat
2 onions
3 potatoes
4 cheese
5 bread
6 curry
7 bananas
8 tomato
9 carrots
10 apple

*minced* *spiced* *chopped* *sliced* *mashed* *grated*

**8 Underline the odd word out.**

*Example:* water coke <u>bread</u> wine juice

1 meal food cuisine feast corkscrew
2 wine starter main course appetiser dessert
3 boil fry bake bowl grill
4 slice boil chop grate peel
5 salty savoury pan sweet bitter
6 dish meal bowl plate cup
7 courgette mushroom bean plum broccoli
8 bill tip receipt menu cheque

**9 Complete the following sentences with the correct word.**

1 If the goods are faulty, take them ..... to the shop.
2 Try to cut down ..... cakes if you want to lose weight.
3 I'm looking ..... to having a denim jacket.
4 Do you think this tie goes ..... my shirt?
5 We wanted to eat together at home so we ordered a take-..... .
6 Can I try ..... this dress before I buy it?
7 If you clear the table, I'll wash ..... .
8 You can leave the table when you have eaten ..... all your food.
9 There's no food in the fridge – let's go ..... to your mum's house.
10 I'm taking my girlfriend ..... to dinner this evening.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Weather

**1 Study this chart and then do the exercise that follows.**

| kind | description | | verbs and expressions | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| breeze | **good** | **bad** | pour (with rain) | bright and sunny |
| cloud | bright | chilly | pour down | cold and damp / misty |
| dew | dry | changeable | bucketing down | bright and frosty |
| heat wave | fine | cloudy | be drenched / soaked | fine and dry |
| snow | hot | cold | a gentle / light / strong breeze | hot and sticky / humid |
| snowfall | mild | damp | a bit chilly | hot and stuffy |
| snowflakes | scorching | dark | black / dark / grey clouds | sunny and warm |
| sun | sunny | dull | be bitterly / freezing cold | warm and dry |
| sunshine | warm | foggy | a lovely day | wet and overcast / windy |
| blizzard | windy | freezing | thick fog | |
| downpour | pour (with rain) | frosty | strong gales | |
| drizzle | pour down | grey | be boiling hot | |
| fog | bucketing down | humid | a light / thin mist | |
| frost | be drenched / soaked | icy | heavy / light rain / shower | |
| gale | | misty | a blue / grey sky | |
| hurricane | | overcast | a thick smog | |
| lightning | | showery | a cold / hot spell | |
| mist | | stormy | a terrible storm / thunderstorm | |
| rain | | stuffy | a break in the weather | |
| shower | | unsettled | good / lovely weather | |
| sleet | | wet | awful / bad / terrible weather | |
| slush | | windy | a strong wind | |
| smog | | | | |
| snowstorm | | | | |
| storm | | | | |
| thunder / thunderstorm | | | | |
| wind | | | | |

**Fill in the blanks with an appropriate word from the chart.**

1 During that ..... spell we had in January we couldn't see further than a metre.
2 Hopefully it will be fine and ..... for the match this afternoon.
3 It will be rather hot and ..... by midday.
4 It's been such ..... weather – one day dry and the next wet and cold.
5 ..... fog is making weather conditions hazardous.
6 In London it pours ..... rain almost every day.
7 It was a ..... storm and our fence fell down.
8 We had a brief hot ..... and managed to dry the washing.
9 After such a cold night there was a thick white ..... on the grass.
10 It was ..... hot during the day and we could hardly move until evening.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## 2 Match the definitions with words from the chart on page 287.

1 A short period of heavy rain .....
2 Weather that often changes .....
3 Weather when the air feels hot and wet .....
4 Describes warm and dry weather .....
5 Dark and with clouds .....
6 Snow and rain falling together .....
7 Pleasant and warm; not too cold or too hot .....
8 Describes extremely hot weather .....
9 Cloudy air near the ground that is difficult to see through .....
10 Describes very cold weather .....
11 Describes a mixture of smoke, fog and fumes .....
12 When it rains heavily, we can say 'It's ..... down.' .....

## 3 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.

The British are well known for always chatting about their weather. This is because the weather in Britain is so (1) c..... – you never know what it will be like. A popular greeting is '(2) L..... weather for the time of year' or, if the weather is bad, 'Isn't this weather (3) a..... !' If it's raining, they might say 'Great weather for (4) d.....'! You will often hear people add '(5) w..... permitting' when they say they plan to play golf, garden or put out the washing. Most postcards from a holiday in Greece or Spain begin: 'It's (6) b..... hot here' even when local people think it's just a normal (7) b..... and sunny day. There are many general expressions in English which show the importance of weather in people's lives. For example, feeling (8) 'u..... the weather' means feeling slightly ill. If you 'make (9) h..... weather of a job' it means you make it seem more difficult than it really is, and if you 'keep a weather (10) e..... on something' you give it your full attention – as the British do with their weather!

## 4 Match the words in the box to make acceptable pairs. You may use some words more than once.

*Example:* boiling hot

1 a ..... hot day
2 a ..... climate
3 ..... cold
4 ..... clouds
5 a ..... spell
6 ..... rain
7 ..... wind
8 ..... fog
9 ..... weather

*lovely* *mild* *bitterly* *freezing* *dark* *hot* *heavy* *strong* *dry* *thick*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**5 Replace the underlined words with the correct ones.**

*Example:* It was a bitterly warm day in the middle of winter.
It was a bitterly cold day in the middle of winter.

1 The air was so hot and wet that my shirt was wet through.
2 There was a heavy mist over the fields early in the morning.
3 After the heavy rainfall last week we were able to build a snowman.
4 The rain was pouring over so we had to cancel the picnic.
5 Take a coat – it could be a piece chilly later on.
6 It was boiling cold this morning and the roads were icy.
7 'Pretty weather for the time of year.'
8 Driving conditions are very bad due to the strong fog.
9 Sailors were warned that great gales were expected during the night.
10 The Petronas Towers were struck by thunder but it had no effect.

**6 Match these descriptions with the following countries. There is one extra country in the list.**

*Spain* *Germany* *Britain* *Greece*

**A** THIS COUNTRY enjoys a Mediterranean climate for most of the year, with warm to hot days and mild nights. However, in the middle of summer, it can be unbearably hot and stuffy and winter can be chilly. December and January can be very cold and in February it is often rainy. April can be changeable with sunny days interrupted by windy showery weather.

**B** Most of this country is always warm from April to October though it can occasionally be cold and rainy in the north, especially in the mountains. The south is amazingly mild throughout the year – it hardly has a winter. Although the Atlantic lies only a few miles away, the climate is more like the Mediterranean.

**C** This country has a very changeable climate, both from day to day and from place to place. Although long periods of fine weather occur each year, it is not easy to forecast the weather accurately and you can be soaked during any season. The north of the country is much colder and windy in winter, often with quite heavy snowfalls. The south-west has milder weather.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**7 Match the following situations (a–j) with an appropriate expression (1–10) that mentions the weather. Use your dictionary.**

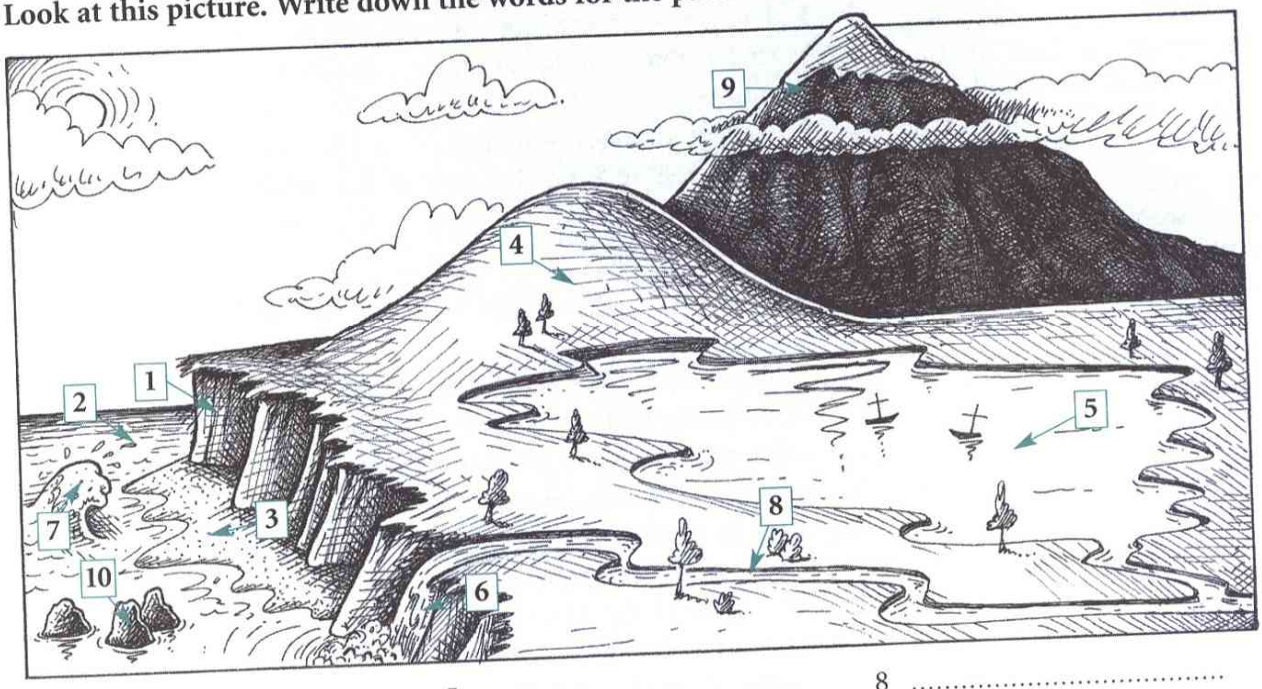
*Example:* When I was in hospital I lost a lot of weight – so something good came out of it. Every cloud has a silver lining.

1 the calm before the storm
2 be under a cloud
3 it never rains but it pours
4 be in a fog
5 come rain come shine
6 make heavy weather of something
7 save something for a rainy day
8 be a storm in a teacup
8 be a storm in a teacup
9 lightning never strikes the same place twice
10 feel under the weather

a Because bad luck isn't repeated in the same place, I parked where my car had been stolen.
b Don't spend all your money now – you might need some later.
c No one trusted her after she was caught stealing from the toyshop.
d I'm not feeling too good today. I think I'll stay in bed and rest.
e I think a lot of fuss is being made over something very unimportant.
f The report was far too detailed – we needed only the basic information.
g I never receive complaints but now I have had ten in a row!
h He's out playing tennis whatever the weather.
i I can't think clearly about what happened just before the accident.
j This good luck is too good to last – something is bound to go wrong.

## Our environment and the natural world

**1 Look at this picture. Write down the words for the parts numbered 1–10.**




1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....
9 .....
10 .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2** **Put these words in pairs and then say which is the bigger of the two.**

*Example:* river stream (river)

town, bush, rock, lane, bay, mountain, lake, beach, road, wood, tree, ocean, gulf, pond, coast, forest, hill, sea, pebble, city

**3** **Which word from the above list is being described?**

1 a large area of water surrounded by land .....
2 a small area with trees .....
3 a large mass of salt water between continents .....
4 a length of sand and small stones at the edge of the sea .....
5 a particular part of the land that is higher .....
6 a narrow route through the countryside for animals and people on foot .....
7 a large area of an ocean where the coast is curved .....
8 a wide stretch of land covered with trees .....
9 a tall plant with long branches and a trunk .....
10 a small area of water, for example in a garden .....
11 a small smooth stone on a beach .....
12 a large area with homes, shops and streets .....
13 a low plant with many branches .....
14 the edge of land where it joins sea water .....
15 a part of the land that is much higher than the land around it .....
16 an area of salt water near land .....
17 a prepared route through the countryside or towns for vehicles .....
18 an area of the sea inside a curved part of the coast .....
19 a place with many streets, offices, factories, shops and homes .....
20 a large piece of stone .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**4 Fill in the blanks using a word from the list.**

*weather* *exhaust* *on* *greenhouse* *recycling*
*fuel* *resources* *environmental* *atmosphere* *energy*

## Save it!

In recent years, the number of (1) ..... problems has increased dangerously. One of the most serious problems is changes to the (2) ..... which has led to the (3) '..... effect'; this is making most climates warmer. It is already affecting several areas of the world with unusual (4) ..... causing droughts or heavy storms. Cutting down on (5) ..... fumes from vehicles would help solve the problem. Natural (6) ..... such as oil and coal are not endless, so using other forms of (7) ..... such as wind, sun, water, and even sea waves would help preserve our planet. Very soon we will be able to drive cars in cities and towns that run (8) ..... electricity – a much cleaner (9) ..... than petrol. And we can also help to reserve finite resources by (10) ..... things made of glass, aluminium, plastic and paper.

**5 Complete these sentences with the correct form of the words at the end of the sentence.**

1 What can we do to reduce the ..... of the atmosphere? POLLUTE
2 The change in the climate has produced ..... floods. DISASTER
3 Many rare species are threatened with ..... . EXTINCT
4 Many of the gases produced by factories are ..... to our health. HARM
5 Exhaust fumes have ..... effects on the environment. DAMAGE
6 Many countries must try and control the growth of the ..... . POPULATE
7 Protecting the environment is essential to our ..... . SURVIVE
8 The ..... of the environment is everyone's responsibility. PROTECT
9 While some countries get richer, the ..... in others gets worse. POOR
10 Millions of people in the world are threatened with ..... . STARVE

**6 Complete the collocates below by adding an appropriate noun. Some can combine with more than one noun.**

*Example:* environmental effect, changes, disaster, pollution, resources

*warming* *effect* *energy* *fumes* *fuels* *waste products* *jams* *rain* *layer*
*changes* *disaster* *pollution* *rain forest* *transport* *resources* *gases*

1 acid .....
2 tropical .....
3 exhaust .....
4 global .....
5 ozone .....
6 nuclear .....
7 public .....
8 traffic .....
9 natural .....
10 air .....
11 sea .....
12 solar .....
13 finite .....
14 greenhouse .....
15 clean .....
16 recycled .....
17 noise .....
18 renewable .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**7** **Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the first, using the word given to make a phrasal verb.**

*Example:* Never leave the tap running when you're not using it.
**turn**
Always turn off the tap (or, turn the tap off) when you're not using it.

1 We can't be sure the weather is going to be sunny on Saturday.
**count**
We can't .....

2 They've reduced the number of cars in the city centre.
**down**
They've .....

3 They should ban nuclear energy completely.
**away**
They .....

4 If cloudy weather makes you depressed, go and live in Spain.
**down**
If cloudy weather .....

5 We won't have any water left in a few years.
**run**
We'll .....

6 The temperature is lower than it was yesterday.
**down**
The temperature .....

7 We must stop the council from demolishing that old building.
**pull**
We mustn't let the council .....

8 Our cities would be cleaner if cars used electricity instead of petrol.
**run**
Our cities would be cleaner if cars .....

## The media

**1** **Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.**

### MEDIA HYPE

The mass media refers to the people and organisations that provide news and (1) i..... for the public. Until recently these were mainly (2) n..... , (3) t..... , and (4) r..... . Today, computers play a very big part. The ( 5) I..... is a computer system that allows millions of people around the world to receive and exchange information about almost anything. Ordinary post has been taken over by (6) e..... which stands for (7) e..... mail because it is sent and received via a computer. It is a system that allows people to send (8) m..... to each other quickly and cheaply. Ordinary (9) p..... is now referred to as 'snail mail' and one wonders if the (10) p ..... is a job in danger of extinction!



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## 2 Match the definitions below with the words in the list.

*commercial* *headline* *soap* *circulation* *documentary*

*celebrity* *periodical* *correspondent* *journalist* *editor*

1 a reporter whose job it is to report local news from a distant area .....
2 the number of copies a newspaper sells each day .....
3 an advertisement on television or radio .....
4 a film that gives facts and information about a subject .....
5 a well-known person on television, film or in the press .....
6 a magazine about one topic, that appears once a month, three times a year, etc. .....
7 someone who writes for a newspaper or magazine .....
8 the title of a newspaper report printed in large letters .....
9 a continuing story about a group of people that is regularly on television .....
10 the person who decides what goes in a newspaper or magazine .....

## 3 Match the definitions with the expressions in the list.

*screen* *CD ROM* *mouse* *keyboard* *disk drive*

*floppy disk* *mouse pad / mat* *modem* *laptop* *key*

1 The small object that you move with your hand to operate a computer .....
2 the flat part in front of a computer which you look at .....
3 the part of a computer with rows of letters and symbols .....
4 the part of a computer you use to pass information to or from a disk .....
5 a flat piece of plastic for storing information from a computer .....
6 the flat piece of rubber or plastic which you use under a mouse .....
7 a round disk for using in a computer to store large amounts of information .....
8 a type of small computer you can carry with you .....
9 one of the parts with a letter or symbol which you press when you use a computer .....
10 the equipment inside a computer which allows information to be sent to another computer using a telephone line .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**4 Complete the collocates below by matching a noun from A with a noun from B. Some can combine with more than one noun.**

*Example:* television channel, report, commentator, programme ...

**A**

press current television
radio light news
sports soap chat
celebrity video cable
live educational
commercial action
digital game children's
nature

**B**

opera channel report
conference television
replay commentator
listener programme
recorder show
entertainment guest
broadcast affairs break
viewer station

**5 Complete the collocates below by matching a word from A with one from B to make ten pairs.**

*Example:* phone message

**A**

(phone)
phone play
mobile answering
cordless wrong
long e-mail fax
telephone

**B**

(message)
machine machine
number book
phone phone kiosk
address back
distance

**6 Complete the following sentences with an appropriate word or phrase from the previous exercises.**

1 It must have cost you a lot to make that long- ..... phone call to Australia.
2 He's not at home but we can call him on his ..... phone.
3 I want to send a message to Hanneke in Leiden. Do you have her e-mail ..... ?
4 The Prime Minister will hold a news ..... in the morning.
5 I tried to phone the school but a policeman answered – it was the ..... number.
6 He won the money on a popular ..... show on television.
7 I phoned Jane but she was out so I left a message on her .....phone.
8 First, you need to put the CD ROM into the ..... drive.
9 Most live sport is shown on ..... television.
10 Make sure you copy your work from the computer onto a ..... disk.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**7 Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the gaps.**

## THE INFO-REVOLUTION

We have all seen an enormous increase in the role of the mass (1) ..... in people's lives. First of all, the growth of the (2) ..... , of both serious and (3) ..... newspapers, has been tremendous. Public (4) ..... is influenced by powerful (5) ..... who not only own our newspapers which often have a (6) ..... of millions, but who also own television and radio (7) ..... in many different countries. The huge quantity of (8) ..... that people have to deal with has rocketed with the advent of satellite and cable television. At the same time, more and more people have (9) ..... to (10) ..... computers. Information available at home via the Internet is infinite.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | **A** messages | **B** medium | **C** mediums | **D** media |
| 2 | **A** printing | **B** press | **C** interest | **D** information |
| 3 | **A** cheap | **B** people | **C** popular | **D** public |
| 4 | **A** opinion | **B** health | **C** views | **D** services |
| 5 | **A** managers | **B** writers | **C** celebrities | **D** editors |
| 6 | **A** profit | **B** readers | **C** circulation | **D** popularity |
| 7 | **A** networks | **B** users | **C** sets | **D** ports |
| 8 | **A** correspondence | **B** details | **C** information | **D** reporters |
| 9 | **A** control | **B** ownership | **C** contact | **D** access |
| 10 | **A** electronic | **B** personal | **C** large | **D** ROM |

**8 Complete each phrase with an appropriate form of a verb from the list.**

*switch off* *switch over* *be on* *call back* *skim through* *bring out* *get through* *key in* *hang up* *back up* *put down* *shut down*

1 I've only managed to ..... the first few chapters.
2 If you don't recognise the voice and you are worried, ..... .
3 You must ..... your password before the program will start.
4 At last I ..... e-mail at home.
5 It's boring – let's ..... to another channel.
6 Always ..... your work on a floppy disk or you may lose it.
7 Don't forget to ..... it ..... before you come to bed.
8 They are ..... her best seller in paperback.
9 I tried many times but I couldn't ..... . Her line is busy.
10 The novel was much too exciting to ..... so I missed lunch.
11 I told him you'd ..... later.
12 Remember to save all your work before you ..... the computer.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**9** **Decide when you would use the sentences above. Complete this chart.**

| phone | computer | television | book |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |

## Science and technology

**1** **Complete the following chart.**

| Verb | Noun | Person |
|---|---|---|
| (1) ..... | invention | inventor |
| produce | (2) ..... or production | producer |
| observe | (3) ..... | observer |
| design | design | (4) ..... |
| develop | (5) ..... | developer |
| discover | (6) ..... | discoverer |
| explore | (7) ..... | explorer |
| research | research | (8) ..... |
| program | program | (9) ..... |
| (10) ..... | engine | engineer |
| build | (11) ..... | builder |
| conserve | (12) ..... | (13) ..... |
| create | (14) ..... | (15) ..... |

**2** **Complete the following sentences with an appropriate word from the chart above.**

1 The same civil ..... who built the roads is now building the new bridge.
2 They called in a ..... to knock down the wall between the two rooms.
3 Scientists have been carrying out ..... to find a cure for the disease.
4 The company which ..... the drug has had to pay a lot of money to the victims.
5 Lewis and Clark were the first to ..... the new territory.
6 Penicillin was one of the most important ..... of the twentieth century.
7 Walt Disney, the ..... of Mickey Mouse, died a very rich man.
8 You'll need to go to university if you want to become a computer ..... .
9 A property ..... buys land and builds offices or homes on it.
10 The theory is based on a detailed ..... of many patients.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3 What do we call someone who works in the following areas?**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 building | ..... | 9 managing | ..... | 17 medicine | ..... |
| 2 plumbing | ..... | 10 selling | ..... | 18 surgery | ..... |
| 3 electricity | ..... | 11 photography | ..... | 19 science | ..... |
| 4 carpentry | ..... | 12 psychology | ..... | 20 biology | ..... |
| 5 decorating | ..... | 13 manufacturing | ..... | 21 chemistry | ..... |
| 6 architecture | ..... | 14 research | ..... | 22 physics | ..... |
| 7 hairdressing | ..... | 15 archaeology | ..... | 23 history | ..... |
| 8 teaching | ..... | 16 astronomy | ..... | 24 law | ..... |

**4 Who helps with the following problems?**

1 I wish that tap would stop dripping! .....
2 I feel depressed – no one likes me. .....
3 Don't you think a few private lessons would help him to pass? .....
4 I need extra sockets in the living room. .....
5 The paint is peeling off all the windows outside. .....
6 Your hair looks a mess. It's far too long. .....
7 I feel awful and I have a rash on my chest. .....
8 We'll need help with the design to get best use of the light. .....
9 We've found a coin in the garden and it looks very old. .....
10 I'm going into hospital to have the lump removed. .....

**5 Fill in the gaps with the appropriate form of the words from the list. You will use some words more than once and some sentences may have more than one answer.**

*discover* *develop* *design* *invent* *pioneer* *study*

1 The physicians Marie Curie and her husband Pierre ..... the element radium and won the Nobel Prize for physics.
2 After years of ..... , Freud ..... a theory of the mind which has changed for ever the way we view ourselves.
3 Brunel ..... the Clifton Suspension Bridge.
4 Marco Polo made journeys through Asia and wrote a book describing what he had ..... .
5 Edward Jenner ..... the use of vaccination to prevent disease.
6 I wonder who ..... the very first computer?
7 Einstein ..... the theory of relativity which replaced Newton's theories of gravity.
8 Frank Lloyd Wright ..... the Imperial Hotel in Tokyo and the Guggenheim Museum in New York.
9 Florence Nightingale ..... effective nursing care and improvements in public health.
10 In 1930 Clyde Tombaugh ..... Pluto after many years ..... the night sky.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Health

**1 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.**

## A PICTURE OF HEALTH

People nowadays are more health-conscious than they used to be. We jog to keep (1) f..... or take other forms of regular (2) e..... Thousands of us go to a (3) g..... on a regular basis. Many more (4) d..... to lose weight. Fortunately, (5) s..... has been banned on most flights and in most public places because everyone agrees it does (6) h..... to our health. However, there are killer (7) d..... like Aids and cancer which still seem to be incurable. And malaria is the biggest cause of (8) d..... in the Third World. Heart (9) a..... remain the most common cause of death in Europe. The importance of (10) h..... is reflected in everyday expressions such as 'to drink to someone's health' or saying 'Your health!' as we drink a glass of wine.

**2 Study this chart and then do the exercise that follows.**

| noun | | verb | adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *ache* | *bandage* | *be (critically / seriously) ill* | *bruised* | *curable* |
| *bruise* | *check-up* | *break* sth | *cut* | *fatal* |
| *disease* | *cure* | *catch* sth | *depressed* | *harmful* |
| *fever* | *(medical) examination* | *die (from* sth*)* | *fine* | *incurable* |
| *illness* | *medicine* | *get better* | *fit* | *infectious* |
| *injury* | *ointment* | *go / come down with* sth | *frail* | *inoperable* |
| *lump* | *operation* | *have (a disease)* | *healthy* | *minor* |
| *mental illness* | *pill* | *infect* sb | *hot* | *numb* |
| *nervous breakdown* | *plaster* | *recover (from a disease / operation)* | *hurt* | *painful* |
| *nausea* | *prescription* | *sprain* sth | *ill* | *poisonous* |
| *pain* | *symptom* | *suffer (from* sth*)* | *injured* | *slight* |
| *rash* | *treatment* | *be under the weather* | *insane* | *sore* |
| *stomach bug* | *recovery* | *vomit* | *nauseous* | *swollen* |
| *spots* | *surgery* | *be bad / good for you* | *sick* | *terminal* |
| *temperature* | *X-ray* | *be in agony* | *sane* | |
| *wound* | | *be in good shape* | *strong* | |
| *backache* | *clinic* | *be in a bad way* | *unfit* | |
| *earache* | *hospital* | *be in poor health* | *unhealthy* | |
| *headache* | *operating theatre* | *be out of condition* | *unwell* | |
| *stomachache* | *out-patients* | *have something wrong with you* | *weak* | |
| *toothache* | *surgery* | *bandage* sth | *well* | |
| | *ward* | *cure* sb | *wounded* | |
| | *epidemic* | *ease the pain* | | |
| | *outbreak* | *examine* sb | | |
| | | *inject (*sb *with)* sth | | |
| | | *nurse* sb | | |
| | | *operate (on* sb*)* | | |
| | | *prescribe* sth | | |
| | | *plaster* sth | | |
| | | *treat* sb *(for* sth*)* | | |
| | | *vaccinate* sb *(against* sth*)* | | |
| | | *X-ray* sb / *a part of your body* | | |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Find the words in the chart on page 299 that match these definitions.**

1 to use a needle to put medicine into your body .....
2 a soft substance you rub on your skin as a treatment .....
3 a room in a hospital you stay in while you are ill .....
4 a pain in your head .....
5 a doctor writes on it what medicine a sick person needs .....
6 many cases of an infectious disease occurring at the same time .....
7 that causes a person to die .....
8 an illness of the mind .....
9 to make someone who is ill well again .....
10 thin and weak because you are old or very ill .....

**3 Fill the gap with an appropriate word from the list. Use the chart above to help you. You need to use some words twice.**

*for* *against* *from* *on* *out* *with* *in*

1 Children should be vaccinated ..... measles and rubella.
2 Paul won't be in work today – he's gone down ..... flu.
3 Pollution in cities is causing more and more children to be treated ..... asthma.
4 You're so ..... of condition! Don't you think swimming every morning will help?
5 Too many people die ..... lung cancer due to smoking.
6 If you have a fever, there is definitely something wrong ..... you.
7 I spent the weekend in a health farm and feel ..... really good shape now.
8 She's still recovering ..... the stomach bug she picked up on holiday.
9 It's best that we operate ..... you and remove the lump from your breast.
10 I've injected your mother ..... a painkiller so that she can sleep.

**4 Fill in each blank with an appropriate word from the list.**

*lie down* *hurt* *die* *symptoms* *suffered*
*agony* *fainted* *aching* *painless*
*had*

1 I'm feeling ill – I think I'd better go and ..... .
2 I felt so dizzy that I nearly ..... .
3 I had to have an internal examination but it was quite ..... .
4 They gave me an injection and it really ..... .
5 The ..... are a high temperature and a rash.
6 He ..... a heart attack and had to be rushed to hospital.
7 The doctor prescribed some drops for my earache but it's still ..... .
8 I fell down the stairs and I was in ..... waiting for the ambulance to arrive.
9 He ..... from an incurable illness for many years.
10 I hope I ..... in my bed of old age.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**5 Complete the sentences using as many words or phrases from the list as possible.**

*Example:* I feel ill, fit, …

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *a headache* | *some rest* | *ill* | *sore* | *measles* |
| *an operation* | *fit* | *an injection* | *into hospital* | *her to hospital* |
| *your ankle* | *an aspirin* | *cancer* | *a cold* | *numb* |
| *your doctor* | *a broken wrist* | *his tooth out* | *mumps* | *in agony* |
| *an arm* | *hot* | *a virus* | *a sore throat* | *a consultant* |
| *inoperable* | *flu* | *dizzy* | *incurable* | *an earache* |
| *nauseous* | *in great pain* | *jogging* | *her temperature* | *your blood pressure* |
| *this medicine* | *your wrist* | *fatal* | *in plaster* | *stitches* |
| *sick* | *painful* | *depressed* | *an infection* | *surgeon* |

1 I feel …
2 You must have …
3 I've got …
4 Be careful you don't catch …
5 You need to see …
6 I'm afraid it's …
7 He'll take …
8 You've sprained …
9 She's …
10 It feels …

**6 Match the first part (1–10) with the second part (a–j) of these sentences.**

1 If you've got a bad headache,
2 You have a heart problem and
3 He sprained his ankle and
4 She went out in the pouring rain and caught
5 She's not at work because she's gone down
6 He works out in the gym because
7 She went on a diet and
8 He had spots all over his face because
9 After aerobics last week
10 Not all cancers are

a with flu.
b incurable.
c lost weight.
d was in great pain for days.
f need an operation.
g he had measles.
h a cold.
i he wants to feel fit.
j take an aspirin.
k my legs felt really sore.

**7 Complete these words. The first letter is given. They are all parts of the body.**

1 t ..... (you have one on each hand)
2 l ..... (two parts of your mouth)
3 e ..... (you hear with these)
4 g ..... (your teeth grow in them)
5 e ..... (the middle part of your arm)
6 s ..... (the part under your foot)
7 h ..... (Achilles had a problem with this)
8 k ..... (a joint in your leg)
9 c ..... (the part below your mouth)
10 s ..... (the soft part below your waist)
11 n ..... (it holds up your head)
12 s ..... (the row of bones down the centre of your back)
13 w ..... (you put your watch round it)
14 n ..... (the small hollow place in the centre of your stomach)
15 c ..... (you have one on each side of your face)
16 e ..... (the flap that comes down over your eye while you sleep)
17 n ..... (the holes in your nose)
18 s ..... (the front part of your lower leg)
19 f ..... (the part of your face above your eyes)
20 t ..... (the front part of your neck)



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**8** **Phrasal verbs and idioms. Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first, using the word given. Do not change this word.**

1 I had to have a tooth extracted last week.
**out**
I had my .....
2 Has he recovered from his illness yet?
**over**
Has .....
3 He took care of you while you were ill.
**after**
He .....
4 You've gained a lot of weight since I last saw you!
**on**
You've .....
5 The drugs aren't having any effect now.
**off**
The effect .....
6 After fainting he regained consciousness after a few minutes.
**round**
Having .....
7 He caught flu and had to have time off work.
**down**
He .....
8 She has had a lovely baby girl and is feeling fine.
**birth**
She has .....
9 Since her heart attack, my mother has not been at all well.
**poor**
Ever .....
10 Michelle often has terrible headaches.
**from**
Michelle .....

## Crime

**1** **Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.**

### It's a crime

Thieves have been around for centuries, probably for as long as humans, but armed (1) r..... is a more recent phenomenon. Unfortunately women have always been the (2) v..... of rape and domestic (3) v..... . (4) F..... has been around ever since printing has been used to make money or produce documents. Rich people or their children are sometimes (5) k..... and are not set free until a ransom has been paid. The twentieth century has seen the appearance of many organised (6) c..... such as hijacking and drug-smuggling or drug-trafficking. Statistics show an alarming (7) r..... in the rate of violent crimes and crimes to do with the (8) i..... sale of arms across the world. Perhaps the most recent crime of all is hacking into computers to access (9) i..... that helps competitors in industry. This increase in international crime makes one wonder whether it is still true to say '(10) C..... doesn't pay'.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2** **Complete the following chart.**

| Verb | Noun | Person |
|---|---|---|
| accuse | (1) ..... | accused |
| start a fire deliberately | arson | (2) ..... |
| blackmail | (3) ..... | blackmailer |
| burgle | (4) ..... | burglar |
| commit a crime | crime | (5) ..... |
| hack into a computer | hacking | (6) ..... |
| hijack | (7) ..... | hijacker |
| imprison | prison or imprisonment | prisoner |
| kidnap | kidnapping | (8) ..... |
| kill | (9) ..... | killer |
| mug | (10) ..... | mugger |
| commit an offence | offence | (11) ..... |
| pickpockets | (12) ..... | pickpocket |
| rob | (13) ..... | robber |
| shoplift | (14) ..... | shoplifter |
| stalk | stalking | (15) ..... |
| steal | (16) ..... | thief |
| suspect | suspicion | suspect |

**3** **Write down the words in the middle column in 2 that are *not* a crime?**

**4** **Which crimes are being described in the following situations? Fill the gaps with words from the list.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *rioting* | *arson* | *mugging* | *vandalism* | *kidnapping* |
| *shoplifting* | *robbery* | *hacking* | *burglary* | *domestic violence* |
| *stalking* | *murder* | *drug-trafficking* | *blackmail* | *pickpocketing* |
| *hijacking* | *looting* | *theft* | *hooliganism* | *fraud* |

1 People broke into our house and stole our video camera. .....
2 Youths attacked her in the street and ran off with her handbag. .....
3 The pilot was forced to take the plane to Tashkent. .....
4 She killed him by poisoning his coffee. .....
5 Why do middle-class women steal food from supermarkets? .....
6 Having made no profit that year, he set fire to his own factory. .....
7 Crowds of protestors broke shop windows and stole goods. .....
8 They ran around smashing things and fighting other drunken youths. .....
9 He threatened to tell the newspapers unless he got a thousand pounds. .....
10 Someone has stolen my purse from my desk. .....
11 The clerk handed over the money when they threatened to shoot him. .....
12 The business used deception to obtain money. .....
13 They were accused of deliberately smashing the phone box. .....
14 The boy would be harmed unless his parents paid the money. .....
15 The woman was often seen with bruises on her face. .....



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

16 His wallet was stolen from his back pocket. .....
17 Trained dogs found the packages stuffed into the seats of the lorry. .....
18 The film star had been followed by the same man for months. .....
19 They accessed the information from government computer systems. .....
20 Hundreds of police in helmets broke up the angry crowds. .....

**5 Complete the sentences using a suitable form of a phrase from the list.**

*appear in court*
*commit (a crime)*
*pay a fine (for -ing)*
*suspect sb (of a crime)*
*plead guilty / not guilty*
*arrest sb (for sth)*
*face charges*
*take up a case*
*return a verdict of guilty / not guilty*
*accuse sb (of a crime)*
*find sb innocent / (not) guilty*
*put sb on trial (for a crime)*

1 The accused was ..... and sentenced to five years in prison.
2 I'm ..... tomorrow and the prosecution will be opposing bail.
3 The owners were ..... of setting fire to their own premises.
4 He was made to ..... of £30 for parking in the wrong place.
5 She was arrested and ..... for murdering her husband.
6 The best lawyer in the country ..... her case and won it for her.
7 I'm ..... for the murder of your husband.
8 He was ..... stealing money from the safe but they had no real evidence.
9 You will be ..... a number of serious charges when you go before the judge.
10 The jury ..... not guilty.
11 You have ..... a minor offence and I will be lenient with my sentence.
12 If you ..... , the judge will probably reduce your sentence.

**6 Complete the blanks with the correct form of the word given at the end of each sentence.**

## An innocent man

| | |
|---|---|
| Last night, Joe Bloggs was arrested on (1) ..... of robbery. | SUSPECT |
| The police had no (2) ..... that he had committed the crime | PROVE |
| and Joe denied the (3) ..... saying he had a good alibi. | CHARGE |
| When he was put on (4) ..... , the police called several witnesses | TRY |
| to the stand but Joe's (5) ..... defended his client well | LAW |
| and tried to prove that Joe had not done anything (6) ..... . | LEGAL |
| However, the jury found Joe (7) ..... and he was sentenced to | GUILT |
| six months in prison. As Joe had never committed a (8) ..... | CRIMINAL |
| before this was a very heavy (9) ..... . Most people were | PUNISH |
| convinced of Joe's (10) ..... and his lawyer appealed against | INNOCENT |
| the verdict. | |



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Answer key

(Answers with short forms e.g. *'ll, 're, 's*, etc. are correct, particularly in conversation; *will not, are, is not*, etc. are also correct)

## Unit 1

### Entry test

1 *am staying* 2 *flows* 3 *is becoming* 4 *are thinking* 5 *depends* 6 *originated* 7 *has won* 8 *discussed* 9 *'ve been trying* 10 *haven't found* 11 **A** were queuing 12 **C** was driving 13 **B** had left 14 **D** hadn't seen 15 **B** was having 16 **B** since 17 **C** for 18 **B** While 19 **D** ago 20 **C** already 21 **D** employment 22 **C** tin opener 23 **D** cook 24 **C** photography 25 **A** achievement

### Practice 1a p15

**1**

(underline:) 1 *'m sleeping* 2 *'m* only *working* 3 *aren't listening* 4 *talks* 5 *see, goes out, meets* 6 *make* 7 *feel* 8 *appears* 9 *are* just *hearing* 10 *do you think*

**2**

(1) *seems* (2) *'re feeling* (3) *'re staying* (4) *is* (5) *stands* (6) *looks* (7) *costs* (8) *make* (9) *tastes* (10) *is shining*

**3**

1 today 2 ✔ 3 not 4 do 5 are 6 ✔ 7 to 8 ✔ 9 be 10 it 11 ✔ 12 be 13 are 14 is 15 ✔

**4**

1 is waiting 2 don't travel 3 'm considering 4 ends 5 'm feeling / feel 6 're having 7 Do...see 8 're relying / rely 9 wish 10 do...think

**5**

1 never use ... 'm driving 2 always like ... never seem 3 prefers ... is always arguing (or: always argues) 4 is always forgetting (or: always forgets) ... starts 5 are always moaning (or: always moan) ... never help 6 always lay ... never come 7 'm going ... depends on (or: go ... always depends on) 8 'm never shopping ...'re always 9 always smell ... are passing (or: pass) 10 is always borrowing ... always pays

### Practice 1b p19

**1**

(underline:) 1 *appeared* 2 *studied ... graduated* 3 *have* now *completed* 4 *'ve been trying* 5 *have* already *worked* 6 *was* 7 *have applied ... have not managed* 8 *applied* 9 *started learning ... have not obtained* 10 *have not applied* 11 *hoped* 12 *have been waiting ... have not received*

**2**

(1) *read* (2) *came* (3) *told* (4) *arrived* (5) *have already done* (6) *bought* (7) *Have* you *had* (8) *'ve taken* (or: *took*) (9) *invited* (10) *explained* (11) *Have* you *ever gone* (or: *been*) (12) *'ve never looked at* (13) *haven't visited* (14) *'ve heard* Poland

**3**

(1) walked (2) stepped (3) was (4) have (5) got (or: grown) (6) has (7) remained (8) refused (9) worked (10) left (11) gave (12) been (13) researching (14) had (15) written

### Practice 1c p21

**1**

1 b 2 d 3 a 4 c 5 e 6 g 7 h 8 f

**2**

1 was raining 2 had rained (or: had been raining) 3 had spent 4 was having 5 had been trying ... hadn't managed 6 had been snowing (or: was snowing) ... had been snowing (or: had snowed) ... had covered 7 were running ... screaming ... had knocked ... had drawn 8 had set ... was waiting ... had been waiting 9 had broken ... had dropped ... were climbing

**3**

(1) sailing (2) was (3) had (4) been (5) been (6) coming (7) been (8) said (9) went (10) was (11) were (12) about (or: getting) (13) heard (14) could (15) had

### Practice 1d p24

**1**

1 since 2 for 3 During 4 While 5 during 6 For 7 Since 8 before 9 already 10 still 11 yet 12 ago

**2**

(1) since (2) from (3) until (4) already (5) before (6) for (7) still (8) During (9) yet (10) while (11) in (12) since (13) since (14) ago (15) already

**3**

1 ago 2 before 3 before 4 still 5 already 6 already 7 yet 8 still 9 yet 10 ago

**4**

1 The style is similar to others that have been built *already* (or: that have *already* been built). 2 I'm sorry, but your dry-cleaning isn't ready *yet*. (or: I'm sorry, but your dry-cleaning *still* isn't ready.) 3 Lucy asked me to e-mail the office in Vienna but I've *already* done it (or: I've done it *already*). 4 Do you *still* need a visa to travel to Hungary? 5 My birthday isn't for ages *yet*. (or: My birthday *still* isn't for ages.) 6 It's *still* (or: *already*) raining so there's no point in going to the beach (*yet*). 7 Has your uncle *already* arrived (or: arrived *already*/arrived *yet*)? 8 I've *already* waited a whole hour (or: I've waited a whole hour *already*) and he *still* hasn't come (or: he hasn't come *yet*).

### Practice 1e p27

**1**

1 photographer 2 guitarist 3 dishwasher 4 ability 5 friendship 6 engineer 7 journalist 8 actor 9 building 10 importance 11 childhood 12 excitement 13 happiness 14 education 15 division 16 admission 17 tin-opener 18 refugee 19 activity 20 greatness

**2**

(1) unemployment (2) social (3) equality (4) politicians (5) professions (6) Employers (7) employees (8) qualifications (9) achievements (10) failure(s)

## Unit 2

### Entry test

1 *I'll* 2 *miss* 3 *I'll have* 4 *Shall I go* 5 *you're going to step* 6 **C** I'm visiting 7 **A** are putting on 8 **B** I'm going to be 9 **C** starts 10 **D** I'm going 11 **C** I'll be lying 12 **D** will have finished 13 **D** I'll be going 14 **A** will be finished 15 **A** I'll have lived 16 **A** put off 17 **C** kept me up 18 **C** brought up 19 **D** bring back 20 **B** get on 21 over 22 over 23 un 24 dis 25 under

### Practice 2a p31

**1**

1 f 2 g 3 h 4 a 5 b 6 i 7 d 8 e 9 n 10 l 11 j 12 k 13 c 14 m

**2**

(1) Shall ... come (2) 'll be (or: 'm going to be) (3) 'll be (4) shall ... check (5) is (6) 'm going to be (7) 'll be (or: 're going to be) (8) 'm going to see (or: 'm seeing) (9) 'll be (10) shall ... come (11) won't be leaving (or: 'm not going to leave) (12) will be (13) are ... going to bring (or: will ... bring) (14) won't forget (15) 'll see



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice 2b p33

**1**

1 is going to crash 2 'm staying in 3 is travelling (or: travels) 4 starts 5 'll phone (or: 'm going to phone) 6 visits 7 am going to be 8 are meeting 9 are going to win 10 is going to celebrate (or: is celebrating)

**2**

1 are … doing, shall … go 2 will take place 3 starts 4 finish 5 'm doing 6 is … going … finish

**3**

(underline:) 1 *get off* 2 *will help* 3 *will* 4 *is going to be* 5 *is coming* 6 *is going to be* 7 *will need* 8 *will test* 9 *make* 10 *will probably regret* 11 *will bring* 12 *will be*

## Practice 2c p35

**1**

1 **a** Will you be taking **b** 'll take (or: 'll be taking)
2 **a** 'll be **b** 'll have been
3 **a** will have finished **b** 'll finish
4 **a** will be sunbathing **b** will sunbathe
5 **a** 'll be sleeping **b** will have slept
6 **a** will fly **b** will have flown
7 **a** 'll be driving **b** 'll drive

**2**

(1) 'll be working (2) 'll be (3) 'll be working (4) 'll have completed (5) 'll be (6) 'll have finished (7) 'll have been working on (or: 'll have worked) (8) 'll jump (9) will you be going (10) will have arrived (11) 'll be going (12) 'll see

## Practice 2d p37

**1**

1 get on 2 set off 3 fall behind 4 kept me up (or: stayed up) 5 got down to 6 take up 7 give up 8 hold on 9 carries on 10 grow up

**2**

1 're going to bring back 2 brought up 3 carry on 4 have fallen behind (or: are behind with) 5 getting down to (or: going to get down to) 6 kept me up 7 has been put off 8 have called off

## Practice 2e p39

**1**

1 *in* 2 *im* 3 *un* 4 *co-* 5 *dis* 6 *mis* 7 *il* 8 *un* 9 *mis* 10 *dis* 11 *over* 12 *pre* 13 *trans-* 14 *mis* 15 *im* 16 *mis* 17 *mis* 18 *inter* 19 *over* 20 *ir* 21 *dis* 22 *over* 23 *mis* 24 *pre* (or: *post*)

**2**

**Across:** 1 *il* 2 *trans* 5 *under* 7 *pro* 8 *in* 10 *over* 11 *anti* 13 *mis*
**Down:** 1 *inter* 3 *super* 4 *co* 5 *un* 6 *dis* 8 *ir* 9 *post* 12 *im*

**3**

(1) disappointed (2) misunderstood (3) dislike (4) replace (5) returned (6) mistook (7) overcooked (or: undercooked) (8) mistaken (9) misread (10) overcharging

## Exam practice 1

**Part 1**

**1 B** ever since **2 C** yet **3 A** for **4 D** still **5 D** started **6 B** ago **7 C** already **8 B** still **9 D** visited **10 B** is beginning **11 D** are looking forward **12 C** rushing **13 C** till **14 A** during **15 C** while

**Part 2**

**(16)** will **(17)** go **(18)** be **(19)** going **(20)** have **(21)** by **(22)** bring **(23)** answering/discussing **(24)** starts/begins **(25)** will **(26)** not **(27)** reporting **(28)** happen **(29)** have **(30)** are

**Part 3**

**31** haven't seen Helen since **32** does not include **33** haven't replied **34** you are not enjoying yourself **35** waiting for my boss to **36** had never seen such **37** is only working (or: only works) **38** has been driving since **39** works as a journalist for **40** had been doing the garden

**Part 4**

**41** ✔ **42** he **43** have **44** ✔ **45** of **46** ✔ **47** for **48** ✔ **49** from **50** with **51** been **52** be **53** ✔ **54** will **55** on

**Part 5**

**(56)** advertisement **(57)** processor **(58)** information **(59)** powerful **(60)** occupations **(61)** profession **(62)** necessity **(63)** pleasure **(64)** promotion **(65)** appointment

# Unit 3

## Entry test

1 had to 2 should 3 will 4 needn't 5 couldn't 6 **D** could 7 **B** may 8 **B** should 9 **A** will 10 **B** couldn't 11 **D** because 12 **C** due 13 **D** Since 14 **C** so that 15 **C** As a result 16 **D** take 17 **C** sat for 18 **C** bring 19 **D** having 20 **B** to 21 **B** qualifications 22 **C** attention 23 **D** accusations 24 **B** competition 25 **A** cancellation

## Practice 3a p48

**1**

(underline:) 1 *had to* 2 *don't have to* 3 *have got* 4 *must* 5 *don't need to* 6 *weren't allowed to* 7 *needn't have* 8 *didn't need* 9 *could* 10 *Did you have to*

**2**

1 wasn't able to 2 could run faster 3 I'll be able to 4 didn't have to go 5 I'll have to 6 us we had to pay 7 needn't have taken 8 us we couldn't 9 don't need to (or: needn't) 10 had to wear (or: had to put on/use/have)

## Practice 3b p50

**1**

1 *can't* 2 *may* 3 *will be* 4 *must have been* 5 *can't have been* 6 *might* 7 *may* 8 *could have* 9 *should* 10 *could*

**2**

1 b 2 f 3 h 4 i 5 j 6 e 7 d 8 c 9 a 10 g

**3**

1 there 2 can 3 being 4 to 5 ✔ 6 to 7 been 8 ✔ 9 have 10 must 11 able 12 ✔ 13 been 14 ✔ 15 and

## Practice 3c p53

**1**

(underline:) 1 *because* 2 *Since* 3 *Because* 4 *in order not to* 5 *due to* 6 *as a result of* 7 *in order to* 8 *so that* 9 *so* 10 *because*

**2**

1 due (also possible: thanks) 2 because (or: as a result) 3 due (or: owing) 4 In order to (or: To) 5 Because 6 so (that) (or: in order that) 7 because (also possible but less common: as, since) 8 Since 9 because 10 so (or: in order) 11 result 12 As a result (or: Consequently; Because of that)

**3**

1 to 2 for 3 ✔ 4 been 5 being 6 as 7 too 8 of 9 ✔ 10 that 11 to 12 that 13 she 14 that 15 for

## Practice 3d p57

**1**

1 *have an operation* 2 *have any experience* 3 *take part* 4 *bring this meeting to an end* 5 *Take a seat* 6 *having a shower* 7 *takes place* 8 *have fun* 9 *have lunch* 10 *have time*

**2**

(1) have (2) taking (3) have/get (4) take (5) have (6) bring/take (7) have (8) have/get (9) take (10) bring (11) take (12) brings

**3**

1 *up* 2 *off* 3 *back* 4 *after* 5 *on* 6 *up* 7 *on* 8 *off* 9 *in* 10 *out*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice 3e p58

**1**

1 *division* 2 *intention* 3 *investigation* 4 *invitation* 5 *omission* 6 *organisation* 7 *preservation* 8 *prevention* 9 *production* 10 *repetition* 11 *satisfaction* 12 *solution* 13 *reaction* 14 *temptation*

**2**

1 *attraction* 2 *recognition* 3 *hesitation* 4 *explanation* 5 *promotion* 6 *cancellations* 7 *suggestion* 8 *demonstration*

**3**

1 calculations, the bill comes 2 give their daughter the education 3 take part in the match 4 out a thorough investigation 5 was given an invitation 6 celebrations are held in

**4**

(1) communication (2) pollution (3) destruction (4) starvation (5) extinction (6) exhaustion (7) foundations (8) protection (9) competition (10) creation

# Unit 4

## Entry test

1 did you pay 2 have you been 3 didn't you 4 How long 5 Whose 6 **C** wouldn't 7 **D** haven't you 8 **B** doesn't she 9 **D** aren't you 10 **D** shall we 11 **A** so do I 12 **A** neither have I 13 **D** I'm afraid not 14 **A** Would you? 15 **B** I don't either 16 **D** for 17 **C** off 18 **C** into 19 **D** make 20 **A** announcement 21 **C** circumstances 22 **D** investment 23 **C** carelessness 24 **A** retirement 25 **C** strength

## Practice 4a p63

**1**

1 Where do you live? 2 Who did you give the book to? 3 Who lent you his car? 4 When did you get married? 5 Which game does he play best? 6 Which pullover would you like? 7 What kind of pullovers do you like? 8 Who murdered the President? 9 Who did the madman murder? 10 What did the madman do to the President? 11 How often do you go to the cinema? 12 How long does the journey take from here? 13 How do I get to your house? 14 Which box does he keep the key in? (or: In which box does he keep the key?) 15 How much milk is (there) left?

**2**

1 Where were you born? 2 Where did you grow up? 3 What did you like doing at school? 4 What were you like as a young child? 5 When did you decide to become an actor? 6 How did your parents react? 7 What did they say when you told them? 8 How old were you when you left home? 9 What was your first job in the theatre? 10 What kind of directors do you like working with?

## Practice 4b p65

**1**

1 doesn't he…does he 2 is there 3 isn't it…shall we 4 haven't you…do you 5 were you…would I 6 do you 7 couldn't you 8 wouldn't you 9 didn't she 10 should she

**2**

1 good book, isn't it 2 plenty (or: lots) of time, haven't we 3 a cup of tea, shall we 4 on the list, aren't I 5 go (out) for a walk, shall we 6 leaves from platform 2, doesn't it 7 the salt, would (or: will) you 8 eating cake, haven't you 9 won't you 10 leaving tomorrow morning, aren't we

## Practice 4c p67

**1**

1 I have 2 he doesn't 3 so (or: I would) 4 I'm not 5 you're not 6 I think 7 I (or: we) hadn't 8 not (or: he can't) 9 I would 10 let's

**2**

1 Can't you 2 Do they 3 Would you 4 Won't you 5 Has she 6 Can't it 7 Does he 8 Doesn't she 9 Does it 10 Did they 11 Could you 12 Do they

**3**

1 Haven't 2 can 3 Shouldn't 4 will 5 Would 6 Could 7 Don't 8 Won't 9 Should 10 Hasn't

**4**

1 f 2 e 3 g 4 h 5 j 6 a 7 c 8 b 9 i 10 d

## Practice 4d p70

**1**

**do:** *badly, good, your hair, your homework, well, the dishes, French, harm, a job, Maths, Physics, sth for a living, the washing up, some work*

**make:** *an appointment, a cup of coffee, a difference, a dress, good, a living, marks on the wall, a mistake, a phone call, a profit, a suggestion, a bad impression, the bed, a decision, a good impression, a loss, money*

**2**

1 e 2 g 3 f 4 h 5 b 6 i 7 j 8 c 9 a 10 d

**3**

1 do 2 make (or: made) 3 do 4 making 5 do 6 made 7 make 8 make 9 Do 10 done 11 made 12 do 13 make 14 did 15 make 16 done 17 making (or: made) 18 do

**4**

1 do 2 making 3 make 4 did 5 make 6 do 7 do 8 do 9 make 10 do 11 doing 12 make (The answers depend on each student's ideas, preferences, etc.)

**5**

(1) do (2) making (3) make (4) do (5) doing (6) made (7) do (8) made (9) up (10) damage (or: harm) (11) do (12) do (13) effort (14) sure (15) do

## Practice 4e p74

**1**

1 inheritance 2 convenience 3 clumsiness 4 obedience 5 investment 6 development 7 kindness 8 effectiveness 9 fairness 10 preference 11 innocence 12 improvement 13 willingness 14 retirement 15 silence 16 disappointment 17 excitement 18 politeness 19 argument 20 punishment 21 selfishness 22 sixtieth

**2**

1 Appearances 2 Absence 3 Accidents 4 Business 5 Ignorance 6 Ignorance 7 Patience 8 Silence

**3**

1 C 2 U 3 C 4 U 5 C 6 U 7 C 8 U 9 U 10 C 11 U 12 U

**4**

1 intelligent 2 careless 3 patient 4 deep 5 arrogant 6 ugly 7 wide 8 empty 9 confident 10 millionth

**5**

1 disturbance 2 correspondence 3 emergence 4 sleepiness 5 resistance 6 insurance 7 annoyance 8 emptiness 9 defence 10 commitment

**6**

(1) advertisement (2) requirements (3) improvement (4) qualifications (5) acceptance (6) accountant (7) investment (8) development (9) business (10) distance (11) attendance (12) absence

## Exam practice 2

### Part 1

**1 B** had to **2 C** in order to **3 D** bring **4 D** were able to **5 B** must **6 A** since **7 B** should have **8 C** couldn't have **9 A** taken **10 D** managed **11 D** investigation **12 D** made **13 C** place **14 C** experience **15 D** take



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**Part 2**
(**16**) making (**17**) do (**18**) than
(**19**) done (**20**) do (**21**) make
(**22**) do (**23**) exercises (**24**) turned
(**25**) make (**26**) told (**27**) am
(**28**) put (**29**) sell (**30**) didn't

**Part 3**
**31** is taking care of **32** might not have heard **33** couldn't concentrate fully because **34** in order not to leave (or: in order to avoid leaving) **35** ought to have got **36** was cancelled owing to **37** said (or: told me) I could have **38** couldn't understand her because **39** must have been **40** closed as a result of

**Part 4**
**41** up **42** when **43** in **44** ✔
**45** if **46** To **47** ✔ **48** a
**49** with **50** will **51** out **52** ✔
**53** they **54** will **55** ✔

**Part 5**
(**56**) tiresome (or: tiring)
(**57**) household (**58**) solution
(**59**) cleaners (**60**) effective
(**61**) information (**62**) description
(**63**) demonstration (**64**) trial
(**65**) obligation

# Unit 5

## Entry test

1 *don't hurry* 2 *can* 3 *unless* 4 *had* 5 *were* 6 **B** would have been 7 **D** had passed 8 **C** hadn't been 9 **C** could've caught 10 **D** wouldn't be 11 **B** had 12 **D** were 13 **D** would 14 **A** were travelling 15 **D** had had 16 **C** am hoping 17 **D** expecting 18 **C** to going 19 **D** loves 20 **C** listening 21 im 22 un 23 mis 24 dis 25 un

## Practice 5a p83

**1**
1 *'m* 2 *was* 3 *would be* 4 *becomes* 5 *leaving* 6 *can't* 7 *starts* 8 *should* 9 *Take* 10 *might*

**2**
1 *likely*: If I'm not busy, I'll come and pick you up. *less likely*: If I wasn't busy, I'd come and pick you up. 2 *likely*: If you fall, you'll break your leg. *less likely*: If you fell, you'd break your leg. 3 *likely*: If I drink too much wine, I'll feel sleepy. *less likely*: If I drank too much wine, I'd feel sleepy. 4 *likely*: If you get the job, you'll have more freedom. *less likely*: If you got the job, you'd have more freedom. 5 *likely*: If the questions are easy enough, everyone will pass the test. *less likely*: If the questions were easy enough, everyone would pass the test.

**3**
1 as long as you give 2 there will be jobs 3 we have enough money 4 unless you have 5 in case there is

## Practice 5b p84

**1**
1 had visited … would have phoned 2 'd known … wouldn't have got 3 had started … could have passed 4 hadn't been … might have made 5 hadn't spent … wouldn't be 6 could have become … 'd been 7 would have got … hadn't argued 8 wouldn't have got ... hadn't worn
9 had met … would have been
10 hadn't seen … would have been

**2**
1 I had had enough money, I would have taken a taxi 2 I had been interested in the film, I would have gone to the cinema 3 we hadn't taken the wrong turning, we wouldn't have arrived late 4 have committed suicide if he hadn't thought Juliet was dead 5 hadn't asked for more food, he wouldn't have been punished 6 fallen down if it hadn't had weak foundations 7 have gone downstairs if I hadn't been afraid of the dark 8 have come first if you had run fast 9 I known she was the examiner, I wouldn't have made a silly joke 10 had had a car, she could have driven there

**3**
(**1**) been (**2**) had (**3**) would (**4**) had (**5**) have (**6**) had (**7**) be (**8**) be (**9**) Would (**10**) if (**11**) had (**12**) have (**13**) had (**14**) been (**15**) never

## Practice 5c p87

**1**
1 had 2 would snow 3 was 4 would stop 5 wouldn't do 6 would come 7 wouldn't build/weren't building 8 could come 9 could go 10 'd kept 11 I hadn't lost 12 would turn up

**2**
1 *I wish I wouldn't eat so much* (or: eat less).
*If only I had taken more exercise.*
2 *I wish people wouldn't waste water.*
*If only people would save water.*
3 *I wish he would drive carefully.*
*If only he had let someone else drive.*
4 *I wish he would keep calm.*
*If only he hadn't lost his temper.*
5 *I wish people would use bins.*
*If only they would take rubbish home.*
6 *I wish we would recycle more paper.*
*If only we would protect the forests.*
7 *I wish people would use their cars less often. If only people would walk more.*
8 *I wish children would play fewer computer games. If only children would watch less TV.*

**3**
1 I wish / If only people would turn off the tap. 2 I wish / If only your brother would calm down. 3 I wish / If only the postman would arrive. 4 I wish / If only people would stop hunting animals for sport. 5 I wish / If only the people next door would turn their TV down. 6 I wish / If only my friend would stop complaining. 7 I wish / If only it would rain more. 8 I wish / If only my team would win / had won. 9 I wish / If only Christmas would come. 10 I wish / If only people would recycle things / rubbish / materials etc. more.

**4**
1 it would stop raining / I had an umbrella etc. 2 I could dance (well) / she would dance with me etc. 3 she wasn't leaving / would stay / could have stayed etc. (or: I was going with her / leaving too etc.) 4 she had married me / I was getting married etc. 5 I had saved the penalty / caught the ball / saved the goal etc. 6 we hadn't crashed the car / been driving so fast etc. (or: that wall hadn't been there etc.) 7 I had brought my swimming things / trunks etc. (or: it wasn't so hot etc.) 8 I'd done more revision / had worked harder / hadn't gone out last night etc.

## Practice 5d p91

**1**
(underline:) 1 *wanted* 2 *hope* 3 *wish* 4 *hoping* 5 *expecting* 6 *waiting for* 7 *expect* 8 *looking forward to* 9 *loved* 10 *like* 11 *like* 12 *keen* 13 *on* 14 *bear*

**2**
(**1**) wait (**2**) fond (**3**) like (**4**) to (**5**) expect (**6**) of (**7**) keen (**8**) expect (**9**) hope (**10**) want (**11**) on (**12**) can't

## Practice 5e p92

**1**
1 semifinal means 'one of two games to see who plays in the final' 2 ex-partner means 'a person who is your previous partner' 3 substandard means 'lower than a good standard' 4 multinational means 'involving people, businesses, etc. from many countries' 5 subsection means 'a part of a section' 6 minibus means 'a small bus' 7 decaffeinated means 'with the caffeine removed' 8 multiethnic means 'made up of many ethnic groups' 9 subzero means 'below zero degrees centigrade in temperature' 10 deregulate means 'to remove rules and regulations' 11 subplot means 'a set of events that is less important than the main one' 12 ex-wife means 'a previous wife' 13 denationalise means 'to remove state ownership'



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

14 microbiology means 'the study of the biology of very small organisms' 15 monorail means 'a railway that uses only one rail' 16 miniskirt means 'a very short skirt' 17 subsoil means 'a layer of soil under the surface' 18 microchip means 'a very small silicon chip' 19 decode means 'to remove a code' 20 semi-darkness means 'partial darkness'

**2**

(underline:) 1 **B** illegible
2 **A** unbearable 3 **B** immature
4 **D** misspelt 5 **B** informal
6 **D** debone 7 **A** denationalise
8 **A** ex-partner 9 **D** multi-purpose
10 **A** subcommittee

**3**

(1) unpopular (2) displeasing (or: unpleasant) (3) unhealthy
(4) undeniable (5) irresistible
(6) impossible (7) ineffective
(8) illegal (9) unable (10) unjust
(11) unbearable

# Unit 6

## Entry test

1 **D** finish 2 **B** have 3 **A** while 4 **D** in case 5 **B** Suppose 6 **C** point 7 **D** about to 8 **D** due 9 **C** is to 10 **C** Whatever 11 **B** we left 12 **C** for you to take 13 **D** were leaving 14 **B** go 15 **A** didn't go 16 **D** afterwards 17 **B** after 18 **C** until 19 **D** by 20 **B** in case 21 more time 22 the time 23 waste 24 great time 25 Take your

## Practice 6a

p97

**1**

(underline:) 1 *When* 2 *until* 3 *before* 4 *by the time* 5 *immediately* 6 *Supposing* 7 *Whether* 8 *When* 9 *As soon as* 10 *provided*

**2**

1 come 2 are 3 has finished (or: is finished) 4 get (or: have got) 5 tell 6 plays (or: will play) 7 'll tell … don't tell 8 'll lend … bring it back 9 'll take … get 10 'll go (or: are going) … has finished / finishes

**3**

(1) when (2) do (3) changes
(4) takes (5) has (6) is (7) starts
(8) case (9) long (10) in (11) come

## Practice 6b

p99

**1**

1 are about to 2 is due to 3 are not to 4 are on the verge of 5 is on the point of 6 No matter 7 However (or: No matter how) 8 am due to 9 Whenever 10 are to

**2**

1 *beginning* 2 *bursting* 3 *to arrive / arriving* 4 *to perform* 5 *to expire* 6 *to leave* 7 *does* 8 *see* 9 *choose* 10 *hides* 11 *runs* 12 *live*

**3**

(1) whatever (2) how (3) build
(4) on (5) decide (6) will (7) due
(8) are (9) do (10) is (11) however
(12) no matter (13) take (14) aren't

## Practice 6c

p102

**1**

(tick:) 1 **B** we went. 2 **C** have
3 **B** it if you came 4 **C** you tidied
5 **A** for 6 **B** didn't come
7 **C** him to wear 8 **A** we separated.
9 **B** have drunk 10 **B** watching TV than

**2**

1 d 2 l 3 g 4 c 5 b 6 h 7 j
8 a 9 k 10 i 11 f 12 e

**3**

1 *visited, to spend* 2 *repaired, painted* 3 *left, stay* 4 *helped, do* 5 *bought, not to waste* 6 *to have, didn't stop*

**4**

1 time you bought 2 would prefer 3 would rather study drama 4 would rather not go on 5 'd sooner you didn't make 6 rather put you 7 time you told 8 for me to 9 had the living room

## Practice 6d

p105

**1**

(underline:) 1 *by* 2 *afterwards* 3 *afterwards* 4 *then* 5 *till* 6 *later* 7 *by* 8 *till* 9 *After* 10 *in*

**2**

1 in 2 later 3 Then 4 Afterwards 5 after 6 by 7 until / till 8 far as

**3**

(1) as (2) after (3) by (4) then
(5) Later (6) after (7) until
(8) afterwards (9) After (10) in
(11) then (12) later

## Practice 6e

p107

**1**

1 pass 2 day 3 spend 4 taking 5 take 6 wasting 7 takes 8 spent 9 have 10 on 11 in 12 take

**2**

1 h 2 d 3 i 4 l 5 k 6 b 7 j
8 e 9 f 10 a 11 g 12 c

**3**

1 to pass the time 2 spent 3 on time 4 takes time 5 have time 6 are having a great time 7 is time 8 the right time 9 on time 10 a waste of time 11 Do you have time 12 pass the time of day

## Exam practice 3

**Part 1**

**1 D** insensitive **2 C** long
**3 D** unsuccessful **4 A** inadequate
**5 A** ill-informed **6 D** sit
**7 C** unlikely **8 A** irrelevant
**9 D** soon **10 C** later **11 C** should
**12 D** is **13 C** whether **14 D** not
**15 C** inappropriate

**Part 2**

**(16)** got (or: were) **(17)** miss **(18)** had **(19)** bear **(20)** take **(21)** fond **(22)** waiting **(23)** wish **(24)** looking **(25)** was **(26)** If **(27)** bear **(28)** spend **(29)** would **(30)** over

**Part 3**

**31** won't be back until **32** in case the taxi is **33** is due to arrive **34** if they had remembered **35** Peter whether he wanted **36** I were you, I'd **37** unless we have **38** if he doesn't phone **39** as long as you arrive **40** provided (that) you have

**Part 4**

**41** to **42** have **43** ✔ **44** the
**45** the **46** have **47** ✔ **48** not
**49** go **50** wish **51** the **52** been
**53** ✔ **54** to **55** they

**Part 5**

**(56)** unable **(57)** impatient
**(58)** unintelligent **(59)** impossible
**(60)** inadequate **(61)** unsatisfactory
**(62)** incorrect **(63)** impolite
**(64)** unfortunately **(65)** inappropriate

# Unit 7

## Entry test

1 *is being treated* 2 *was announced* 3 *had been removed* 4 *will have been achieved* 5 *will be held* 6 **D** was born 7 **B** must be worn 8 **C** It's reported 9 **D** by 10 **C** with 11 **C** got his hair cut 12 **B** Shall I have 13 **A** We had our house 14 **A** got himself elected 15 **D** got married 16 **A** get 17 **A** get 18 **B** get for your old car? 19 **D** get out of 20 **C** I get it 21 dish 22 fire 23 heating 24 human 25 break

## Practice 7a

p115

**1**

1 is broadcast 2 is being interviewed 3 has been charged 4 will be installed 5 will have been elected 6 was paid 7 had been burgled 8 was being evacuated 9 will be introduced 10 are sold

**2**

1 Preservatives are not / No preservatives are added to our products. 2 A lot of



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

new schools are being built in the provinces. 3 He has just been arrested on suspicion of murder. 4 Will her new book be published next month? 5 The new motorway will have been completed by Christmas. 6 The house hasn't been cleaned for weeks. 7 Mr and Mrs Dixon's water was cut off because they hadn't paid their bill. 8 The new supermarket will be opened next week. 9 The car couldn't be used because it was being serviced. 10 A lot of books are published on information technology.

**3**

(1) is / was based (2) were interviewed (3) were visited (4) have / had been built (5) have been / had been / were designed (6) was / had been considered (7) was closed (8) have been renovated (9) is shown (10) are equipped (11) are provided (12) were / are considered (13) were interviewed (14) have been / were awarded

## Practice 7b p118

**1**

1 I was sent a whole lot of junk mail. A whole lot of junk mail was sent to me. 2 I was lent two thousand pounds by the Credit Bank in 1999. Two thousand pounds was lent to me by the Credit Bank in 1999. 3 Each of the children was given a bottle of milk every day. A bottle of milk was given to each of the children every day. 4 We were shown the sights of the city. The sights of the city were shown to us. 5 The workers will be paid £50 every Friday. Every Friday, £50 will be paid to the workers. 6 The children had been promised more food. More food had been promised to the children. 7 They were told the secret by the magician. The secret was told to them by the magician. 8 She was offered the job. The job was offered to her. 9 He had been taught maths by one of his uncles. Maths had been taught to him by one of his uncles. 10 The animal charity was given a lot of money. A lot of money was given to the animal charity.

**2**

1 d 2 e 3 g 4 c 5 a 6 j 7 b 8 i 9 h 10 f

**3**

1 is said to be 2 was thought to be 3 has been put down / was put forward 4 believed to have run 5 was considered (to be) 6 was supposed to be 7 was agreed that the directors 8 was taken up by 9 was taught everything I know 10 was ordered to pay

## Practice 7c p120

**1**

1 get / have your eyes tested 2 had it made 3 get / have it serviced 4 've just had it cut 5 to get / have central heating installed 6 just had it redecorated 7 'm having it repaired 8 get / have them cleaned 9 to get / have it cut down 10 get that cavity filled

**2**

(1) had (2) get / have (3) mended (4) get (5) got (6) had (7) done (8) it (9) get / have (10) spilt / tipped etc. (11) have (12) taken (13) was (14) burgled

## Practice 7d p123

**1**

1 c 2 h 3 a 4 b 5 j 6 e 7 f 8 i 9 g 10 d

**2**

1 *cold* 2 *the car* 3 *going* 4 *the joke* 5 *the kids* 6 *those wet clothes* 7 *to the end* 8 *the idea*

**3**

(1) *surprise* (2) *hobbies* (3) *stamps* (4) *one* (5) *chance* (6) *channels* (7) *satellite* (8) *snowed* (9) *cold* (10) *warmer*

## Practice 7e p125

**1**

**countable:** *letterbox, pen-friend, personal computer, parking meter, remote control, news bulletin, package holiday, passer-by, police station, post office, sleeping bag, swimming pool, washing machine*
**uncountable:** *washing powder, soda water, show business, social work, toilet-paper, washing-up liquid, water skiing, writing paper, human nature*

**2**

(noun + noun) 1 c 2 j 3 i 4 g 5 h 6 d 7 b 8 e 9 f 10 a
(adjective + noun) 1 c 2 d 3 g 4 i 5 a 6 j 7 b 8 e 9 f 10 h
1 zebra crossing 2 central heating 3 fast food 4 pocket money 5 fire brigade 6 high school 7 common sense 8 remote control 9 dry-cleaner's 10 burglar alarm

**3**

**Across:** 1 dry 2 sun 7 heating 8 inverted 9 make 10 gum 11 sense
**Down:** 1 driving 2 studies 3 junk 4 fries 5 park 6 stop 7 human

**4**

1 *break-in* 2 *setback* 3 *hold-up* 4 *getaway* 5 *check-outs* 6 *break-out* 7 *break-up* 8 *take-over* 9 *take-away* 10 *take-off* 11 *print-out* 12 *check-in*

**5**

(1) *table* (2) *time* (3) *wife* (4) *house* (5) *book* (6) *computer* (7) *sitter* (8) *up* (9) *electrical* (10) *washer* (11) *washing* (12) *piece* (13) *word* (14) *meal*

# Unit 8

## Entry test

1 suggested 2 explained 3 begged 4 not to go 5 had been trying 6 **B** if he could 7 **D** she had 8 **C** he could 9 **C** she had spent 10 **A** to use 11 **A** hitting 12 **C** that he didn't know 13 **D** to have 14 **B** to own 15 **D** let 16 **C** say 17 **D** to go 18 **B** that she was 19 **D** denied 20 **A** rejected 21 amusing 22 disappointed 23 annoying 24 boring 25 charming

## Practice 8a p132

**1**

1 (that) we (should) go for a walk
2 (that) he hadn't been anywhere near the scene of the crime
3 (that) that spot was the best place for a picnic
4 that the swallows returned every spring and flew past her window
5 to (or: if he could) answer the phone because he was having a shower
6 (that) he had given me his homework the week before
7 his dad if he could pick him up from school that day
8 not to drink so much
9 a (that) she wouldn't help me because I hadn't helped her
b to help me because I hadn't helped her
10 a (that) he would bring it back the next day
b to bring it back the next day

**2**

1 d 2 e 3 g 4 b 5 i 6 h 7 a 8 f 9 j 10 c

**3**

1 to leave if I did it again 2 was then going to read out the results 3 to (or: if he could) bring him the wine list 4 that he would bring it right away 5 his / their team would easily beat mine / ours 6 to give her another chance 7 we should be quiet because the baby was sleeping 8 (that) he was innocent of all the charges 9 first of all, I / we should press the button 10 to be careful because the water was deep



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**4**

(1) *miss* (2) *cost* (3) *enjoyed* (4) *lived* (5) *go* (6) *make / have* (7) *sent* (8) *was snowing* (9) *had / have* (10) *had bought* (11) *were planning* (12) *would give* (13) *would love* (14) *would think*

## Practice 8b p135

**1**

1 if / whether he could have some more pocket money 2 where he had been born 3 how far the stadium was / how far it was to the stadium 4 (me) if / whether I was still living in London 5 whether he worked in the central branch or in the provinces 6 whether I was going to give her the money or not 7 whether he had brought the book back or not 8 who had bought Picasso painting 9 where she had got such a lovely pullover

**2**

1 How long did the journey take? 2 Was it snowing in Manchester? 3 How old are you? 4 Where were you born? 5 How long have you lived here? 6 Are you married? 7 Do you have a family? 8 How long have you worked as an editor? 9 When can you start work? 10 What do you like most about your job? 11 Who told you about us? 12 What are the qualities of a good manager? 13 How much do you expect to be paid? 14 How much were you being paid in your last job?

**3**

(1) whether / if (2) wondered (3) to (4) was (5) would (6) that (7) next / following (8) thought (9) whether (10) not

**4**

1 have 2 ✔ 3 been 4 or 5 from 6 ✔ 7 I 8 the 9 him 10 did 11 had 12 was 13 ✔ 14 have 15 ✔

## Practice 8c p139

**1**

(underline:) 1 *telling* 2 *denied* 3 *postponing* 4 *their arrival* 5 *to see* 6 *to buy* 7 *to seeing* 8 *going* 9 *stay* 10 *climbing*

**2**

1 regret to tell / inform you that 2 I'd rather have a pizza for a change 3 didn't / wouldn't let us drink too much Coke when we were children 4 suggest (that) we take the train 5 managed to persuade her parents to let her go 6 door appears to be locked after all 7 can't stand is people eating popcorn in the cinema 8 arrived two hours late but was worth waiting for 9 insisted on catching the early flight 10 look forward to getting your next letter

**3**

(1) taking / to take (2) to be (3) to day-dream / day-dreaming (4) to play / playing (5) talking (6) starting (7) having (8) to have (9) being (10) point

## Practice 8d p142

**1**

1 A: *say* B: *talking* 2 A: *telling* B: *tell* 3 A: *telling* B: *persuade* 4 A: *give* B: *talk / speak* 5 A: *said* B: *tell* 6 A: *say … talking* B: *say* 7 A: *told* B: *talking*
8 A: *said / says* B: *convinced … telling* 9 A: *gave* B: *turned down* 10 A: *deny … told* B: *convince … discuss*

**2**

(1) talked (2) given (3) said (4) turned down (5) persuade / tell (6) discuss (7) told (8) talk (9) convinced (10) denied (11) give (12) refuse (13) telling (14) give

## Practice 8e p143

**1**

(underline:) (1) *encouraging* (2) *depressing* (3) *disappointed* (4) *worrying* (5) *exhausting* (6) *disturbing* (7) *surprised* (8) *worried* (9) *shocking* (10) *uninteresting* (11) *boring* (12) *embarrassing*

**2**

1 *confused* 2 *frightening* 3 *interested* 4 *irritating* 5 *surprised* 6 *depressed* 7 *relaxing* 8 *bored* 9 *annoyed* 10 *embarrassed*

**3**

1 I think it's appalling / disgusting / shocking, etc. 2 I would feel exhausted / exhilarated, etc. 3 I would feel disappointed / embarrassed, etc. 4 I think they're appalling / disgusting / annoying, etc. 5 They think they are boring / interesting / irritating / amusing, etc. 6 I would feel excited, surprised, etc. 7 I feel depressed, disturbed, etc. 8 I think it's boring / exciting, etc. 9 I feel irritated, annoyed, etc. 10 I would feel ashamed, embarassed, etc.

**4**

1 fascinating / boring, etc. 2 irritating / exciting, etc. 3 fascinating / exciting, etc. 4 interested / dedicated, etc. 5 surprised / amazed, etc. 6 very relaxing / really boring, etc. 7 disappointing / fascinating, etc. 8 exciting / irritating, etc.

**5**

**Across:** 2 interested 5 heated 6 amused 8 building 9 freezing 10 ageing 11 rewarding 12 collected
**Down:** 1 captivating 3 trusting 4 touched 7 humiliated 10 armed

## Exam practice 4

**Part 1**

**1 C** gets **2 A** nature **3 C** pressure **4 D** show business **5 A** beings **6 D** resources **7 D** breakthroughs **8 B** break-out **9 D** were shot **10 B** making **11 C** got **12 B** passers-by **13 D** screenwriters **14 A** ready-made **15 A** bulletins

**Part 2**

**(16)** living **(17)** says **(18)** was **(19)** were **(20)** why **(21)** if / whether **(22)** doing / studying **(23)** told / warned **(24)** not **(25)** close / shut **(26)** go **(27)** me **(28)** made **(29)** to **(30)** was

**Part 3**

**31** barber's shops are known as **32** the prisoners will be caught **33** can't be denied that she **34** has had / got her car repaired **35** is going to be pulled **36** is supposed to be **37** has to / must be picked up **38** must not be brought **39** must get my car serviced **40** have the house renovated

**Part 4**

**41** been **42** ✔ **43** up **44** it **45** a **46** of **47** to **48** had (1st) **49** ✔ **50** has **51** ✔ **52** whether **53** to **54** about **55** ✔

**Part 5**

**(56)** science **(57)** pen-name **(58)** novelist **(59)** publishers **(60)** writing **(61)** notebook **(62)** typewriter **(63)** personal **(64)** processing **(65)** print-out

# Unit 9

## Entry test

1 *more* 2 *loveliest* 3 *worst* 4 *a lot* 5 *slightly less* 6 **D** for 7 **D** of 8 **A** for 9 **B** to 10 **B** of 11 **B** a nice red 12 **C** black leather 13 **A** new Japanese car 14 **D** lovely red 15 **B** posh German sports 16 **C** most powerful 17 **D** strong 18 **C** taller 19 **C** weak 20 **D** natural 21 **B** absent 22 **D** short 23 **D** easy 24 **C** economy class 25 **C** well

## Practice 9a p154

**1**

(1) *lot* (2) *youngest* (3) *more* (4) *than* (5) *eldest* (6) *most* (7) *more* (8) *than* (9) *the* (10) *as* (11) *more* (12) *more* (13) *as* (14) *livelier* (15) *than* (16) *older* (17) *the* (18) *better* (19) *less* (20) *expensive*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2**

1 *more difficult / less simple* 2 *warmer* 3 *the most intelligent* 4 *the hottest* 5 *cheaper than* 6 *better* 7 *best / most wonderful* 8 *more comfortable than* 9 *older* 10 *farther / further* 11 *the most boring* 12 *simpler* 13 *the luckiest* 14 *the furthest / the farthest* 15 *worse* 16 *the worst* 17 *simpler* 18 *most boring / least interesting*

## Practice 9b p156

**1**

1 *ashamed of* 2 *interested in* 3 *absent from* 4 *typical of* 5 *amused by* 6 *disappointed with* 7 *involved in* 8 *shocked by* 9 *different from* (but you will now hear *different to* even in official speeches) 10 *good at* 11 *famous for* 12 *crowded with* 13 *right about* 14 *engaged to* 15 *proud of*

**2**

1 **A** about 2 **D** with 3 **B** at 4 **A** from 5 **C** on

## Practice 9c p157

**1**

1 ✔ 2 a tall dark man 3 a big wooden spoon 4 ✔ 5 a delicious big birthday cake (or: a big delicious birthday cake) 6 ✔ 7 a large old frying pan 8 ✔ 9 a beautiful pink silk blouse 10 a large round ball 11 a big old brick factory 12 an ugly old wooden desk (or: an old ugly wooden desk)

## Practice 9d p162

**1**

(underline:) 1 *high* 2 *slim* 3 *skinny* 4 *last* 5 *latest* 6 *natural* 7 *strong* 8 *strong* (*powerful* is possible but unnatural) 9 *great* 10 *big* 11 *little* 12 *taller* 13 *thinner* 14 *foreign* 15 *strange*

**2**

1 high 2 thin 3 last 4 latest 5 weak 6 natural 7 Great 8 large 9 largest 10 greatest

**3**

(underline:) 1 power 2 bomb 3 area 4 temperature 5 man 6 occasion 7 chance 8 cloth 9 gossip 10 year 11 money 12 plants 13 food 14 clothes

**4**

**Across:** 6 strong 7 physical 8 latest 11 tall 13 last 15 foreign 16 largest 18 slim 19 natural 20 weaker
**Down:** 1 powerful 2 little 3 short 4 bigger 5 strange 9 thin 10 small 12 highest 14 skinny 17 great

## Practice 9e p164

**1**

*broad-minded; narrow-minded; well-built / well-dressed / well-behaved / well-known; one-eyed / one-legged; blond-haired; red-eyed / red-haired / red-handed; good-looking; bad-tempered; left-handed; absent-minded* (*absent-looking* is possible but unusual); *light-hearted / light-fingered; open-minded / open-hearted; thin-lipped; long-legged; kind-hearted*

**2**

**physical appearance**
*well-built, well-dressed, one-eyed, one-legged, blond-haired, red-eyed, red-haired, good-looking, thin-lipped, long-legged*
**personality**
*broad-minded, narrow-minded, well-behaved, bad-tempered, absent-minded, light-hearted, light-fingered, open-minded, open-hearted, kind-hearted*

**3**

1 narrow-minded 2 well-dressed 3 good-looking 4 bad-tempered 5 well-behaved 6 absent-minded 7 well-known 8 left-handed 9 well-built 10 red-haired

**4**

1 *distance* 2 *off* 3 *up* 4 *class* 5 *made* 6 *going* 7 *up* 8 *conditioned* 9 *headed* 10 *sighted* 11 *badly* 12 *built*

# Unit 10

## Entry test

1 as 2 so 3 same 4 as 5 richer 6 **B** so 7 **A** such 8 **C** so many 9 **B** too 10 **C** enough time 11 **C** quite 12 **D** a fairly 13 **C** rather a 14 **B** a bit 15 **D** seems 16 **D** embarrassed 17 **C** nervous 18 **C** afraid 19 **A** amusing 20 **A** formal 21 careless 22 suitable 23 painless 24 sensitive 25 forgetful

## Practice 10a p169

**1**

1 as Tony 2 (on) the same day as 3 the same time as Bob 4 as heavy as (or: the same weight as) 5 colour hair as 6 the same school as 7 geography as Bob 8 good at maths as Tony 9 at English as 10 as good at history as 11 as tall as 12 money as Tony 13 his mum … like his dad 14 as a businessman 15 as successful as

## Practice 10b p171

**1**

1 e 2 c 3 f 4 b 5 d 6 a

**2**

1 *such a high price* 2 *such a* 3 *such* 4 *such an* 5 *so* 6 *so few* 7 *so* 8 *so many* 9 *such a* 10 *so much*

**3**

1 *too* 2 *enough* 3 *enough* 4 *too* 5 *very* 6 *too / very / so* 7 *enough* 8 *enough* 9 *so / very* 10 *such*

**4**

1 were surprised by such cold 2 too heavy (for me) to 3 wasn't tall enough to 4 so sad it made me 5 speaks so softly (that) we 6 weren't high enough 7 were so many people 8 was so strong (that) 9 hot for me to 10 have enough money for / to buy

## Practice 10c p174

**1**

1 It was a fairly good day so we went for a walk. 2 Wembley Stadium is (absolutely) enormous. 3 He's rather / quite / fairly noisy in class. 4 She's always been quite / fairly hardworking. 5 I quite like the theatre but I prefer films. 6 John is rather more talkative than his brother. 7 Yes, I quite agree with everything you say. 8 It came as quite a shock to get home and find the house burgled. 9 I'm afraid I found the film a bit boring. 10 The test seems to be quite easy.

**2**

1 *interesting … long* 2 *nice* 3 *experienced … careless* 4 *certain … harder* 5 *worried … safe* 6 *unpleasant* 7 *pleased … disappointed* 8 *sour … awful* 9 *healthy … strong* 10 *grey … young*

**3**

1 **A** quite 2 **C** rather 3 **D** a fairly good 4 **B** a little 5 **D** quite frightening

**4**

1 looked 2 seems 3 staying 4 felt 5 appeared

**5**

(1) more (2) be / some (3) quite / rather (4) to (5) quite / very (6) too (7) to (8) better (9) a (10) quite / very (11) little / bit (12) quite (13) easy (14) much (15) be / seem

## Practice 10d p177

**1**

1 *amusing* 2 *enjoyable* 3 *shy* 4 *ashamed* 5 *embarrassed* 6 *shameful* 7 *worried* 8 *bad-tempered* 9 *afraid* 10 *likeable* 11 *tiring* 12 *ordinary*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**2**

(underline:) 1 *afraid of* 2 *too afraid to* 3 *afraid* 4 *afraid of losing* 5 *scared to* 6 *scared of* 7 *frightened of* 8 *frightened to* 9 *frightened of being* 10 *frightened*

**3**

1 *enjoyable* 2 *formal* 3 *embarrassed* 4 *usual* 5 *typical* 6 *anxious* 7 *sympathetic* 8 *bad-tempered* 9 *amusing* 10 *tiresome* 11 *shy* 12 *afraid* 13 *nervous* 14 *ordinary* 15 *ashamed*

### Practice 10e p181

**1**

1 memorable 2 unforgettable 3 forgetful 4 undrinkable 5 readable 6 sensible 7 painful 8 hopeful 9 understandable 10 hostile 11 intolerant 12 courageous

**2**

(1) homeless (2) powerful (3) extensive (4) destructive (5) unbelievable (6) harmful (7) emotional (8) lengthy (or: long) (9) forgetful (10) unsuitable

**3**

(1) the (2) as (3) as (4) as (5) like (6) as (7) like (8) as (9) as

## Exam practice 5

**Part 1**

**1 B** about **2 C** surprised **3 B** embarrassed **4 D** in **5 D** the simplest **6 A** cheaper **7 B** than **8 A** much **9 B** slightly **10 D** first-class **11 D** longer **12 B** accustomed **13 A** amazed **14 C** efficient **15 C** powerful

**Part 2**

**(16)** like **(17)** so **(18)** such **(19)** such **(20)** lot **(21)** a **(22)** a **(23)** that **(24)** forward **(25)** seem / appear **(26)** as **(27)** of **(28)** been **(29)** as **(30)** so

**Part 3**

**31** he is married to **32** to be fond of **33** were very proud of **34** 's unusual for **35** became / got bored with **36** are quite / very different from **37** was very rude to **38** were surprised by **39** was confident of **40** not be responsible for

**Part 4**

**41** The **42** for **43** the **44** ✔ **45** more **46** ✔ **47** the **48** so **49** if **50** the **51** it **52** of **53** much **54** like **55** ✔

**Part 5**

**(56)** usually **(57)** qualifications **(58)** attractive **(59)** beautiful **(60)** essential **(61)** talented **(62)** powerful **(63)** natural **(64)** latest **(65)** better

# Unit 11

## Entry test

1 *beautifully* 2 *quietly* 3 *happily* 4 *probably* 5 *daily* 6 She slowly opened the door. / She opened the door slowly. / Slowly she opened the door. 7 He is always laughing in class. 8 She probably doesn't speak French. 9 On Sunday he drove along the motorway dangerously. / He drove dangerously along the monorway on Sunday. 10 I have always liked music very much.

11 **D** earlier 12 **C** much harder 13 **A** less 14 **D** quickly 15 **C** as soon as 16 **B** see 17 **A** look 18 **D** about 19 **A** listening to 20 **D** look 21 **C** late 22 **C** aloud 23 **D** good 24 **A** wide 25 **B** close

### Practice 11a p190

**1**

| adjective | adverb | prepositional phrase |
|---|---|---|
| *suitable* | *suitably* | |
| *beautiful* | *beautifully* | |
| *unlucky* | *unluckily* | |
| *tragic* | *tragically* | |
| *lovely* | | *in a lovely way* |
| *monthly* | *monthly* | |
| *fourth* | *fourthly* | |
| *daily* | *daily* | |
| *possible* | *possibly* | |
| *true* | *truly* | |
| *ugly* | | *in an ugly way* |
| *fast* | *fast* | |
| *awful* | *awfully* | *in an awful way* |
| *undoubted* | *undoubtedly* | |
| *full* | *fully* | |
| *efficient* | *efficiently* | |
| *simple* | *simply* | |
| *public* | *publicly* | |
| *lonely* | | *in a lonely way* |
| *still* | *still* | |

**2**

1 *beautifully* 2 *softly* 3 *carefully* 4 *noisily* 5 *daily* 6 *monthly* 7 *occasionally* 8 *easily* 9 *early* 10 *well*

**3**

1 terribly 2 automatically 3 gently 4 unexpectedly 5 probably 6 surprisingly 7 shyly 8 hourly 9 truly 10 heroically

### Practice 11b p192

**1**

1 I went to the post office yesterday. / Yesterday I went to the post office. 2 ✔ 3 I've become interested in skiing recently. / Recently I've become interested in skiing. / I've recently become interested in skiing. 4 We often play football in the playground after school. 5 He drives very carefully on the motorway. 6 Suddenly he got up and walked away. / He suddenly got up and walked away. 7 ✔ 8 He is waiting outside. 9 I only like ice-cream, not chocolate. 10 I cooked and I washed the dishes as well.

**2**

1 You'll never finish your homework in time if you don't hurry up. 2 I have probably lived in this neighbourhood for a year. 3 I love travelling by plane very much. 4 Doesn't she play the piano well! 5 We arrived at the station on Sunday morning at nine o'clock / at nine o'clock on Sunday morning. 6 She probably won't be coming to work today. 7 He performed the part superbly at the National Theatre on Saturday / on Saturday at the National Theatre. 8 She usually visits her mother in hospital at the weekend. 9 Our party definitely won't raise taxes. 10 Can you come to my office in town at six o'clock?

**3**

(1) *yesterday* (2) *immediately* (3) *often* (4) *rarely* (5) *Occasionally* (6) *always* (7) *never* (8) *probably* (9) *quickly* (10) *a few minutes later* (11) *Outside* (12) *hardly* (13) *The night before* (14) *after midnight* (15) *usually*

### Practice 11c p195

**1**

1 more efficiently 2 as badly as 3 earlier than 4 more slowly 5 as dangerously 6 less often (or: more often!) 7 as well 8 (the) quickest 9 more 10 harder

**2**

1 *(more) carefully* 2 *harder* 3 *earlier* 4 *louder* 5 *quickly* 6 *longer* 7 *more efficiently* 8 *more often* 9 *nearest* 10 *worse*

### Practice 11d p198

**1**

1 hear / see … watching 2 understand 3 hear … listening 4 heard 5 heard from 6 looked / glanced 7 caught 8 noticed 9 looking for 10 Listen 11 heard / understand 12 staring

**2**

1 are looking into 2 had heard nothing about 3 looks after the children 4 had a quick look 5 heard what's happened about 6 was (just) hearing things 7 looked through 8 (quick) glance at the clock 9 haven't heard of him 10 caught sight of

**3**

(1) looking (2) look (3) sight (4) heard (5) seen (6) ready / looking (7) looking (8) seeing (9) know / see (10) at (11) at (12) looking / appearing (13) listen (14) glanced



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

(15) look

**4**

1 *carefully* 2 *badly* 3 *fast* 4 *carefully* 5 *suitably* 6 *beautifully* 7 *slowly* 8 *fast* 9 *quickly* 10 *highly*

### Practice 11e p201

**1**

1 hard 2 hardly 3 difficult 4 wide 5 wide 6 well 7 well 8 good 9 fast 10 fast 11 wrongly / incorrectly 12 wrong 13 close 14 loud 15 free 16 lately / recently

**2**

(1) lately (2) widely (3) mostly (4) slow (5) little (6) wrongly (7) quickly (8) highly (9) far (10) further (11) long (12) late

# Unit 12

## Entry test

1 – 2 – 3 *outside the* 4 *a* 5 *the* 6 **B** some 7 **C** any 8 **B** another 9 **D** little 10 **D** much 11 **D** some 12 **A** it 13 **C** it 14 **D** is 15 **D** – 16 **D** Physics 17 **C** – 18 **D** the outskirts 19 **D** the 20 **B** – 21 depression 22 opportunity 23 generosity 24 publicity 25 reluctance

### Practice 12a p207

**1**

1 The 2 the 3 – 4 the … – … – … – 5 the 6 the 7 the 8 the 9 the 10 the … the 11 – … – 12 a … –

**2**

**The** Romans invaded Britain in AD 43 and, chasing ancient Britons along **the** Thames, they came to **the** first place where it was easy to cross. They built **a** garrison there – and London was born. They also erected **a** bridge over **the** river. **The** garrison became **a** major trading post. Later, **the** bridge suffered neglect and **the** whole area was raided by **the** Vikings. In AD 886 Alfred **the** Great drove out **the** raiders, **the** bridge was repaired and **the** city prospered again. **A** hundred years later, **the** Vikings returned but King Ethelred sailed up **the** Thames, attached ropes to London Bridge, headed downriver and pulled it down.

**3**

(1) a (2) the (3) the (4) the (5) the (6) a (7) – (8) – (9) the (10) the (11) – (12) the (13) – (14) the (15) – (16) – (17) an (18) the (19) a (20) a (21) the (22) the (23) – (24) the (25) a (26) – (27) the (28) – (29) – (30) –

### Practice 12b p211

**1**

(underline:) 1 *None of* 2 *Each of* 3 *each* 4 *Every* 5 *Each* 6 *neither* 7 *every* 8 *each* 9 *few* 10 *a few* 11 *a little* 12 *little … a few* 13 *many* 14 *most* 15 *several* 16 *some* 17 *some* 18 *another* 19 *a few … other* 20 *either*

**2**

(1) four (2) other (3) – / the (4) other / some (5) some / a (6) all (7) few (8) other (9) any (10) few (11) some / other (12) None (13) any (14) little (15) All

### Practice 12c p214

**1**

**Down:** 1 hair 2 children 3 news 6 music 7 knowledge 10 evil 11 work **Across:** 4 health 5 flesh 8 furniture 9 women 12 pride 13 luck 14 species

**2**

1 advice / information 2 species 3 fruit 4 Equipment 5 series 6 permission 7 hair 8 computers 9 equipment / machinery 10 homework

**3**

1 *a deer … deer* 2 *cod … cod* 3 *a beer … beer* 4 *iron … an iron* 5 *experience … an experience* 6 *works … work* 7 *a noise … noise*

**4**

(1) a (2) the (3) – (4) – (5) a (6) – / any (7) the (8) – / some (9) – (10) – / some (11) – (12) a (13) – (14) – (15) –

### Practice 12d p218

**1**

1 *expenses* 2 *media* 3 *pair of shorts* 4 *scissors* 5 *jury* 6 *company* 7 *interests* 8 *troops … army* 9 *supplies* 10 *foundations*

**2**

1 was … it 2 was … it 3 is … it 4 was … was … it / that 5 her 6 are … they 7 your … Is 8 The … are … the 9 is … they 10 was … any

### Practice 12e p221

**1**

1 decide 2 abolish 3 add 4 accuse 5 float 6 demolish 7 repeat 8 render 9 confess 10 cohere 11 seclude 12 revert 13 expand 14 oppose 15 graduate 16 identify 17 decorate 18 occupy 19 collide 20 permit 21 qualify 22 starve 23 abolish 24 value

**2**

1 discussion 2 responsibility 3 possibility 4 depression 5 explosion 6 profession 7 revision 8 discovery 9 performance 10 frequency 11 security 12 majority

**3**

1 led to the closure 2 gives me great pleasure 3 continued to correspond regularly 4 can't prove the existence 5 showed great / a lot of patience 6 to make any reference 7 most / particularly famous for (or: because of) their discovery 8 is a possibility of 9 shown great generosity 10 be given the / one more opportunity

**4**

(1) guidance (2) tendency (3) efficient (4) revision (5) frequency (6) fluency (7) opportunity (8) psychological (9) performance (10) acquisition (11) reluctant

## Exam practice 6

### Part 1

**1 C** hard **2 A** slowly **3 B** noisily **4 D** frequently **5 C** angrily **6 C** carefully **7 A** softly **8 C** loudly **9 C** long **10 A** probably **11 C** never **12 D** faster **13 A** early **14 D** did they go **15 B** than

### Part 2

**(16)** other **(17)** the **(18)** a **(19)** enough **(20)** a **(21)** the **(22)** slice / piece **(23)** the **(24)** window / door **(25)** group / bunch / crowd **(26)** their **(27)** of **(28)** few **(29)** is **(30)** time / chance / opportunity

### Part 3

**31** have always been fond of **32** probably won't come **33** didn't do very / at all well **34** smokes (much / far) less than **35** didn't speak loudly **36** have I been **37** had she finished her chocolate **38** sooner had I left **39** are not working hard **40** be / take long until I've

### Part 4

**41** more **42** of **43** of **44** of **45** To (1st) **46** The **47** ✔ **48** each **49** the **50** of **51** ✔ **52** of **53** ✔ **54** as **55** neither

### Part 5

**(56)** successfully **(57)** better **(58)** correctly **(59)** fluently **(60)** frequently **(61)** occasionally **(62)** carefully **(63)** accurately **(64)** strongly **(65)** simply



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# Unit 13

## Entry test

1 who 2 where 3 whose 4 which 5 Jill, who 6 **D** standing 7 **C** crying 8 **A** doing 9 **B** Knowing 10 **C** Having finished 11 **A** Although 12 **B** the fact that 13 **D** the heat 14 **C** However, 15 **B** however 16 **C** along 17 **D** back 18 **A** away 19 **C** into 20 **D** over 21 addict 22 approval 23 historians 24 enviously 25 threats

### Practice 13a p232

**1**

1 The new director, who gets on well with everyone, is very popular. 2 The beach which we always go to (or: where we always go) is very quiet. 3 The film I went to see, which I enjoyed very much, is called *Titanic*. 4 Our cat, which we've had for five years, is called William. 5 1998 was the year in which I first met her. 6 The house in which the doctor lives (or: where the doctor lives) is the biggest in the village. 7 George, whose wife is from Argentina, speaks Spanish. 8 The winters, which I enjoy, are very cold.

**2**

1 It was a mistake (which) they have already apologised for. 2 Mathematics is a subject (which) she has little interest in. 3 It was the guerrillas (who) they sold the weapons to. 4 It was the Queen (who) the Prime Minister sent the letter to. 5 It was the bank (that / which) he borrowed the money from. 6 That was the year (that / which) I was born in. 7 March 25 is the day (which / that) the country celebrates its independence on. 8 That's the hospital (which / that) the twins were born in. 9 That is the island (that / which) we spent our honeymoon on. 10 These are the reasons (that) I chose to marry him for.

**3**

7 March 25 is the day when the country celebrates its independence. 8 That's the hospital where the twins were born. 9 That is the island where we spent our honeymoon. 10 These are the reasons why I chose to marry him.

**4**

(1) where (2) when (3) which (4) whose (5) where (6) that / why (7) which / that (8) that (9) which (10) which (11) who / that (12) when (13) whose (14) with (15) whose

### Practice 13b p235

**1**

1 Bill fell asleep listening to the lecture. 2 She lived in London for a year training to be a nurse. 3 The students felt nervous waiting at their desks. 4 Giving out the questions, the teacher told the students not to open the booklet. 5 Opening the test booklets, the students looked anxiously for the easiest questions.

**2**

1 Having tried phoning her several times, he wrote her a letter. 2 Having received an invitation, I felt I had to go to the party. 3 Not having learnt any Japanese, he couldn't understand the message. 4 Having picked up his luggage, he went to look for a taxi.

**3**

(1) *haunted* (2) *made* (3) *built* (4) *broken* (5) *staring* (6) *followed* (7) *looking* (8) *prepared* (9) *begun* (10) *having* (11) *talking* (12) *Knowing* (13) *making* (14) *hiding* (15) *waiting* (16) *coming* (17) *carrying* (18) *getting* (19) *wearing* (20) *holding*

### Practice 13c p237

**1**

1 Despite / In spite of the fact that / Although / (Even) though 2 whereas / but 3 in spite of / despite 4 Although / (Even) though / Despite / In spite of the fact that 5 though 6 However

**2**

1 f 2 e 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 d

**3**

(1) *whereas / but* (2) *In spite of / Despite* (3) *However* (4) *Although* (5) *even though / but* (6) *despite / in spite of*

### Practice 13d p239

**1**

1 away 2 away 3 back 4 by 5 into 6 through 7 on 8 away 9 down 10 over

**2**

1 get on well 2 able to get through 3 you to get on with 4 must / have to get (it) across 5 gets me down

**3**

(1) away (2) over (3) out (4) down (5) get (6) back (7) away (8) on (9) across (10) by (11) on (12) over

### Practice 13e p241

**1**

1 threatened 2 approval 3 critical 4 expensive 5 envious / jealous 6 freedom 7 dangerous / addictive 8 novelist 9 sexist 10 furious 11 broadens 12 professional

**2**

1 was filled with envy 2 made a proposal 3 behaviour in class improves 4 are national 5 will broaden your knowledge 6 was a (real / genuine) historical figure

**3**

**Down:** 1 piteous 3 jealous 5 cellist 6 active 7 canoeist
**Across:** 2 Kingdom 4 bigamous 6 anxious 9 Scientist 10 tragic

**4**

(1) pianist (2) professional (3) musical (4) characteristic (5) industrious (6) envious (7) response (8) performance (9) critics (10) artists (11) freedom (12) poet

# Unit 14

## Entry test

1 in 2 to 3 at 4 in 5 in 6 **B** of 7 **D** – 8 **A** of 9 **D** of 10 **C** for 11 **C** it 12 **B** There 13 **A** It 14 **C** there 15 **A** There 16 **C** on 17 **B** at 18 **D** in 19 **C** by 20 **D** to 21 up 22 through 23 off 24 back 25 out

### Practice 14a p248

**1**

1 In … to … in 2 on … on … into 3 to … at 4 to … in … at 5 in … in … in … on 6 in … into 7 On … to … into 8 on … in 9 at … at / in … in 10 in … on … to … in 11 in … on … at 12 on … on 13 to … on … to … to 14 in … at … to 15 to … at … on

**2**

at present, on arrival, at 6.30pm, in the afternoon, on Wednesday afternoon, in an hour, at weekends, on weekdays, on a cold day, in a week, at the beginning, in a moment, at last, in the year 2000, on her birthday, at midnight, on March 25, on a winter's night, at times, in the summer

**3**

on / at the corner of the road, in / at the back, at the crossroads, on the television, on a journey, at the bus stop, in hospital, in Europe, on Earth, in the north, in / on the streets, at work all day, in the open air, at home, in the park, in / on a chair, at the door, in a queue, at the bottom, on top

**4**

(1) to (2) at (3) at (4) to (5) on (6) in (7) in (8) in (9) in (10) In (11) in (12) in (13) In (14) At (15) in



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Practice 14b p251

**1**

1 to 2 for 3 about 4 at 5 on 6 with 7 to 8 for 9 of

**2**

1 of 2 about 3 at 4 about 5 on 6 between 7 of 8 in 9 from 10 of 11 of 12 at 13 between 14 of 15 of

**3**

(1) for (2) in (3) of (4) for / with (5) in (6) in (7) for (8) in (9) with (10) in (11) in (12) from (13) of (14) from

## Practice 14c p253

**1**

1 It is / can be 2 It was 3 it was 4 There seems 5 There were 6 It's 7 It's 8 Is there 9 There must 10 There is

**2**

(1) It (2) it (3) There (4) there (5) There (6) It (7) there (8) there (9) It (10) it (11) It (12) It (13) There (14) it (15) there

## Practice 14d p256

**1**

1 at / by ... by 2 to ... in 3 In / At ... at / towards 4 out ... on 5 out ... to 6 In ... at 7 in ... out 8 In ... in 9 For ... of 10 on / at ... from

**2**

1 *view* 2 *worse* 3 *mood* 4 *radio* 5 *e-mail* 6 *purpose* 7 *charge* 8 *sight* 9 *e-mail* 10 *danger*

**3**

(1) To (2) from (3) in (4) in (5) on (6) of (7) At (8) at (9) In (10) at (11) by (12) in (13) to (14) on (15) for

## Practice 14e p257

**1**

1 put up with 2 put ... up 3 put across 4 put on 5 put ... away 6 put ... through 7 put up 8 put ... out

**2**

1 put things across 2 you put your toys away / put away your toys 3 didn't manage to put 4 put forward a proposal / put a proposal forward 5 you put off 6 had put on her clothes / had put her clothes on 7 planning to put up 8 put up the price of 9 couldn't put me through 10 put up with

## Exam practice 7

**Part 1**

**1 A** advice **2 C** means **3 D** about **4 C** Although **5 A** choice **6 D** get **7 C** though **8 B** envy **9 C** another **10 C** fact **11 B** down **12 A** while **13 D** approval **14 C** deny **15 D** Although

**Part 2**

**(16)** at **(17)** from **(18)** by **(19)** in **(20)** from **(21)** on **(22)** in **(23)** at **(24)** by **(25)** on **(26)** During **(27)** in **(28)** of **(29)** on **(30)** at / towards

**Part 3**

**31** not waking up on time **32** of the fact that his **33** Peggy is sixty **34** matter how rich he is **35** though he didn't speak **36** where I used to work **37** man whose car was stolen **38** discussed the problem with the **39** I get back to you **40** 'll get over

**Part 4**

**41** been **42** it **43** some **44** ✔ **45** that **46** yet **47** he **48** ✔ **49** as **50** to **51** even **52** the **53** it **54** ✔ **55** they

**Part 5**

**(56)** approval **(57)** warnings **(58)** intelligent **(59)** opportunities **(60)** complaints **(61)** behaviour **(62)** belief **(63)** misunderstandings **(64)** angrily **(65)** responsible

# Word Store p263

## Living conditions

**1**

(1) detached (2) city (3) floors (4) garden (5) cottage (6) villa (7) flats (8) rooms

**2**

1 a bed-sit 2 a villa 3 a cottage 4 a detached house 5 a basement

**3**

1 *wardrobe* 2 *armchair* 3 *sofa* 4 *cupboard* 5 *light-switch* 6 *plug* 7 *stools* 8 *corkscrew* 9 *iron* 10 *dressing* 11 *chest* 12 *lamp* 13 *bulb* 14 *cushions* 15 *fireplace*

**4**

**types of home:** *block of flats, terraced house, bungalow, bed-sit, detached house, semi-detached, villa, cottage*
**parts of a house:** *basement, hall, attic, loft, cellar, ground floor, landing, study*
**things we find in the house:** *power point, remote control, tea towel, corkscrew, table mat, ironing board, washing-up liquid*

**5**

1 tap / door handle / paint 2 the stairs / the staircase 3 TV / dishwasher / washing machine 4 electricity / water supply / power supply 5 radio / Walkman / clock 6 clock

## Social relationships

**1**

(1) husband (2) wife (3) family (4) parents (5) grandparents (6) grandmother / granny / grannie / gran (7) Uncle (8) Aunt / Aunty / Auntie

**2**

**Across:** 1 grandfather 2 grandmother 3 aunt 4 nephew 5 widow 6 stepfather 7 fiancé 8 widower 9 stepmother 10 father-in-law 11 great-granddaughter
**Down:** 1 grandparents (Jack and Daisy Andrews)

**3**

(1) strangers (2) met (3) to (4) know (5) in (6) going (7) fallen (8) engaged (9) get (10) marriage (11) wedding (12) anniversary (13) christened (14) best (15) honeymoon

## Friendship

**1**

1 friendly 2 unfriendly 3 friendship 4 close 5 made 6 user-friendly

**2**

1 *out* 2 *up* 3 *down* 4 *out* 5 *up ... up* 6 *out ... up ... off*

## Occupations

**1**

(1) unemployment (2) job (3) earn (4) manual (5) outdoors

**2**

a *career* b *interview* c *management* d *job* e *sack* f *wage* g *salary* h *pension* i *promotion* j *reference* k *qualifications* l *experience* m *offer* n *trainee*

**3**

l g c e i f j a k d h b

**4**

1 as 2 in 3 for 4 from 5 of 6 off

**5**

1 take him on 2 's taking on 3 took up this post 4 take over as (the new) director 5 deal with 6 carried out

## Education

**1**

(1) primary (2) Marks (3) grades (4) area (5) degree

**2**

(1) *exercise* (2) *place* (3) *grades* (4) *diploma* (5) *private* (6) *classes* (7) *grade* (8) *year* (9) *heart* (10) *revise*



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

**3**

1 got 2 made 3 made 4 pays 5 takes 6 doing 7 revising 8 sit 9 get 10 gets

**4**

A / ~~The~~ … a / ~~the~~ … a / ~~the~~ … ~~a~~ / the … a / ~~the~~ … A / ~~The~~ … a / ~~the~~ … ~~a / the~~ … a / ~~the~~ … ~~a / the~~ … a / ~~the~~ … ~~a / the~~ … a / ~~the~~

**5**

1 *head teacher* 2 *undergraduate* 3 *graduate* 4 *director of studies* 5 *classmate* 6 *lecturer* 7 *tutor* 8 *professor*

**6**

(1) nursery school (2) playschool (3) primary school (4) infant school (5) middle school (6) secondary school (7) grammar school (8) comprehensive school (9) public school (10) state school

**7**

b d f e j g h c i a

## The arts

**1**

(1) performed (2) stage (3) roles (4) poetry (5) lectures (6) novels

**2**

**literature:** *short story, biography, chapter, drama, thriller, western, comedy, volume, play, novel, poetry, edition, tragedy, horror, magazine, love story, science fiction, plot, opera, character*

**music:** *sound-track, audience, orchestra, volume, musical, programme, CD, pop concert, musician, singer, performance, microphone, encore, opera*

**theatre:** *audience, cast, drama, script, rehearsal, musical, costume, act, scenery, first night, comedy, stage, set, matinée, lighting, play, tragedy, encore, performance, role, opera, character*

**cinema:** *sound-track, audience, première, drama, subtitles, thriller, western, script, screenplay, musical, horror, act, scenery, first night, comedy, set, screen, auditorium, trailer, performance, role, character*

**art:** *sculpture, exhibition, brush, scenery, scene, watercolour, picture, landscape, canvas, illustration*

**3**

1 rehearsal / rehearse 2 screenplay 3 audience 4 cast / drama / musical / comedy / play / tragedy / opera 5 edition 6 sound-track 7 costume 8 concert 9 volume 10 illustrations

**4**

(1) plays (2) performances (3) put (4) character (5) author

**5**

**act in:** *a play / Hamlet / a film / a show / a horror movie / a production*

**appear in:** *a play / Hamlet / a film / a show / a horror movie / a production*

**broadcast:** *a play / Hamlet / a production / a symphony / a piece of music / a recital / a concert*

**compose:** *a symphony / a piece of music*

**direct:** *a play / Hamlet / a film / a show / a horror movie / a production*

**get:** *a difficult part / the leading role / a video / a new book / a CD*

**give:** *a performance / a recital / a concert*

**play:** *a difficult part / Hamlet / a CD / the leading role / a video / a piece of music*

**produce:** *a play / Hamlet / a film / a show / a horror movie / a CD / a video / a new book*

**publish:** *a play / Hamlet / a review / a new book / the story / a piece of music / a new edition*

**put on:** *a play / Hamlet / a show / a production / a concert*

**review:** *a play / Hamlet / a film / a show / a horror movie / a production / a CD / a video / a new book / a recital / a new edition/ a concert*

**see:** *a film / a show / a horror movie / a video / Hamlet / a play / a performance / a production*

**set:** *the scene*

**watch:** *a play / a performance / Hamlet / a film / a horror movie / a production / a video / a show*

**write:** *a play / a review / a new book / the story / a new edition / Hamlet*

**6**

1 set 2 reviews 3 acted in 4 role 5 performances 6 broadcast / reviewed 7 produced 8 composed 9 published 10 watch

**7**

1 I would put up my hand. 2 I stay up. 3 I would take up English / Japanese etc. 4 The student was sent down because he / she cheated. (or: for cheating.) 5 I pay attention. 6 You have got through (your exam). 7 I would look up the word (or: look it up) in my / a dictionary. 8 I would have to get into medical school. 9 I hope the question will come up in the exam. 10 You should have given in your homework earlier / yesterday etc.

## Sports

**1**

1 at 2 indoor 3 on 4 equipment 5 athletics 6 of 7 winter 8 outdoor 9 referee 10 fit

**2**

1 at 2 throw 3 beat 4 bounce 5 for 6 won 7 match 8 lobbed 9 hit 10 volleyball

**3**

**places:** *ring, pool, club, course, field, track, pitch, ground, court, stadium*

**games:** *snooker, golf, squash, bowls, tennis, football, hockey, basketball, volleyball*

**sport:** *canoeing, swimming, motor racing, boxing, athletics, fishing, skiing, diving*

**people:** *umpire, coach, defender, player, referee, judge, team, goalkeeper, captain, manager, striker*

**equipment:** *club, skis, rod, oar, net, bat, racquet, stick, whistle, boots, trunks*

**4**

1 match 2 oars 3 manager / captain 4 bat 5 referee 6 Stadium 7 whistle 8 striker 9 court 10 track

## Hobbies

**1**

1 hobby 2 games 3 collect 4 spend 5 climbing 6 photographs / pictures 7 collection 8 dance / drama

**2**

**equipment:** *camera, boots, mountain bike, tweezers, hoe, brush, rope, glue, needle, palette*

**hobby:** *photography, walking / climbing / hiking / gardening, cycling, stamp collecting, gardening, painting, climbing / abseiling, stamp collecting / collage / models, sewing, painting*

**3**

1 takes 2 go 3 have 4 do 5 makes 6 has been taking 7 does 8 going 9 to make 10 takes 11 have 12 going

**4**

1 amusement 2 funny 3 enjoyable 4 pleasant 5 laughter 6 photographer 7 humorous 8 delight 9 amusing 10 grinning 11 peaceful 12 happiness

## Travel and tourism

**1**

1 by … take 2 flight … departure lounge 3 miss … on 4 passports 5 receptionist … porter 6 bill … checked out 7 ferry … crossing 8 book … holiday … (scheduled / charter) flight

**2**

(1) holiday (2) stay (3) by (4) agent (5) abroad (6) book (7) flight (8) hotel (9) currency (10) traveller's cheques

**3**

1 language school was going on excursions. 2 to go (or: to do some) sightseeing before we find somewhere to stay. 3 the plane has landed, I'll phone you. 4 make a reservation in advance. 5 take a bus to work but yesterday I went by train. 6 take a flight to Paris instead. 7 don't run out of petrol if you're driving in the mountains. 8 Liverpool gets in at eleven o'clock.



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

## Shopping

**1**

1 for … card 2 afford … deposit 3 get … cash 4 go … bargains 5 on 6 supermarket … butcher('s) 7 lend … pay 8 rate of exchange … bureau 9 goods … designer 10 wrapped

**2**

1 a sales assistant 2 the high street 3 a DIY store 4 the chemist's 5 a carrier bag 6 the greengrocer's 7 a bureau de change 8 a department store 9 a kiosk 10 the checkout

**3**

**newsagent's:** *crisps, magazine, stamps, stationery, pencils, cigarettes, sweets, chocolate*
**chemist's:** *suntan lotion, shampoo, aspirin, sunglasses, toothpaste, bubble bath, nappies, lipstick, medicines, hairbrush, perfume, toilet paper*
**greengrocer's:** *lettuce, mushrooms, flowers, courgettes, melon, carrots, plums, beans, aubergines, bananas*
**boutique:** *shirt, sunglasses, trousers, shoes, underwear, denim jacket, jewellery*
**supermarket:** *household goods, yoghurt, cleaning products, bread, frozen food, flour, sausages, food in cans, coffee, toilet paper, pasta, eggs, milk, cheese, breakfast cereals, etc.*
(In the larger supermarkets, you can buy everything available in other shops, except some medicines. Fashionable clothes are often not available.)

**4**

1 *carton / bottle* 2 *can* 3 *bar* 4 *tub* 5 *box* 6 *tube* 7 *sachet / bottle* 8 *tin* 9 *packet* 10 *bunch* 11 *bottle* 12 *jar*

## Food and restaurants

**1**

(1) vegetables (2) meat (3) fish (4) red (5) dairy (6) cheese (7) nuts (8) gourmet (9) wine (10) chef

**2**

**vegetables:** *lettuce, courgette, cabbage, cauliflower, spinach, cucumber, aubergine*
**fish:** *salmon, trout, plaice, mackerel, smoked salmon, cod, sardine*
**herbs:** *thyme, oregano, rosemary, chives, parsley, basil*
**seafood:** *mussel, squid, shrimp, prawn, lobster, octopus*
**fruit:** *nectarine, apple, satsuma, plum, coconut, fig, strawberry, grape, watermelon, mango*
**meat:** *lamb, mutton, bacon, mincemeat, liver, chicken, chop, beef, joint, sausage, pork, salami*

**3**

**Spain:** *tapas, bocadillo, tortilla, paella*
**Britain:** *roast beef, shepherd's pie, apple crumble and custard, fish and chips*
**Greece:** *houmous, souvlaki, moussaka, kebab*
**China:** *prawn crackers, spring roll, sweet and sour, chop suey*
**Italy:** *spaghetti Bolognese, ciabatta, tiramisu, tagliatelle*
**India:** *curry, samosas, onion bhaji, biryani*
**USA:** *hot dog, hamburger, popcorn, pumpkin pie*

**4**

1 f 2 h 3 e 4 c 5 a 6 g 7 b 8 d

**5**

1 *fry* 2 *bake* 3 *Steamed* 4 *Roasted* 5 *grill* 6 *casserole* 7 *boil* 8 *barbecued*

**6**

(1) booked (2) list (3) starter (4) course (5) chops (6) dessert (7) bill (8) credit (9) tip (10) service

**7**

1 *minced* meat 2 *chopped / sliced* onions 3 *mashed* potatoes 4 *grated* cheese 5 *sliced* bread 6 *spiced* curry 7 *mashed / chopped / sliced* bananas 8 *sliced / chopped* tomato 9 *sliced / grated* carrots 10 *sliced* apple

**8**

1 corkscrew 2 wine 3 bowl 4 boil 5 pan 6 meal 7 plum 8 menu

**9**

1 back 2 on 3 forward 4 with 5 away 6 on 7 up 8 up 9 over 10 out

## Weather

**1**

1 foggy 2 dry 3 sticky / humid / stuffy 4 unsettled / changeable 5 Thick 6 with 7 terrible 8 spell 9 frost 10 boiling

**2**

1 downpour 2 unsettled / changeable 3 humid / sticky 4 mild 5 overcast 6 sleet 7 fine 8 scorching / boiling 9 (thick) fog 10 freezing / bitterly cold 11 smog 12 bucketing / pouring

**3**

(1) changeable (2) Lovely (3) awful (4) ducks (5) weather (6) boiling (7) bright (8) under (9) heavy (10) eye

**4**

1 a *lovely* hot day 2 a *mild / hot* climate 3 *freezing /bitterly* cold 4 *heavy / dark* clouds 5 a *mild / dry* spell 6 *heavy* rain 7 *strong* wind 8 *freezing / thick / heavy* fog 9 *lovely / mild / hot / dry* weather (to make *heavy weather* of something is a common idiomatic expression)

**5**

1 humid 2 fog 3 blizzard 4 pouring / bucketing down 5 a bit chilly / cold 6 freezing 7 Lovely weather 8 thick / heavy fog / smog 9 strong gales / storms 10 lightning

**6**

A Greece B Spain C Britain

**7**

1 j 2 c 3 g 4 i 5 h 6 f 7 b 8 e 9 a 10 d

## Our environment and the natural world

**1**

1 cliff 2 sea 3 beach 4 hill 5 lake 6 waterfall 7 wave 8 river 9 mountain 10 rocks

**2**

town – city (city) mountain – hill (mountain) bush – tree (tree) rock – pebble (rock) lane – road (road) lake – pond (lake) bay – gulf (gulf) beach – coast (coast) ocean – sea (ocean) wood – forest (forest)

**3**

1 lake 2 wood 3 ocean 4 beach 5 hill 6 lane 7 gulf 8 forest 9 tree 10 pond 11 pebble 12 town 13 bush 14 coast 15 mountain 16 sea 17 road 18 bay 19 city 20 rock

**4**

(1) environmental (2) atmosphere (3) greenhouse (4) weather (5) exhaust (6) resources (7) energy (8) on (9) fuel (10) recycling

**5**

1 pollution 2 disastrous 3 extinction 4 harmful 5 damaging 6 population 7 survival 8 protection 9 poverty 10 starvation

**6**

1 acid *rain* 2 tropical *rainforest* 3 exhaust *fumes* 4 global *warming / disaster / changes / resources* 5 ozone *layer* 6 nuclear *energy / waste products* 7 public *transport* 8 traffic *jams / fumes* 9 natural *resources / gases / disaster* 10 air *pollution* 11 sea *pollution* 12 solar *energy* 13 finite *resources* 14 greenhouse *effect / gases* 15 clean *fuels* 16 recycled *fuels / resources* 17 noise *pollution* 18 renewable *resources*

**7**

1 *count* on the weather being sunny on Saturday. 2 cut *down* on the number of cars in the city centre. 3 should do *away* with nuclear energy completely. 4 gets you *down*, go and live in Spain. 5 (have) *run* out of water in a few years. 6 has gone *down* since / is *down* on what it was yesterday. 7 *pull* that old building down. (or: *pull* down that old building.) 8 *ran* / could *run* on electricity instead of petrol.

## Media

**1**

(1) information (2) newspapers (3) television (4) radio (5) Internet



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

(6) e-mail (7) electronic (8) mail / messages (9) post (10) postman

**2**

1 *correspondent* 2 *circulation* 3 *commercial* 4 *documentary* 5 *celebrity* 6 *periodical* 7 *journalist* 8 *headline* 9 *soap* 10 *editor*

**3**

1 *mouse* 2 *screen* 3 *keyboard* 4 *disk drive* 5 *floppy disk* 6 *mouse pad / mat* 7 *CD ROM* 8 *laptop* 9 *key* 10 *modem*

**4**

**press** report / conference, **current** affairs, **television** channel / commentator / viewer / programme / show / broadcast / station, **radio** commentator / listener / programme / show / broadcast / station, **light** entertainment, **news** channel / conference / broadcast, **sports** channel / commentator / programme, **soap** opera, **chat** show, **celebrity** guest, **video** recorder, **cable** channel / television, **live** television / programme / show / entertainment, **educational** programme, **commercial** break / station / channel, **action** replay, **digital** television, **game** show, **children's** programme / channel / show, **nature** programme / channel

**5**

phone book play back mobile phone answering machine cordless phone wrong number long-distance e-mail address fax machine telephone kiosk

**6**

1 distance 2 mobile 3 address 4 conference 5 wrong 6 game 7 answer 8 disk 9 cable 10 floppy

**7**

(1) **D** media (2) **B** press (3) **C** popular (4) **A** opinion (5) **D** editors (6) **C** circulation (7) **A** networks (8) **C** information (9) **D** access (10) **B** personal

**8**

1 *skim through* 2 *hang up* 3 *key in* 4 *am on* 5 *switch over* 6 *back up* 7 *switch...off* 8 *bringing out* 9 *get through* 10 *put down* 11 *call back* 12 *shut down*

**9**

**phone:** 2, 9, 11 **computer:** 3, 4, 6, 12 **television:** 5, 7 **book:** 1, 8, 10

## Science and technology

**1**

(1) invent (2) product / produce (3) observation (4) designer (5) development (6) discovery (7) exploration (8) researcher (9) programmer (10) engineer (11) building (12) conservation (13) conservationist (14) creation (15) creator

**2**

1 engineer 2 builder 3 research 4 produced 5 explore 6 discoveries 7 creator 8 programmer 9 developer 10 observation

**3**

1 builder 2 plumber 3 electrician 4 carpenter 5 decorator 6 architect 7 hairdresser 8 teacher 9 manager 10 salesperson 11 photographer 12 psychologist 13 manufacturer 14 researcher 15 archaeologist 16 astronomer 17 doctor / medic (*informal*) 18 surgeon 19 scientist 20 biologist 21 chemist 22 physicist 23 historian 24 lawyer

**4**

1 plumber 2 psychologist 3 tutor / teacher 4 electrician 5 decorator 6 hairdresser 7 doctor 8 designer 9 archaeologist 10 surgeon

**5**

1 *discovered* 2 *studying...developed* 3 *designed* 4 *discovered* 5 *pioneered* 6 *invented* 7 *developed* 8 *designed* 9 *pioneered* 10 *discovered ... studying*

## Health

**1**

(1) fit (2) exercise (3) gym (4) diet (5) smoking (6) harm (7) diseases (8) death (9) attacks (10) health

**2**

1 inject 2 ointment 3 ward 4 headache 5 prescription 6 epidemic 7 fatal 8 mental illness / nervous breakdown 9 cure 10 frail

**3**

1 *against* 2 *with* 3 *for* 4 *out* 5 *from* 6 *with* 7 *in* 8 *from* 9 *on* 10 *with*

**4**

1 *lie down* 2 *fainted* 3 *painless* 4 *hurt* 5 *symptoms* 6 *had* 7 *aching* 8 *agony* 9 *suffered* 10 *die*

**5**

1 ill / fit / sick / nauseous / dizzy / depressed / numb / hot
2 an operation / this medicine / stitches / some rest / a broken wrist / flu / an injection / a virus / a cold / mumps / an infection / measles
3 a headache / a broken wrist / flu / cancer / a virus / a cold / mumps / a sore throat / measles / an earache / an infection
4 flu / a virus / a cold / measles / mumps
5 your doctor / a consultant
6 inoperable / a broken wrist / flu / painful / mumps / incurable / fatal / measles / cancer
7 this medicine / an aspirin / his tooth out / her temperature / her to hospital / cancer
8 your ankle / your wrist
9 nauseous / in great pain / dizzy / depressed / in agony
10 hot / painful / sore / numb

**6**

1 j 2 f 3 d 4 h 5 a 6 i 7 c 8 g 9 k 10 b

**7**

1 thumb 2 lips 3 ears 4 gums 5 elbow 6 sole 7 heel 8 knee 9 chin 10 stomach 11 neck 12 spine 13 wrist 14 navel 15 cheek 16 eyelid 17 nostrils 18 shin 19 forehead 20 throat

**8**

1 tooth out last week. 2 he got over his illness yet? 3 looked after you while you were ill. 4 put on a lot of weight since I last saw you! 5 of the drugs has worn off now. 6 fainted, he came round after a few minutes. 7 came / went down with flu and had to have time off work. 8 given birth to a lovely baby girl and is feeling fine. 9 since her heart attack, my mother has suffered from poor health. 10 suffers from terrible headaches.

## Crime

**1**

(1) robbery (2) victims (3) violence (4) Forgery (5) kidnapped (6) crimes (7) rise (8) illegal (9) information (10) Crime

**2**

(1) accusation (2) arsonist (3) blackmail (4) burglary (5) criminal (6) hacker (7) hijacking (8) kidnapper (9) killing (10) mugging (11) offender (12) pickpocketing (13) robbery (14) shoplifting (15) stalker (16) theft

**3**

accusation and suspicion

**4**

1 *burglary* 2 *mugging* 3 *hijacking* 4 *murder* 5 *shoplifting* 6 *arson* 7 *looting* 8 *hooliganism* 9 *blackmail* 10 *theft* 11 *robbery* 12 *fraud* 13 *vandalism* 14 *kidnapping* 15 *domestic violence* 16 *pickpocketing* 17 *drug-trafficking* 18 *stalking* 19 *hacking* 20 *rioting*

**5**

1 *found guilty* 2 *appearing in court* 3 *accused* 4 *pay a fine* 5 *put on trial* 6 *took up* 7 *arresting you* 8 *suspected of* 9 *facing* 10 *returned a verdict of / found her / him / the accused* 11 *committed* 12 *plead guilty*

**6**

(1) suspicion (2) proof (3) charge (4) trial (5) lawyer (6) illegal (7) guilty (8) crime (9) punishment (10) innocence



PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/

# GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY
## *for* FIRST CERTIFICATE

LUKE PRODROMOU

✔ **designed for upper intermediate students**
an innovative approach particularly relevant to the Cambridge First Certificate in English (FCE) exam

✔ **thorough grammar review**
detailed information concentrating on points tested in the exam, and a wealth of examples based on the Longman Corpus

✔ **a focus on vocabulary**
concentration on word formation, confusible words, and on common words and phrases that are useful in numerous situations

✔ **lots of opportunity to practise**
a wide variety of exercises to confirm understanding and prepare for the FCE exam, particularly Paper 3

✔ **continuous testing in exam format**
a diagnostic test for each Unit and regular tests in exam format to check progress

✔ **a flexible approach**
can be used in many different ways; clear cross-references point you in the direction of related grammar or vocabulary areas

Advanced students should refer to
GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY *for* CAMBRIDGE ADVANCED AND PROFICIENCY
by Richard Side and Guy Wellman

PEARSON
Longman
www.longman.com

ISBN 0-582-40018-X
9 780582 400184

PDF stworzony przez wersję demonstracyjną pdfFactory www.pdffactory.pl/